



# LIBRARIES

UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN-MADISON

## **A guide to original sources for precolonial western Africa published in European languages : for the most part in book form.**

Fage, J. D. 1921- (John Donnelly)

[Madison] : African Studies Program, University of Wisconsin--Madison, 1994

<https://digital.library.wisc.edu/1711.dl/5V2NUOYQUYK568Z>

<http://rightsstatements.org/vocab/InC-OW-EU/1.0/>

Copyright 1994 The Board of Regents University of Wisconsin System, all rights reserved.

The libraries provide public access to a wide range of material, including online exhibits, digitized collections, archival finding aids, our catalog, online articles, and a growing range of materials in many media.

When possible, we provide rights information in catalog records, finding aids, and other metadata that accompanies collections or items. However, it is always the user's obligation to evaluate copyright and rights issues in light of their own use.

A GUIDE TO

# Original Sources For Precolonial Western Africa Published In European Languages

FOR THE MOST PART IN BOOK FORM

by

J. D. Fage

Revised edition with corrections and additions



African Studies Program  
University of Wisconsin-Madison  
1994



A GUIDE TO

# Original Sources For Precolonial Western Africa Published In European Languages

FOR THE MOST PART IN BOOK FORM

by

J. D. Fage

Revised edition with corrections and additions



African Studies Program  
University of Wisconsin-Madison  
1994



**African Studies Program  
University of Wisconsin-Madison**



ISBN 0-942615-24-7

Copyright © 1994 The Board of Regents  
University of Wisconsin System  
All rights reserved

Printed in the United States of America





# CONTENTS

NOTE TO THE REVISED EDITION	iv
INTRODUCTION	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	xx
NOTES ON THE ENTRIES	xxi
ABBREVIATIONS USED	xxii
 SOURCES PRIOR TO 1501	 1
1501 - 1550	7
1551 - 1600	14
1601 - 1625	29
1626 - 1650	37
1651 - 1675	43
1676 - 1700	52
1701 - 1725	62
1726 - 1750	69
1751 - 1775	78
1776 - 1800	86
1801 - 1825	105
1826 - 1850	127
1851 - 1865	156
SOURCES AFTER 1865	172
 INDEX OF AUTHORS AND OTHER HEADWORDS	 175
INDEX OF EDITORS, COMPILERS, TRANSLATORS, COMMENTATORS etc	193



## NOTE TO THE REVISED EDITION

There are several hundred changes of substance - additions or corrections - from the original edition of 1987, even if many of these are small, for example the insertion of a more accurate date or the noting of an additional edition, or a change in - or the addition of a variant in - the spelling of a name. However there are, I believe, sixty-five totally new entries plus another seventy-five entries which have been substantially revised. In addition an effort has been made to provide more information on the authors of the sources, especially if they are otherwise little known. The opportunity has also been taken to improve the presentation of entries and of the wording of my comments.

It has now become possible to print the accents and diacriticals which - for technical reasons - had to be omitted in the first edition from the printing of non-English names in upper case letters. If perchance some of these have not made their way back into the entries, it is to be hoped that they will be found in the indexes.

I remain especially grateful to P.E.H.Hair, Adam Jones, and Robin Law for the way in which they have continued to draw errors or new material to my attention. A full list of acknowledgments is to be found on p. xx, and to the 1987 list have now been added the names of Stanley B. Alpers and Paul Wilson, energetic and meticulous workers in the field of West African bibliography, to whom I have become greatly indebted since the first appearance of this Guide. I am, of course, still responsible for all remaining errors!

J.D.F.  
1. 12. 93



# I N T R O D U C T I O N <sup>1</sup>

The idea of compiling a guide to the published original sources that described pre-colonial western African societies arose out of research which I began in 1978-79 with the support of a grant from the U.K. Social Science Research Council (later the Economic and Social Research Council), and to which I owe a considerable debt of gratitude). This research began as an enquiry into the nature and the role of institutions of servitude in traditional sub-Saharan societies though, as I came to appreciate more and more the centrality of dependence in such societies, so the enquiry broadened to embrace other aspects of their structures and their functioning.

As I saw it, enquiries of this kind had hitherto been tackled largely from what might be termed an anthropological perspective. By this I mean one centred on a perception of - and, to some extent, an extrapolation backwards from - situations that had existed, or were supposed to have existed, in the early years of the colonial period. It struck me that the results were likely to have been subject to distortion from the presence of colonial observers and of their states and societies and, indeed, from the growing economic and social pressures on sub-Saharan Africa - including both those of the export slave trade and of the campaigning against it - in the years leading up to the establishment of formal colonial rule. The proper approach for the historian was therefore to seek out evidence from earlier times before such distortions became of major importance.

In order to secure a handy sample of this evidence, I chose to work with material that was available in published form (irrespective of whether the publication was more or less contemporaneous with the collection of the evidence or at some later date). I also decided to restrict myself to evidence from western Africa from about the Senegal in the north to Angola in the south. I chose this area for my enquiry because I had some physical acquaintance with many of its countries north and west from the Bight of Biafra, and because I had long had some familiarity with the outlines of its history. It also seemed to me that the contemporary written sources for this history were probably denser and richer, and more consistent over time, than those available for eastern or southern Africa. This was especially so if the field of enquiry were extended southwards beyond the Bight of Biafra into western Bantu Africa.

It may not be very common for historians to consider a part of Bantu Africa together with the lands and peoples of Guinea and the western and west central Sudan. I think that originally I chose to do this because it so happens that the published accounts of the African

1. Earlier versions of this Introduction were presented as papers to seminars at the University of Birmingham and at the School of Oriental & African Studies of the University of London, and to the Symposium on European Sources for Sub-Saharan Africa before 1900, which was held by the Frobenius Institute of the J.W.Goethe University of Frankfurt and the Werner Reimers Foundation at Bad Homburg in July 1986 (and this was later published in *Paideuma*, 33 (1987) 207-20).



peoples living on the coast from about Loango in the north to about Benguela in the south, and for up to about 300 miles into the interior, happen to be particularly good from the early years of the sixteenth century to about the beginning of the eighteenth century. This is partly because the Portuguese were then trying to control and colonise substantial parts of this country, but mainly because educated Catholic priests were seeking to penetrate both the interior and its African societies in some depth. They needed some understanding of these societies to facilitate their task of converting them, and in addition they were not averse to gaining publicity for their work through publication. As I see them, the resultant accounts of the Congo-Angola region tend to be more informative than much of what was produced in the same period for Guinea. There for the most part the European observers were traders, often not well educated, and usually with no need to penetrate beyond the coastal societies with which their business was done. Initially too they were sometimes wary of publicising information which might be to the advantage of commercial competitors. After about 1700, however, the balance begins to shift. The Congo and Angola missions faded, while the European commercial activity on the Guinea coast became more of an open free for all and then, with the reaction against the trade in slaves, it began to stimulate great explorations far into the interior.

To this I should add that my reading of what early European observers had to say about the Congo-Angola societies suggests that these were little different in their basic principles from those that were visible to them in Guinea. This would not be surprising granted that the ancestors of the Bantu were originally West Africans, and that there must have been some cultural and commercial continuum round the shores of the Bight of Biafra.<sup>2</sup>

For my purposes, then, putting West Africa together with western Bantu Africa and calling the whole 'western Africa' made good sense. But it will be seen that I have already begun to discuss the evidence relating to pre-colonial society in this western Africa in terms of what had been written about it by visitors from the outside. This is simply because most of the available written evidence *has* arisen from the observations of outsiders. It is preserved first in material, for the most part written in Arabic and from about the ninth century A.D. onwards, that derives from trans-Saharan travel to the western and central Sudan, and then in material written in European languages following upon the opening up of sea trade on the western African coasts from the middle of the fifteenth century onwards.

This is not to say that there is no evidence from the western Africans themselves. There is in fact much tradition which - until recent times - was maintained orally. But the oral traditions are rarely descriptive, so that any evidence they can provide about social or economic conditions in the past is largely a matter of interpretation. Such interpretation must be at once highly skilled and highly speculative, and I therefore decided that oral evidence, even when collected, written down and published, should be outside my purview. As far as written evidence is concerned, Africans were not slow to acquire the literacies proffered by their Muslim and Christian visitors (and on occasion they also devised scripts of their own). Chronicles and other material written by West Africans in Arabic have survived from at least the sixteenth Christian century, and they were certainly contributing to the literature in European languages by the eighteenth century. But until the second half of the nineteenth century, Africans who were literate in either the Arabic or the Roman scripts were always a tiny minority. They were also an unrepresentative minority, for they naturally tended to

2. Leo Frobenius sensed such a continuum; in more recent times it has been illustrated, for example, in Jan Vansina, *The bells of kings*, *JAH*, 10 (1969) 187-97.

acquire with their literacy the attitudes and prejudices of the Muslim or Christian visitors who had brought it to them. The significant expansion of literacy - in both scripts - was largely a product of colonial rule. Thus, ironically, it was not until colonial rule and its systems of education had been established that a properly African voice really begins to appear in the written sources. This of course was a sign that the European presence had induced fundamental change in African societies. Thus if written evidence is to be used as a tool for the exposition and, hopefully, for the understanding of *traditional* African societies, most of it must have come from visitors to Africa.

The written material that has survived from before the mid fifteenth century and which is available in published form is not extensive. Indeed it can virtually all be encompassed within each of the single collections of early Arabic sources for West Africa or sub-Saharan Africa that have been produced by Hopkins and Levzion, by Father Cuoq, and by Koubbel and Mateev, and which appear as the first three entries in the *Guide*. But with the development of sea trade on the coasts from Senegal to Angola, an ever increasing stream of material begins to appear in European languages, in particular in Latin, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, French, English, Dutch, German, Danish and Swedish. By the mid nineteenth century and the eve of the colonial period, the stream has become a flood.

It is always possible, of course, to ask how accurately and reliably outside observers can see and record what exists in the societies of other peoples living in environments very different from their own and with cultures which are also different from their own. This is a big question which cannot be satisfactorily dealt with in a short Introduction. But I can say that my own reading leads me to the broad conclusion that, although Europeans' *understanding* of what they saw and recorded in western Africa could be deficient, the preconceptions they initially brought with them - deriving perhaps as much from Aristotle as from their Christianity - did not cause major distortions in the reliability and accuracy of what they *reported*. On the whole I would say that Europeans of the fifteenth, sixteenth and seventeenth centuries generally thought of African societies as different from their own but not as inately inferior. Such inferiority as did fall to the lot of African societies was basically a consequence of their lack of the Christian faith, and this was remediable. Things began to change with the Enlightenment: Voltaire and, later, Hegel were both to have uncomplimentary things to say about black Africans and their achievements. Europeans were beginning to assume that they were superior to other peoples, but even so it was not really until the second half of the nineteenth century that practical evidence of this became apparent in the field in tropical Africa itself. In the last resort, superiority there could only be brought about through the application of steam power, scientific medicine, and rapid-firing small arms. Indeed, as Hilaire Belloc put it:

Whatever happens, we have got  
The Maxim gun, and they have not.<sup>3</sup>

So, by the time of the publication of *The Origin of Species* (1859), the foundation of the Anthropological Society (1863) and of the Royal Colonial Institute (1868), and - one might add - the departure (1872) from the Secretaryship of the Church Missionary Society of Henry Venn and his vision of a native African Church (to name only British examples), Europeans had generally come to view black Africans as a separate species whose societies were not to

3. H. B[elloc] & H. T. B[lackwell], *The Modern Traveller* (London, 1898).

be thought of or studied in the same ways that their own were. From this time on, the majority of European accounts of western Africa are no longer more or less dispassionate. Increasingly they have become reconnaissances preparatory to the establishment of European control, or actual arguments for it.

In 1864, Richard Burton, a founder of the Anthropological Society of London as well as a great traveller in Africa, could remark after a visit to the Kingdom of Dahomey, 'The pure Negro ranks in the human family below the two great Arab and Aryan races', and 'The Negro, in mass, will not improve beyond a certain point, and that not respectable; he mentally remains a child'.<sup>4</sup> Nearly a quarter of a century later, things had gone rather further, and another considerable traveller who was also now a pioneer of empire, Louis-Gustave Binger, was to report following his visit to the Kingdom of Wagadugu in 1888:

If the European should ever come here, he should come as a master, constituting the high class of society, and should not have to bow his head before native chiefs to whom he is in all respects infinitely superior.<sup>5</sup>

By this time, indeed, with the initiation of formal colonial systems in western Africa, after Faidherbe had become governor of a Colony of the Senegal (1854) and the British had annexed Lagos (1861), a whole new literature was beginning to be published which is *colonial* rather than *African* in content and tone. In the reports on, or critiques of, this or that colonial administration or activity, the Africans and their societies tend to seep into the background or, if they are the subject of observation and study, it is so that they can be more easily administered or made more useful and productive in the colonial system.

It followed, of course, that western African societies were being radically weaned away from their traditional norms. It was these changes, in the nature of the situation as well as in the character of the evidence, that made me decide not to pursue my original enquiry into slavery beyond the mid 1860s. For the same reason, there are few entries in the *Guide* after this time: Burton just gets in, Binger does not.

However the volume of the published evidence available for the times before about 1865 is substantial. I became aware that I was sampling a large storehouse of information which could be explored for far more than my own original and relatively limited research project. Furthermore, as I worked at this, I was beginning to acquire some particular knowledge of this material and some experience of the problems involved in using it. It occurred to me that it might be helpful to others if I were to seek to develop this knowledge and experience and produce a critical guide to the published material bearing on pre-colonial western Africa. This revised edition of the *Guide* has, I think, 833 entries. Seventy-seven of these are collections of documents or of voyages and travels, each of which can embrace a period of many years. If these are excluded, the distribution over time of the entries is shown in the Table on the following page.

4. R.F.Burton, *A mission to Gelele, King of Dahomey* (2 vols, London, 1864); in the 1894 Memorial Edition, the quotations come in Vol.2 at pp.131 & 135.

5. L.- G. Binger, *Du Niger au Golfe de Guinée*.

ENTRIES RELATING TO THE YEARS:	NUMBER:	PERCENTAGE:
Up to 1500	9	1.2
1501 - 1550	20	2.6
1551 - 1600	48	6.8
1601 - 1650	56	7.4
1651 - 1700	86	10.4
1701 - 1750	66	8.7
1751 - 1800	129	17.1
1801 - 1850	251	33.2
After 1850	91	12.0

When I embarked on the *Guide*, it was my intention to limit it to accounts of western Africa which were at first-hand, and to arrange the entries in a chronological order according to the dates at which the observers who originated the accounts were actually in the field. In practice, however, it did not prove possible, nor indeed sensible, to stick too rigidly to either intention.

To take first the question of dates. Here my purpose was obvious enough. It was that a user of the *Guide* who wanted to know about conditions at a particular time or during a specific period could quickly and with some accuracy discover just which accounts actually related to that time or period. This would avoid elementary mistakes of the kind that were once made with Jean Barbot's *A description of the coasts of north and south Guinea*. This was first published in 1732, and this once led some readers to suppose that the author was describing conditions in Guinea as they had existed about the 1720s. In fact the gist of the book had been committed to paper nearly half a century earlier, about 1685-88, and Barbot's own, not very great, experience of Africa had been secured in two visits earlier still, between 1678 and 1682. The book therefore appears in the *Guide* under 1678-82 BARBOT, Jean (which in cross-references becomes abbreviated to 1678 BARBOT). A more extreme case - so extreme, indeed, that it is unlikely ever to confuse - is that of Diogo Gomes, who made his pioneer voyages to Guinea between about 1457 and 1460. But his account of them was not written down until some twenty years later, in about 1482, and it was first published as late as 1847, and then in the form of a Latin translation which was probably done about 1500. Needless to say his account is put under c.1457-60 GOMES (or 1457 GOMES for short).

So far, so good; but problems begin to arise when, for example, the author of a piece which has every appearance of having been written at first-hand is unknown, and when neither the text nor its manuscript provide any very precise indication of date. Obviously the best that can be done here is to provide an approximate date - as is done, for instance, with c.1600 GRAN FULO, but it is often difficult to know how good the approximation is. Sometimes there seems no doubt that a known author did have first-hand experience of western Africa, but it is not easy to date this with any accuracy. A case in point is c.1536? ALFONCE, where the date that has been chosen is that for the approximate time when he is thought to have written his book following his African experience. But one could have

have chosen the earliest date at which it is thought possible he was sailing to Africa (and in this particular case there is the further complication of Alfonse's connection with the book which is entered under 1544 FONTENEAU). Then one can have cases in which the actual author never left Europe, but put together original material which reached him from Africa. A somewhat complex example is c.1595/c.1610 ?VIVES, where the dates represent what are thought to be the dates of completion of two successive stages of the work. But obviously what is recorded in the sources attributed to both Alfonse and Vives must have occurred earlier than the dates at which these sources are placed. *Publication* of these two sources did not occur until even later - in the twentieth century in the second case. But where the date of publication is reasonably close to the time when the evidence was collected, it has sometimes seemed permissible to use it rather than to embark on complicated research which might not end up with conclusive evidence as to exactly when the author was active in the field. An obvious example is (1851) SMITH, but this device is now used less often than it was in the first edition of the *Guide*; thus it has seemed sensible to convert (1819) ROBERTSON into c.1801-19 ROBERTSON. But how to deal, let us say, with (1742) CAPITEIN - who was born on the Gold Coast, taken to Europe in his youth and educated there to the extent that he wrote and published a thesis, then went home to die within a few years? It has seemed to me that the date of publication of his thesis is as good as one can get.

But in all cases where *dates of publication* have been used to place an entry, this fact is signalled by placing the dates in *parentheses*. Dates of first publication have also been used to place great compilations like Dapper's, which draw on a great variety of sources not all of which may be known or dateable, and for the great collections of voyages pioneered by men like Ramusio and Hakluyt; thus the *Guide* has (1668) DAPPER and (1550) VOYAGES: RAMUSIO. In the case of collections of voyages, however, it has often seemed sensible to have separate entries under their dates of execution for major voyages which were not separately published; thus 1555-57 TOWERSON for the three voyages to Guinea by William Towerson reported by Hakluyt. Collections of documents produced by scholars also create a problem. I have seen no alternative but to indicate the whole period embraced by each collection, and to place it at the first date; thus 1441-1807 COLLECTION: DONNAN, which is placed at 1441 even though only an infinitesimal part of Elizabeth Donnan's great collection refers to the fifteenth century. More usually, however, this tactic may not be so misleading, e.g. 1450-1560 COLLECTION: BLAKE. Moreover some of the major documents in these collections have also been given entries in their own right; thus, for example, c.1545 ANONYMOUS PORTUGUESE PILOT, first published by Ramusio, and available in English translation in J.W.Blake's collection. Under any one date, the entries are arranged alphabetically by the names of the authors or the other headwords, except that collections of voyages and of documents follow after the individual entries.

As I worked, so it became plain to me that it would be counterproductive to stick too rigidly to the conception that the *Guide* should be limited to *first-hand* evidence - which in the strict sense would mean, of course, that it could include only accounts related by persons who had themselves actually seen what was described. In the first place, it seemed desirable to point out that there are some ostensibly first-hand accounts which are not what they seem. The writer who put the name 'Christian Frederic Damberger' on the title page of the account of what he claimed were his travels in Africa had never been to the continent, while to greater or lesser degrees it seems clear that Joseph Hawkins, Richard Drake, Robert Adams, J.- B. Douville, John Duncan, and Paul Du Chaillu all claimed to have done more in Africa

than in reality was the case.<sup>6</sup> The *Nouvelle Relation* by J.-B. Labat is substantially based on an account of real travels in West Africa, but not by the man to whom he attributes them (see 1685 LABAT). Indeed, although Labat has his value as a purveyor of original information about western Africa, the use he makes of what was available to him is generally far from straightforward - as may also be judged from 1721 LABAT and from 1671 G.A. CAVAZZI. Or let us consider again the case of 1678 BARBOT who, though he did twice visit West Africa briefly on trading voyages, drew heavily on other men's work when he came to write his book. Among other things, this means not only that he used material which dated from before he first went to Guinea, but also that he refers to some events that took place some years *after* he was there.

There is no doubt in my mind that the *Guide* would be the poorer and less useful if the first-hand rule had been narrowly observed. I have in fact included quite a few compilations produced by professional writers who travelled little if at all. The reason for this is that such works may well reproduce original material which is not available, or readily available, elsewhere. A good example is Dapper's *Description of Africa* ((1668) DAPPER), the outstanding general description of the seventeenth century. For the most part Dapper worked from printed sources which - unlike some of his contemporaries - he often acknowledges. But it is also apparent that in a number of places he was using first-hand information - for example that contributed by the Dutch merchant Samuel Blommaert, who was concerned with western Africa from c.1614 to c.1651 - which would not seem to have been published elsewhere, and which may well no longer exist independently of Dapper's book. Blommaert was the source for Dapper's substantial and important account of the Kwoja kingdom and its neighbours in the Sierra Leone - Cape Mount region, and probably too for some of the information on which Dapper based his accounts of Benin and the Congo.

The further back one goes into the past, the more in practice one must depend on compilers for what original material has survived. This is why, for example, I have entries for the fifteenth century chronicles of such as Ruy de Pina and Eanes de Azurara (1438 PINA; 1441 AZURARA) because, although they did not themselves go to western Africa, it was their duty as official chroniclers to be in close touch with, and to record the activities of, those who did. For that matter, Pacheco Pereira, the author of one of the two major early Portuguese accounts of western Africa, the *Esmeraldo de Situ Orbis* (1505 PACHECO), although he had an active African career, and therefore a first-hand understanding of what he was writing about, compiled his account of the western coast in Portugal essentially as an office exercise. Indeed, for the whole fifteenth century there would seem to be only four published European accounts of western Africa which can be directly related to personal visits. Two of these, those by Antonio Malfante (1447 MALFANTE) and Eustache de la Fosse (1479 LA FOSSE) were published as a result of the work of modern scholars; that by Alvise da Ca' da Mosto (1455 CA' DA MOSTO) was first published in what is accepted as the first printed collection of travel literature ((1507) VOYAGES: PAESI); while the survival of the fourth, Diogo Gomes's account of his voyages (1457 GOMES), is to the credit of one of the major collectors and compilers of the early sixteenth century, Valentim Fernandes. Although he was based in Lisbon for the whole of his active career, it is to Fernandes that we owe the other major early Portuguese account of western Africa (1506 FERNANDES), and much of this was apparently compiled from first-hand material which is not known to have survived independently.

6. See (1800) DAMBERGER, 1795 HAWKINS, 1807 DRAKE, 1810 ADAMS, 1828 DOUVILLE, 1845 DUNCAN, and 1856 DU CHAILLU. The conjunction of a Hawkins and a Drake appears to be fortuitous!

As for later times, there is no question that, as there developed a sizeable and lucrative market for books of travel, so quite a few travellers did as Barbot did, and embellished their accounts of their own experience with what they had read or heard. Consider, for example, the relationship between the published texts of William Johann Müller, Hans Jacob Zur Eich, and Nicolas Villault, each of whom was on the Gold Coast in the 1660s and in communication with one or both of the others, and of Father Loyer, who clearly seems to have embellished his account of his visit to Assini in 1701-02 from a reading of Villault.<sup>7</sup> Or if the travellers did not provide their own embellishment, then there were editors, compilers and publishers who would do it for them. As has already been said, Labat was always improving on his sources, while the second book, that of 1744, attributed to William Smith is clearly a publisher's confection (see 1726 SMITH).<sup>8</sup> So far as I am able, I have sought in notes to explain such authors' connections with western Africa and to give some guidance as to sources and borrowings. In so doing, I have often myself borrowed from the work of other scholars, and I have always tried to provide some acknowledgment of this.

It is in such matters, as also to some extent in my efforts to deal as comprehensively as I can with the various editions and translations in which many of the longer-living works have appeared, that I think my work differs from other guides which deal with early published sources for western Africa. None of the five which essay a general coverage and which immediately come to mind have provided so much critical apparatus. The two pioneer works have no annotation at all.

The first of these is the *Bibliothèque Asiatique et Africaine, ou catalogue des ouvrages relatives à l'Asie et à l'Afrique qui ont paru depuis la découverte de l'imprimerie jusqu'en 1700* by H. Ternaux-Complans, published in Paris as early as 1841 and recently reprinted.<sup>9</sup> The first and last words of his Preface endear him to me by exactly mirroring my own thoughts. He begins

In deciding that I should publish this work, I could not hide from myself that it doubtless contained many errors and omissions. . . ,

and he ends by asking his readers to send him suggestions and corrections so that he can produce a supplement and a list of errata. (Unfortunately I can find no evidence that such a supplement and list ever appeared.) I estimate that 85% of Ternaux-Complans's nearly 3200 entries relate to Asia, but this still leaves something like 500 for Africa. Of these, North Africa and Ethiopia get the lion's share; a rough check through the excellent index suggests

7. 1662 MÜLLER, 1659 ZUR EICH, 1666 VILLAUT, and 1701 LOYER. See on these, and on wider aspects of borrowing, Adam Jones, 'Semper aliquid veteris: printed sources for the history of the Ivory and Gold Coasts, 1500-1750', *JAH*, 27 (1986) 215-35.

8. The expansion of the market for books of travel is usefully demonstrated in Paul Kaufman, *Borrowings from the Bristol Library, 1773-1784* (Bibliographical Society of the University of Virginia, Charlottesville, 1960), where it is shown that books of travel and of geographical description were the second most popular category of books in circulation towards the end of the eighteenth century. I owe this reference to Professor J.T.Boulton.

9. Amsterdam, B.R.Gruner, 1968. Ternaux-Complans was the author of a number of works of bibliography and history. There is a parallel work which I have not seen, namely Jean Gay, *Bibliographie des ouvrages relatives à l'Afrique et à l'Arabie, catalogue méthodique de tous les ouvrages français et des principaux en langues étrangères...*, San Remo, 1875.

suggests that western Africa may not have far short of 100 entries, including 29 for Guinea, 24 for Congo and 13 for Angola. However 'entries' is not the same as 'items'; Ternaux-Complains lists his entries by their dates of publication, and each new edition or translation of an item that he has noticed involves an additional entry. Secondly there is the somewhat similar but less polished work by Philip Paulitschke, *Die Afrika-Literatur in der Zeit von 1500 bis 1750*, published in Vienna in 1882.<sup>10</sup> This is arranged by regions. The section for West Africa has 182 items, including some extracted from collections of voyages, and it sometimes gives some indication of later editions and of translations.

In 1935 there appeared Edward Cox's *A reference guide to the literature of travel, including voyages, geographical descriptions, adventures, shipwrecks and expeditions*.<sup>11</sup> Despite the all-embracing title, this is limited to works published in Great Britain. However Cox usually mentions the foreign original of a work that had been translated into English, and he also has an addendum which lists 'some foreign collections' of voyages. The basic arrangement is by geographical area, but there are also sections for collections, circumnavigations and 'general travels'. Within each section, the arrangement is chronological by date of publication. Cox's Africa section has 246 items appearing between 1554 and 1800. But this includes as separate items the abstracts of accounts that were published by compilers such as Astley and Pinkerton (see 1745 VOYAGES: ASTLEY and 1808 VOYAGES: PINKERTON in the present *Guide*). On the other hand it is odd that Cox does not have separate entries for the accounts that were published by the pioneer English collectors, Eden, Hakluyt and Purchas (1555 EDEN, 1589 HAKLUYT, 1613 & 1625 PURCHAS). About 70 of the items in Cox's Africa section relate to western Africa. He has missed quite a bit, and though he has provided substantial annotation, it is almost entirely on bibliographical matters. He has failed to realise, for example, that Damberger is a *faux original*; on the other hand, he is shrewd in his judgment on Barbot.

In 1966, consequent upon work previously done for the Twelfth International Historical Congress (Vienna, 1965), Raymond Mauny produced a considerable 'Contribution à la bibliographie de l'histoire de l'Afrique noire des origines à 1850'.<sup>12</sup> This has sections on relevant journals, bibliographies and so on, but the greater part of it is concerned to list original sources for the pre-colonial history of sub-Saharan Africa. This part of the work has three sections: 'Classical Antiquity', which runs to A.D.639; the 'African Middle Ages' from 639 to 1434; and 'Pre-colonial tropical Africa from the arrival of the Europeans to the colonial conquest, 1434-1850'. As an archaeologist, Professor Mauny is probably more at home in the first two sections; so far as the third is concerned, it is rather as though he is reminiscing from his life-long enthusiasm for the study of the African past than setting out to provide an authoritative guide to the sources. Nevertheless his piece does mention a very large number of original sources, and it provided me with my first references to a number of them.

Finally, mention should be made of the very substantial work in 800 pages that was produced in 1972 by a team led by Robert L. Hess and Dalvan M. Coger, *Semper ex Africa; a bibliography of primary sources for nineteenth century tropical Africa as recorded by*

10. I was introduced to Paulitschke by Dr Adam Jones.

11. 3 vols, Seattle, University of Washington, 1935. The African material is in Vol.1, which was reprinted in 1948.

12. *BIFAN*, B, 28 (1966) 927-65.



*explorers, missionaries, traders, travelers, administrators, military men, adventurers and others.* This is a bare catalogue, but it does have the enormous merit of essaying to list all material which has appeared in periodicals as well as that which was published in book form.

There are, of course, published bibliographies for a number of the modern states which today occupy the area of Africa with which this *Guide* is concerned. Two of these perhaps merit special attention, A.W. Cardinall's *A bibliography of the Gold Coast* (Accra, 1931), and E. Joucla's monumental *Bibliographie de l'Afrique Occidentale Française* (Paris, 1937). Neither measures up to modern bibliographical standards - indeed, in both of them, a good deal of intuition and experience is needed to identify and make sense of many entries - but both of them are works of vast enthusiasm which cover a great deal of ground, and from which many riches may be discovered by diligent excavation.

In this *Guide*, I have tried throughout to give guidance to the various, and sometimes numerous, editions, adaptations and translations that exist for many of the items. It is important to do this because none but the largest libraries are likely to have more than one or two versions of the older and rarer books, and these versions may not be identical or all of equal value. In this field I have become more and more conscious that there are many traps for the unwary. Before the establishment of modern copyright laws, in effect before the nineteenth century, a printed work might be copied, adapted, abbreviated, summarised, quoted, plagiarised and translated more or less *ad infinitum*. Before Germany was unified, it was common for two or three publishers in different states to issue translations of the same foreign language original, and odd things could also happen in unified countries. Thus two English translations of 1666 VILLAUT were put out by London publishers in the same year, while in 1695 two to all intents and purposes identical editions of 1682 LE MAIRE appear to have issued from the one publisher in Paris!<sup>14</sup>

The consequence of continual copying, adaptation, translation and so on is that what was originally written could be changed almost beyond recognition, and that what was originally reliable might be seriously distorted. I am conscious that I have not reached finality in some of the more difficult cases, nor have I essayed to rival the meticulousness of professional bibliographers.<sup>15</sup> In some cases, of course, even these have not reached finality: (1507) VOYAGES: PAESI provides an example of this. I must also confess that I have not held in my hands, let alone read, all the various items and their variants and translations that I have mentioned in the *Guide*. In theory this is inexcusable. In practice it may not be quite as bad as it seems; many of the names which appear in the list of Acknowledgements immediately following this Introduction are those of colleagues who are more experienced than I in certain sections of the literature and who have read or seen things that I have not. Without their help the *Guide* would be both less complete and less accurate than it is. In addition, I have always tried to check entries against the information given in national bibliographies or catalogues.

14. The second point would seem to have escaped the notice of the cataloguers of the Bibliothèque Nationale in Paris. It was investigated by Yves St-Martin in *BIFAN*, B, 26 (1964) 709-13 (a reference I owe to Adam Jones), whose conclusion was that the most likely explanation was that one edition was pirated, probably in Amsterdam.

15. One quite admirable bibliography which was very useful to me is Peter C. Hogg's *The African slave-trade and its suppression; a classified and annotated bibliography* (London, 1972).

In this respect I have realised how lucky we are in the English-speaking world to have two such great, comprehensive, painstaking and complementary works as the British Library's *General Catalogue of Printed Books* and the United States *National Union Catalog*. Compared with these giants, the *Catalogue Général des Livres Imprimés* of the French Bibliothèque Nationale hardly rates more than B-. As for the German *Gesamtverzeichnis des deutschsprachiger Schrifttums, 1700-1910*, the best that can be said is that 'it tries hard'; it is not all that *gesamt* even within its limited chronological range. However in recent years knowledge of early books in German relating to West Africa has been greatly advanced by the meticulous research of Adam Jones - e.g. his article in *History in Africa*, 13 (1986). In this context it is also worth remarking that the catalogue of the Österreichische Nationalbibliothek in Vienna is available on microfiche. Scandinavian and Dutch items posed particular problems; for the most part I had to depend on the cooperation of colleagues who could check them in libraries in their countries of origin. However a computerised Netherlands Short Title Catalogue for books published during 1540-1800 is in progress (and by 1991 could be questioned in respect of the 1540-1700 holdings of the Koninklijke Bibliotheek and some of those of the Library of the University of Amsterdam).<sup>16</sup> In the case of Italian items - particularly important for the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries - it has not seemed practical to do much more than to check them against the great catalogues from London and Washington.

In the case of English-language items, I hoped for help and contributions from the computerised *Eighteenth Century Short Title Catalogue* produced by Dr R.C. Alston and his colleagues in the Reference Division of the British Library. The computer was asked to produce for me lists of all the titles it had which contained appropriate key words. The ones I chose that produced some results (I give the number of their occurrences in the *STC* in parentheses) were Africa/African/Africk etc (570), Guinea (102), Sierra Leone (14), Gold Coast (11), Senegal (9), Gambia (4), Dahom(e)y (3), Angola (2) and Cape Verde (1). I undoubtedly missed some variations in the spelling of these names; on the other hand, I also had some key words - such as Benin, Calabar and Congo - which produced no occurrences at all. In all there were 716 occurrences, though this did not mean that there were 716 relevant titles because, of course, more than one key word could occur in a title. Nevertheless at first sight there did seem to be the prospect of finding a considerable amount of material previously unknown to me. In practice this was not so. For example, most of the occurrences of 'Guinea' related to the coin rather than to West Africa. Furthermore - as indeed was expected - the key words led to the extraction of the titles of a great number of pamphlets and fly-sheets which dealt with the controversy over the African trade and the Royal African Company in the early years of the eighteenth century, and with the arguments about the abolition of the slave trade at the end of it. There were something like 150 in the first case and 30 in the second, and few of these dealt at all directly with situations in Africa itself. There was the further complication that the computer recognised any slight variation in a title, author's name, place and date of publication etc as constituting a separate item. The end result was that the *STC* produced the titles of only a handful of works bearing usefully on western Africa that were not already known to me.

This experience would seem to suggest that my *Guide* may be pretty exhaustive. I doubt whether this is really the case. I suspect that there may be a substantial number of items, particularly if written in languages other than English or printed and published in provincial

16. There are already standard guides to Dutch books published up to 1540 (and after 1800); few if any of the early Dutch books say anything relevant to western Africa.

towns, that I have yet to discover. The reasons why I decided to make my work public were that the search for each new item was becoming more and more difficult and time-consuming, and that - like Ternaux-Complans - I hoped that publication of what I had so far been able to achieve might stimulate more people to contribute to the work. I must also admit that, even before I was very close to my cut-off point in the mid 1860s, I was experiencing increasing problems of deciding whether certain categories of material should be included and, if so, how far to go with them.

In general I have sought to include publications concentrating on European activities in, or in respect of, Africa only when it seems to me that a seeker after knowledge of western Africa and its inhabitants would have a reasonable chance of finding in them at least some of the particular information he is seeking. There is clearly a subjective element in such judgments. I have already explained that I have included only a handful of the titles in the *Eighteenth Century Short Title Catalogue*, most of them no more than pamphlets, which treat of England's or Scotland's trade with Africa, because most of these are no more than contributions to a purely domestic controversy. On the other hand, entries have been given for the *Proceedings*, from 1790 onwards, of the African Association, and the *Reports* of the Sierra Leone Company, from 1794, and of the African Institution, from 1807, all of which seem to me to include original material relating to western Africa. For the same reason, I have included entries for British parliamentary papers dealing with the Atlantic slave trade and with western African affairs, from their beginnings in the 1780s. I have also essayed to mention early rutters, *roteiros* and pilot books, accounts of the pioneer hydrographic surveys of the west coast of Africa, dictionaries and grammars of the languages of western Africa, and descriptions of its medical situation (a particular group of which is listed under 1822 STORMONT).

So far as newspapers are concerned, there are entries only for the two *Royal Gazettes* of early nineteenth century Sierra Leone and the Gold Coast. In any modern sense, newspapers began to be produced in West Africa itself only at the very end of the period covered by the *Guide*, and most of the pioneers were rather ephemeral both as regards their publication runs and the survival of copies for posterity. There is, of course, much useful information about western Africa to be found in periodicals published *outside* Africa. I have not thought it feasible to search out all the items that might be relevant; it would require an enormous slice of any individual's time and energy. Entries for journal articles have been provided only when I was already aware of them, or came across them in the course of other enquiries, and when the pieces in question were substantial and seemed to me to contain important information which was not available in book form. Other people may well quarrel with my judgment here. However I do not believe that my approach has serious inconveniences before the eighteenth century - indeed, probably before the last quarter of that century. The reason is that the publication of what may be variously termed periodicals, journals or magazines does not really begin before the later seventeenth century and, so far as I am aware, there is not much African material in such publications before the end of the eighteenth century. For the most part in the *Guide*, periodical items relating to western Africa in times previous to about 1780-1800 derive from the discovery and publication of relevant manuscripts by modern scholars, and I have endeavoured to cover the appropriate historical journals.

The earliest periodicals known to me which contain material of importance relating to western Africa are *The Gentleman's Magazine* (which began publication in 1731) and *The*

*Monthly Review* (1749-1845).<sup>17</sup> Outside Britain, I know of little of this generalist kind of journal of comparable date except the *Allgemeine Literatur-Zeitung* (1785-1849). The great age of literary and political journals for an educated middle and upper class public really only blossoms with the nineteenth century, and these journals do reflect a new 'modern' interest in Africa which had begun a few years earlier with the anti-slave trade campaign and the beginnings of scientific exploration. Certainly any scholar looking for published material bearing on his interests in western Africa in the early nineteenth century would do well to explore such journals as *The Edinburgh Review* (began 1802), *The Quarterly Review* (began 1809), *Blackwood's Magazine* (began 1817), *The Athenaeum* (began 1828) and *La Revue des Deux Mondes* (began 1829). By this time, more specialised journals were also under way. The periodical publications of the major missionary societies, especially those of Britain, Germany, Switzerland, France and the U.S.A., are obviously of major importance, and many new societies were founded at the end of the eighteenth and the beginning of the nineteenth centuries. Beginning a little later, the geographical journals also provide a rich mine to quarry. The *Bulletin* of the Paris Société de Géographie begins in 1822; the London Society's *Journal* in 1832; *Petermanns Mittheilungen* in 1855. Also important are the *Annales des Voyages* and the *Nouvelles Annales des Voyages* which between them run from 1808 to 1870 with a gap at 1815-17. Then there is a class of specialist journals in which the British were perhaps less strong than some other imperial nations,<sup>18</sup> those specifically concerned with what were becoming colonial affairs. Of particular importance, it seems to me, are the French journal which began in 1848 as *Revue Coloniale*, then became *Revue Algérienne et Coloniale*, and finally in 1861 became *Revue Maritime et Coloniale*, and the non-official sections of two Portuguese publications, *Annaes Maritimos e Coloniaes* (1840-46?) and *Annaes do Conselho Ultramarino* (1854-67). Furthermore in the Portuguese sphere no one interested in the history of Angola can afford to ignore the publication of documents by *Archivos de Angola* (1933-39 & 1943- ).

There are several guides to 'periodicals for African Studies',<sup>19</sup> but I must confess that I found few of these very helpful for my purposes. They seem for the most part to concentrate on modern rather than historical studies, to list current journals rather than those of the past and those published in Africa rather than those outside it, and to stress the Africa-oriented journals at the expense of more general ones which do not consistently publish African material. From my point of view, the most useful guide I have found is the list of the publications from which the Hess and Coger team tell us they had extracted their periodical pieces (see p.xv above) - though it must not be forgotten, of course, that they were looking only for material relating to the nineteenth century. There are, however, useful guides to missionary periodicals, for example that by David P. Henige to those of the Catholic societies and that by Benoit Girardin to those of the Swiss Protestant societies.<sup>20</sup> But in

17. However the *Guide* does list two pieces that appeared in the *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society* for 1697; see 1686 HILLIER and 1694 PETTIVER.

18. But see Philip D. Curtin, *The Image of Africa* (Madison, 1964) at pp.339-42.

19. For example, Helen F. Conover, *Serials for African Studies* (Washington, Library of Congress, 1961); Eugene de Benko & Patricia L. Butts, *Research sources for African Studies; a checklist of relevant serial publications...* (East Lansing, Michigan State University, 1969); and Reference Department, Library of Congress, *Sub-Saharan Africa; a guide to serials* (Washington, 1970).

20. David P. Henige, *Catholic missionary journals relating to Africa* (Waltham, Mass., Crossroads Press, 1980); Benoit Girardin, *Périodiques missionnaires protestants et romands* (Basel, 1982).

this connection mention must be made of the six magnificent volumes of the *Bibliotheca Missionum*, begun by Fr Robert Streit and continued by Fr Johannes Dindinger, which deal with the literature relating to the mission of the Catholic Church in Africa up to 1940.<sup>21</sup> These volumes, Nos 15 to 20 of the whole work, seek to list all publications relating to Catholic missionary activity in Africa, books as well as periodical articles, and they include historical and second-hand references as well as those which are contemporary and first-hand. The entries are arranged chronologically by the dates of the original activities. Substantial biographical data and excellent indexes are provided - to subjects, places, ethnic groups and languages, as well as to authors and the active individuals.

Maps and atlases have not been included in the *Guide*. There is, of course, an enormous field here (it is interesting to note that about a fifth of the items in Joucla's A.O.F. bibliography are cartographical), but it was by no means obvious to me that the acquisition of the rather special skills required to exploit it would be justified by the likely results. Properly dated maps, and especially series of them over time, do convey important information about the changing patterns of human occupation and exploitation of the earth's surface (and also, of course, about the extent and quality of geographical knowledge). But I have supposed the *Guide* to be primarily an aid to the better understanding not of people in space, but of people in societies. I would certainly not go so far as to say that the maps and atlases that touch on western Africa from about 1450 to about 1865 never provide information about its human societies. Sometimes they certainly do, especially perhaps in the texts with which they are occasionally embellished. But since it is not the purpose of most maps and atlases to convey such information, it would be necessary to sieve through large numbers of them for relatively little result, and this I have not done.

So far as collections of voyages are concerned, I cannot claim to have noted them all, and some of them are purely derivative. But I trust that I have included those which contain significant material for western Africa. Nevertheless it is important to appreciate that what is printed in a collection in respect of any particular traveller is often only a précis of an account which may have been more completely published elsewhere, e.g. as a book in its own right. Often too such a précis will concentrate on the travails of the traveller and say rather little about the people he was journeying among. Where I am conscious that a major account which has been published independently also appears in some form in one or more of the collections of voyages, this is indicated by a bare mention of the name of its collector or publisher after the publication details of the independent account. See, for example, 1682 LE MAIRE, where it is indicated that some account of his voyage may also be found in the Harleian Collection and in the collections of Astley, Prévost, Schwabe and Walckenaer.

The fact that I have confined myself to works published in European languages means that works originally published in other languages - Arabic is far and away the most important - are included only when I know that they are available in some translation. Moreover, since few scholars can be equally at home in all the European languages which have been used to write about western Africa (Magyar is probably the most exotic), I have always tried to indicate whether a work first published in one European language has been translated into others and, if so, which ones. But it is important to appreciate that no translation can be as authentic as the original. Some of the earlier translations mentioned in the *Guide* are really more adaptations than translations, in which whole sentences or sections

21. These volumes were published for the Institut für Missionwissenschaftliche Forschung by Verlag Herder, Freiburg, 1951-54.

can be inserted or omitted to meet the supposed taste of readers in the new language or simply the whims of the new editor or publisher or bookseller.

Where I know that the necessary work has been done, I provide indications of the reliability of particular translations, and I also try to indicate where full critiques of a translation may be found. If, for example, a user of the *Guide* follows up the reference to Professor Hair's work on the translations of (1668) DAPPER, he will be told that, while the German text is virtually a word for word translation of the original Dutch, albeit with sometimes confusing respellings of African names and terms, the commonly used French translation is so incomplete and inaccurate that 'its continued referential use by scholars cannot be justified'. Interestingly enough, the English adaptation which was put out by John Ogilby without any mention of Dapper on its title page - and which therefore appears in the *Guide* as (1670) OGILBY - comes out rather better in Hair's critique. Few translations have been put to the line by line scrutiny that Dr Albert van Dantzig has given to the English translation of 1688 BOSMAN (commonly accepted as a good translation for its time). A salutary article on the dangers of relying on translations is that by Dr Beatrix Heintze to which reference is made in the entry for 1671 G.A.CAVAZZI, in whose work she has a special interest. As she points out, even modern translators can mislead or make major errors of understanding or of translation. Perhaps the only good translations are those which also provide a copy of the text in the original. In any case, the golden rule must be that, when it comes to precise points, or when there is need to quote from a text, *any* translation must always be rigidly compared with its original.

In conclusion I should say that although - as may be seen from the following list of Acknowledgements - many other individuals have been kind enough to help in the preparation of the *Guide* by sharing with me aspects of their particular knowledge and expertise, it must continue to contain many errors of commission and omission, and for these I must remain entirely responsible. However I have believed - as Ternaux-Complans did more than a century ago - that the best way to secure further improvement is to submit my work to the test of publication and to the criticism that should follow from it.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I wish to place on record my thanks to the following for their many valuable contributions and corrections to, and criticisms of elements of the *Guide*.

Mr Stanley B. ALPERS

M. Charles BECKER

Dr B.S.BENEDIKZ and Mr R.BIDDISCOMBE and their colleagues in  
the Special Collections and Enquiries Sections of  
the Birmingham University Library

Mr Michel DOORTMONT

Dr Paulo de MORAES FARIAS

Professor P.E.H.HAIR

Dr Beatrix HEINTZE

Dr David HENIGE

Professor Ray KEA

Mrs Marion JOHNSON

Dr Adam JONES

Dr Robin LAW

Dr T.C.McCASKIE

Professor Joseph C.MILLER

Mr G.W.SLOWEY

Dr Bernard STANDRING

Professor John K.THORNTON

Mrs Elizabeth de VEER

Mr Paul WILSON

Mrs Selena WINSNES

J. D. F.

## NOTES ON THE ENTRIES

ORDER OF ENTRIES. This is first chronological, according to the date at the top left-hand corner of an entry, and then alphabetical, following the name or headword in the top right-hand corner, *except that* collections of documents or of voyages come after individually named entries.

DATES AT TOP LEFT-HAND CORNER. These are normally those when the person or persons responsible for the creation of the source were *active*, e.g. 1455-62 represents the period when CA'DA MOSTO was voyaging to and trading on the West African coasts. However, a date in parentheses, e.g. (1494) for MÜNZER, is the date when a source was first *published*.

NAMES AND HEADWORDS IN TOP RIGHT-HAND CORNER. The aim has been to provide detail or information sufficient to facilitate identification in the catalogue of a large library. In the first edition, there were technical reasons why - except in the indexes - accents and diacriticals were not provided for names printed in CAPITALS (and here the German *Umlaut* was replaced by an 'E' after the vowel to be modified). These technical reasons do not apply to the present printing, but it is possible that previously missing accents and diacriticals may not always be found outside the indexes.

NAMES OF AUTHORS, COMPILERS, EDITORS etc. If the person named in the top right-hand corner is the author of the account, or the compiler or editor of the collection of voyages or documents which is the subject of the entry, his or her name is not repeated before the title of the work. If an individual account has been published via the medium of an editor, that editor's name will be attached to the title in the form which seems most appropriate to the particular form of publication. For example (under 1639 CADORNEGA) *História geral das guerras angolanas*, ed. José Matias DELGADO...; or (under 1663 FARO) Luis SILVEIRA, *Peregrinação de André de Faro*...

TITLES OF BOOKS AND ARTICLES. If more than one line in length, these may have been abbreviated (with ... indicating lacunae), but usually not so as to exclude mention of the parts of Africa visited or described or of other significant detail.

PLACE AND DATE OF FIRST PUBLICATION follow immediately after the title, followed in their turn by indications of subsequent printings or editions; these indications tend to be more complete for the earlier and rarer books but they rarely approach a complete bibliographical apparatus. Where known, the existence of a modern facsimile is indicated by 'facs.' followed by a date (and by the place of publication if it is different from that of the original publication).



TRANSLATIONS are indicated by 'Fr. trans.', 'Ger. trans.' etc followed by dates; *titles* of translations are given only when they differ significantly from the titles in the original languages.

MODERN EDITIONS are mentioned in the line or lines below that in which translations have been indicated; these may of course include modern translations.

COLLECTIONS OF VOYAGES. If the compiler was aware that a work entered in its own right is also reproduced in some form in a collection of voyages, this is indicated following any mention of translations or modern editions by the name - using lower case letters - of the editor or publisher of the collection preceded by the date of its publication. e.g. '1745 Astley', '1826 Walckenaer'.

CROSS REFERENCES are given in the form: date of the entry (or first date where a span of years is indicated) followed by the significant name of the author or headword(s), e.g. '1447 MALFANTE' or '1552 SÃO MIGUEL'. Note that in the case of members of the Catholic mendicant orders before modern times, the significant personal name is usually the Christian name, thus Father Bonaventura da Corella becomes 1654 BONAVENTURA. If a publication is a collection of documents or of voyages rather than an individual work, then the appropriate clue has been inserted in the cross reference, e.g. '1450 COLLECTION: BLAKE', '(1507) VOYAGES: PAESI'.

NOTES AND COMMENTS by the *Guide's* compiler are printed in closely set type, and for the most part come at the end of an entry. Absence in the notes of any indication of the geographical or chronological coverage of a work may indicate one of a number of things: the work is very well known (e.g. 1795 PARK); the coverage is already reasonably well indicated in the work's own title; or the compiler is not sufficiently familiar with the work to be able to provide an indication which will be at once succinct and unlikely to mislead!

## ABBREVIATIONS USED

Ac., Ak.	Academy, Académie, Akademie etc.
Afs	<i>African Studies</i>
ALS	<i>African Language Studies</i>
ARB	<i>Africana Research Bulletin</i> (Sierra Leone)
ARSC/OM	Académie Royale des Sciences Coloniales/d'Ostre-Mer
b.	born; bin, ibn
BCEHSAOF	<i>Bulletin du Comité d'Etudes Historiques et Scientifiques de l'Afrique Occidentale Française</i>

<i>BCGP</i>	<i>Boletim Cultural da Guiné Portuguesa</i>
Bibl. Nat.	Bibliothèque Nationale (Paris)
<i>BIFAN</i>	<i>Bulletin de l'Institut Français/Fondamental de l'Afrique Noire</i>
<i>BIHBR</i>	<i>Bulletin de l'Institut Historique Belge de Rome</i>
Bk.	Book
Bp	Bishop
Br. Lib.	The British Library
<i>BSGP</i>	<i>Bulletin de la Société de Géographie</i> (de Paris)
<i>BSQAS</i>	<i>Bulletin of the School of Oriental &amp; African Studies</i>
Capt.	Captain
Cdr	Commander
<i>CEA</i>	<i>Cahiers d'Etudes Africaines</i>
cent.	century
Ch., ch.	Chapter, chapter
C.M.S.	Church Missionary Society
Dr	Doctor
ed.	edition, edited by
<i>EHR</i>	<i>English History Review</i>
Eng.	English
<i>EHA</i>	<i>Etudes Historiques Africaines</i>
facs.	facsimile
Fr.	French
<i>Fr</i>	Father
Geog., Géog.	Geographical, Géographique etc.
Ger.	German
Hak.Soc.	Hakluyt Society
<i>HA</i>	<i>History in Africa</i>
IFAN	Institut Français/Fondamental d'Afrique Noire
<i>IJAHS</i>	<i>International Journal of African Historical Studies</i>
intro.	introduction
Is.	Island(s), Isle(s)
It.	Italian

IUP	Irish Universities Press / Irish Academic Press
<i>JAH</i>	<i>Journal of African History</i>
<i>JASoc</i>	<i>Journal of the (Royal) African Society</i>
<i>JHSN</i>	<i>Journal of the Historical Society of Nigeria</i>
<i>JRGS</i>	<i>Journal of the Royal Geographical Society</i>
<i>JWAL</i>	<i>Journal of West African Languages</i>
Linsch.Ver.	Linschoten Vereeniging
Lt	Lieutenant
Mem., Mém.	Memoir(s), Mémoire(s)
Mgr	Monsignor
M.R.C.S.	Member of the Royal College of Surgeons (London)
MS, MSS	Manuscript, Manuscripts
n.d.	no date of publication is stated
n.p.	no place of publication is stated
NUC	<i>National Union Catalog</i> (United States)
p., pp.	page, pages
Parl.Pap.	Papers of the United Kingdom Parliament
pub.	published
repr.	reprint, reprinted
rev.	revised
<i>Rev. Hisp.</i>	<i>Revue Hispanique</i>
<i>RFHM</i>	<i>Revue Française d'Histoire d'Outre-Mer</i>
R.N.	Royal Navy (of the United Kingdom)
Roy.	Royal
Ser., Sér.	Series, Série
Sgt	Sergeant
Soc.	Society, Société
Sp.	Spanish
Swed.	Swedish
<i>THSG</i>	<i>Transactions of the Historical Society of Ghana</i>
tr., trans.	translation, translated by
U.S.N.	United States Navy
V., Vol., vol.	Volume(s)

## SOURCES PRIOR TO THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY

c. 800 - c. 1600      COLLECTION: HOPKINS, J.F.P., & LEVTZION, Nehemia

*Corpus of early Arabic sources for West African history*, Cambridge, 1981.

This collection contains what has survived of the Arabic accounts of the western and central Sudan that were written in North Africa and the Levant from the earliest times, the ninth Christian century, to the sixteenth century. Relevant sections from 58 authors or collections are presented in English translation with very full annotation. Only the last nine authors lived in the period covered by this *Guide*, and none of these knew West Africa at first-hand. By their time, too, external Arabic knowledge of West Africa had deteriorated considerably from that achieved by the best authorities of the 11th to 14th centuries.

This is probably the best of three similar works which have appeared in recent years (see review article by Humphrey J. FISHER in *JAH*, 23, 4 (1982) 549-60); the other two appear as the next two items in the *Guide*.

c. 800 - c. 1600      COLLECTION: CUOQ, Fr Joseph

*Recueil des sources arabes concernant l'Afrique occidentale du VIII<sup>e</sup> au XVI<sup>e</sup> siècle*, Paris, 1975.

See comment under 800 COLLECTION: HOPKINS & LEVTZION. The sources are presented in French translation. Cuq's work is reviewed by Humphrey J. FISHER in *JAH*, 19, 4 (1978) 617-19.

c. 800 - 1299      COLLECTION: KOUBBEL, L.E., & MATEEV, V.V.

*Istochniki po etnografii i istorii Afriki yuzhnee Sakhary: Arabskie Istochniki*, 3 vols, Moscow & Leningrad, 1960, 1965, 1985.

See comment under 800 COLLECTION: HOPKINS & LEVTZION. It should be noted that the geographical scope of this collection is wider than that of the other two, and also that it is the only one that prints its texts in the original Arabic as well as in translation (in this case into Russian).

1342 onwards      COLLECTION: BRÁSIO, Fr António

*Monumenta Missionaria Africana: Africa Occidental*, Lisbon, 1952 onwards.

This is a collection of fundamental importance. Although Brásio's prime concern is with Catholic missionary activity, his material is also informative about a wide range of other matters.

The volumes are in two series. **Series 1** is concerned with the old diocese of S. Tomé, that is with the lands from Mina to the Cape of Good Hope. **Series 2** deals with the old diocese of Santiago, i.e.

[cont.]

Upper Guinea. By 1988, the first series, beginning in 1471, had extended to 15 volumes and had entered the eighteenth century, while the second series, beginning in 1342, was half way into the 17th century in five volumes.

Most of the items printed by Brásio are short, averaging perhaps 3 or 4 pages; they are letters, charters, commissions, reports etc found for the most part in archives in Portugal, Italy, Spain, France etc. But the collection also includes substantial extracts from early chronicles and from authors such as 1441 EANES, 1457 GOMES, 1505 PACHECO, 1506 FERNANDES, and 1552 BARROS. Some of the longer descriptive pieces printed by Brásio have been given separate entries in this *Guide*. Brásio sometimes checked his extracts against the original MSS, and these can be better readings than may be available elsewhere. But it should be noted that he provides hardly any annotation.

#### 1415 onwards

COLLECTION: MAGALHAES GODINHO, Vitorino

*Documentos sobre a expansão portuguesa*, 3 vols, Lisbon, 1943, '45, '56.

#### 1438-95

PINA, Ruy de

(1) *Chronica del Rey Dom Affonso*,

(2) *Chronica del Rey Dom João II*,

ed. J. CORREA da SERRA, *Colecção de livros inéditos de história portuguesa*, Vol. 1, Lisbon, 1790.

There are modern eds, e.g. Coimbra 1950; Porto, 1977.

Extracts in Eng. trans. may be found in 1450 COLLECTION: BLAKE; extracts in the original are printed in 1342 COLLECTION: BRASIO.

Pina was Chronicler Royal and Keeper of the Records at the Torre do Tombo at the time of the great discoveries under John II (1487-95) and Manuel (1495-1521). F. LEITE de FARIA in *Studia* (Lisbon), 19 (1966) 223-303 throws some light on Pina's sources for the Congo and prints an earlier version of his Congo text.

#### 1441-60

EANES de AZURARA (or ZURARA), Gomes

*Crónica do descobrimento e conquista de Guiné...*, ed. Visconde de SANTAREM, Paris, 1841.

Modern Portuguese eds include:

*Crónica do descobrimento e conquista de Guiné*, ed. José de BRAGANCA, 2 vols, Porto, 1937.

*Crónica dos feitos notáveis que se passaram na conquista de Guiné...*, ed. Torquato de SOUSA SOARES, 2 vols, Lisbon, 1978.

Annotated eds in other languages:

*The chronicle of the discovery and conquest of Guinea*, ed. C.R. BEAZLEY & E. PRESTAGE, 2 vols, Hak. Soc. 95 & 100, London, 1896-99.

*Chronique de Guinée*, ed. L. BOURDON, Dakar, 1960.

This contemporary account of the earliest Portuguese voyages remained unpublished until 1841. An abridgement of it was made by 1506 FERNANDES, but this too remained in manuscript until

the nineteenth century; it may be found in the edition of Fernandes by Baião. See António J. DIAS DINIS, *Vida e obras de Gomes Eanes de Zurara*, Lisbon, 1949.

1441-1807

COLLECTION: DONNAN, Elizabeth

*Documents illustrative of the history of the slave trade to America*, 4 vols, Washington D.C., 1930-35.

Documents relating to western Africa are to be found mainly in Vol. 1, especially pp.141-236, and Vol. 2.

1447

MALFANTE, António

Letter written in Latin from Tuat to Genoa,

First pub. by Charles de LA RONCIÈRE, e.g. in *La découverte de l'Afrique au moyen âge*, Vol.1, 151-58, *Méms de la Soc. Roy. de Géog. d'Egypte*, 5, Cairo, 1925. There is further information in Vol.3 (*Méms...*, 13, Cairo, 1927), 15-33.

Eng. trans. in G.R. CRONE, *The voyages of Cadamosto...*, Hak. Soc., 2nd ser. 80, London, 1937, 85-90.

1450-1560

COLLECTION: BLAKE, John W.

*Europeans in West Africa, 1450-1560*, 2 vols, Hak. Soc. 2nd ser. 86 & 87, London, 1942.

Vol. 1 contains material in Eng. trans. relative to Portuguese and Castilian activities in Guinea; vol. 2 presents material relating to the early English voyages to Guinea.

1455-62

CA' DA MOSTO, Alvise da

Delle navigationi di Messer Alvise da Ca' da Mosto, gentiluomo Venetiano written between 1463 and 1468, and first pub. in 1507 VOYAGES: PAESI; then republished with glosses in 1550 VOYAGES: RAMUSIO, Vol. 1.

Ger. trans. 1508 (facs 1980); Latin trans., Milan, 1508; Fr. trans. 1556 (mod. ed. by Ch. SCHEFER, 1895); Dutch trans., Antwerp, 1563; abridged Eng. trans. in 1745 VOYAGES: ASTLEY, Vol. 1.

Modern Italian variorum ed:

T.G. LEPORACE, *Le navigationi atlantiche del Veneziano Alvise da Ca' da Mosto*, Venice, 1966

Modern annotated Eng. trans:

G.R. CRONE, *The voyages of Cadamosto and other documents...*, Hak. Soc., 2nd ser. 80, London, 1937.

(Sierra Leone section only) P.E.H. HAIR, *S. Leone Bull. Relig.* 11 (1969)

Modern ed. with Port. trans:

D. PERES, *Viagens de Luis de Cadamosto e de Pedro de Sintra*, Lisbon, 1948.

Cadamosto, a Venetian in the Portuguese service, traded during 1455-56 at Arguin, in the Wolof kingdoms, and as far as the Gambia, but his narrative also encompasses the voyage of Pedro de SINTRA to Sierra Leone in 1462.

c.1457-60

GOMES, Diogo

De prima inventione Guineæ.

The original text of this seems to have been written down in German by Martin Behaim from an oral statement made by Gomes more than 20 years after his voyages, but all that has survived is the Latin translation (see 1506 FERNANDES) which was first published by:

J.A.SCHMELLER in *Abhandl. phil.-philol. Kl. K. Bayer Akad. d. Wiss.*, 4, 3 (1847) 1-73.

Partial Eng. trans. in R.H.MAJOR, *Life of Prince Henry of Portugal*, London, 1868.

Partial Eng. ed., based on Major, by G.R.CRONE, in *Voyages of Cadamosto...*, Hak. Soc., 2nd ser. 80, London, 1937.

Modern Port. eds:

António BAIÃO, *O manuscrito Valentim Fernandes*, Lisbon, 1940, & 1415

COLLECTION: MAGALHAES GODINHO, Vol.2; text only in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO, ser. 2, Vol. 1.

Modern annotated ed. of Latin text with parallel Fr. trans:

Th.MONOD, R.MAUNY, & G.DUVAL, *De la première découverte de la Guinée; récit par Diogo Gomes*, Bissau, 1959.

The matter omitted in some of the editions of Gomes is essentially his recollections of Portuguese maritime exploration prior to his own first voyage in c.1457.

c.1470-c.1880

COLLECTION: PALMER, Sir Herbert Richmond

(1) *Sudanese Memoirs...*, 3 vols, Lagos, 1928. facs. 3 vols in 1, London, 1967

A miscellany of translations (of varying quality) of Arabic documents written and collected in the central Sudan. Few of the MSS are thought to be earlier than the 19th century, but some are likely to be recensions of a literary tradition going back to the 15th century, and some must originally have been orally maintained traditions which peer even further into the past. One of the most substantial of the documents is the 'Kano Chronicle', in Vol. 3, pp.92-132.

(2) *The Bornu Sahara and Sudan*, London, 1936. facs. New York, 1970.

A second and substantial miscellany of translations of Arabic MSS, relating particularly to Bornu and to Aïr. See also 1564 AHMAD b. FURTU.

c.1474

PULGAR, Hernando del

*Crónica de los señores reyes católicos Don Fernando y Dona Isabel...*, modern ed. by Juan de MATA CARRIAZO, 2 vols, Madrid, 1943.

The chronicle was written at some time between 1482 and 1492, and was first published in 1565. It includes an account of the claimed Castilian discovery of Mina; this is printed in translation and with comment in 1450 COLLECTION: BLAKE, Vol.1, 205-7.

1479-80

LA FOSSE, Eustache de

'Voyage à la côte occidentale d'Afrique',

ed. R. FOULCHÉ DELBOSC, *Rev. Hisp.*, 4 (1897) 174-201.

ed. R. MAUNY (West African section only), *BCGP*, 14 (1949) 181-95.

ed. Denis ESCUDIER, *Voyage de Eustache Delafosse...*, Paris, 1992.

Annotated Eng. trans. of Sierra Leone section by P.E.H.HAIR, *ARB*, 4, 3 (1974) 49-54; Port. trans. by Joaquim Montezuma CARVALHO, Lisbon, 1992.

La Fosse's account, written down in old age, of his voyage to and his stay on the Gold Coast in 1479-80, when the Portuguese were just establishing themselves there, is one of the earliest surviving accounts of West Africa by a European who was not in the Portuguese service. For comment and interpretation see J.D.FAGE in *HA*, 7 (1980); on the Mina vocabulary recorded by Fernandes, see P.E.H.HAIR, *JWAL*, 3 (1966), and HAIR & D.DALBY, *JWAL*, 5 (1968).

c.1480-1520

COLLECTION: PERES, Damião

*Os mais antigos roteiros da Guiné*, Lisbon, 1952.

1482 onwards

COLLECTION: ALBUQUERQUE FELNER, Alfredo de

(1) *Angola; apontamentos sobre a ocupação e início do estabelecimento dos Portugueses no Congo, Angola e Benguela*, Coimbra, 1933.

(2) *Angola; apontamentos sobre a colonização dos planaltos e litoral do sul de Angola*, 3 vols, Lisbon, 1940.

1487-89

BEMOIM, Prince João

A. TELXEIRA da MOTA, 'D. João Bemoim e a expedição portuguesa ao Senegal em 1489', *BCGP*, 26 63-111.

Bemoim was a Wolof prince who sought Portuguese help in a conflict with his brothers. When this was not forthcoming and he was driven out, he took shelter with the Portuguese, who took him to Lisbon and converted him to Christianity, intending to instal him as a puppet ruler. But Bemoim died upon his return, and the Portuguese abandoned their enterprise. Some of the documentation is available in French translation:

'Textes portugais sur les Wolofs au XV<sup>e</sup> siècle: baptême du Prince Bemoim, 1488', trans. José GONCALVES with notes and commentary by Paul TEYSSIER, *BIFAN*, B, 30, 3 (1968), 822-46.

1492-1600

COLLECTION: BAL, Willy

*Le royaume du Congo au XV<sup>e</sup> et XVI<sup>e</sup> siècles: documents d'histoire*, Brussels, 1963.

A collection for the general reader. The documents printed here in French translation have all been published elsewhere in the original languages.



1492-1722

COLLECTION: PAIVA MANSO, L. M. J., *Visconde de**História do Congo; documentos 1492-1722*, Lisbon, 1877.

This includes the first publication of letters from the Manicongo Mbemba Nzinga or Afonso I (1506-43). The early 18th century documents are also important. See also 1506 AFONSO.

(1494)

MÜNZER (also MONETARIUS), Hieronymus

'De inventione Africae maritimae et occidentalis, videlicet Geneae, per Infantem Heinricum Portugalliae', ed. Friedrich KUNSTMANN, *Abhandl. hist. Kl.*, K. Bayer. Akad. d. Wiss., Munich, 7, 1 (1856).  
ed. with Port. trans., Basílio de VASCONCELOS, *O Instituto*, Coimbra, 83 (1932).

Münzer's work is often little more than a transcription of 1457 GOMES.

# 1501 - 1550

1501-1800

BALANDIER, Georges

*La vie quotidienne au royaume de Kongo du XVI<sup>e</sup> au XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle*, Paris, 1965.

Eng. trans. by H.WEAVER: *Daily life in the kingdom of the Kongo...*, London, 1967.

The weaknesses of this attempt by an eminent sociologist to reconstruct 17th and 18th century Bakongo society from the contemporary accounts written by visitors to it have been fully set out by the historian *cum* social-anthropologist Jan Vansina (see *Africa* 39, 1 (1969) 62-67). He shows that Balandier's use of the sources is lacking in rigour, and that his reconstruction is neither synchronic nor diachronic.

c.1502

al-MAGHILI, Muhammad b. °Abd al-Karim

John HUNWICK (ed. & tr.), *Shari'a in Songhay: the replies of al-Maghili to the questions of Askia al-Hajj Muhammad*, London, 1985.

1502-03

REM, Lucas

B. GRIEFF, *Tagebuch des Lucas Rems aus dem Jahren 1494-1541...*, Augsburg, 1861

Rem represented the Welsers in Portugal during 1503-08 and so had access to accounts of Vasco da Gama's second voyage to India in 1502-03. His brief account of C. Verde and the C. Verde Isles is available in an annotated English translation:

Adam JONES, 'The earliest German sources for West African history (1504-1509)', *Paideuma*, 35 (1989) 148.

c.1505-08

PACHECO PEREIRA, Duarte

*Esmeraldo de situ orbis*,

ed. by Rafael Eduardo de AZEVEDO BASTO, Lisbon, 1892,

Augusto Epiphania da SILVA DIAS, Lisbon, 1905; repr. 1975,

Damião PERES, Lisbon, 1954.

Annotated Eng. trans. by G.H.T.KIMBLE, Hak. Soc., 2nd ser. 79, London, 1937.

Port. text with Fr. trans, annotated, by R.MAUNY, Bissau, 1956.

Pereira's work is renowned as the first comprehensive guide to the coastlands of western Africa (from Morocco to the Great Fish River in South Africa); it is supposed that it was not published at the time it was composed because the Portuguese authorities did not want rivals to have access to its information. Pacheco Pereira was involved with the overseas enterprise of the Portuguese crown throughout his active career. Mauny's edition is to be preferred to Kimble's, but it does not extend south of Gabon. For comment on, and interpretation of, the section on lower Guinea, see J.D.FAGE in *HA*, 7 (1980).

1505-06

SPRINGER (or SPRENGER), Balthasar

*Die Merfahrt un Erfarung nüwer Schiffung und Wege zu vil onerkanten Inseln und Künigreichen...*, n.p., 1509. facs. Strasbourg, 1902.  
modern printing in W.HIRSCHBERG, *Monumenta Ethnographica*, 1, *Schwarzafrika*, Graz, 1962.

annotated English translation in Adam JONES, 'The earliest German sources for West African history (1504-1509)', *Paideuma*, 35 (1989) 149-53.

Sometimes called *Balthazar Springers Indienfahrt*, this is an account of the voyage made by the author on a Portuguese fleet to India, touching at Goree and C.Verde (and also at Mozambique). See art. cit. by JONES for other published accounts of Springer's voyage and for relevant literature.

1506-43

AFONSO I, *Manicongo*

*Correspondance de Dom Afonso, Roi du Congo, 1506-1543.*

trans. & ed. Louis JADIN & Mireille DICORATO, Brussels, 1974.

The translations may not always be depended upon. See also 1492 COLLECTION: PAIVA MANSO.

c. 1506-07

FERNANDES ALEMÃO, Valentim

António BAIÃO, *O manuscrito Valentim Fernandes*, Lisbon, 1940.

Fernandes was a German or Moravian printer, publisher and courtier living in Lisbon who collected MSS relating to geographical exploration for transmission to the Augsburg savant, Konrad Peutinger. These included MSS of 1441 EANES and of 1457 GOMES, and also an account of the western coastlands of Africa from Ceuta to Cape Mount which he himself had put together from a variety of sources, some of which are clearly first-hand. This last was first published as:

'Valentim Fernandes Beschreibung der westlichen Küste Afrikas', ed. Friedrich KUNSTMANN, *Abhandl. hist. Kl., K. Bayer Akad. d. Wiss.* (Munich), 8, 1 (1856); 8, 2 (1857); 9, 1 (1862).

There is an extensively annotated modern edition of the Portuguese text as established by Baião with a parallel Fr. trans; this was published in two parts:

- (1) *Description de la côte d'Afrique de Ceuta au Sénégal*, ed. P. de CENIVAL & Th. MONOD, Paris, 1938.
- (2) *Description de la côte occidentale d'Afrique (Sénégal au Cap de Monte, Archipels)*, ed. Th. MONOD, A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA, & R. MAUNY, Bissau, 1951.

The relation of Baião's text to the MSS has been critically examined by P.E.H.HAIR in *BIFAN*, B, 33, 4 (1969).

(1507)

VOYAGES: PAESI NOVAMENTE RETROVATI

*Paesi novamente ritrovati et nuovo mondo da Alberico Vesputio...*

ed. FRACANZANO de MONTALBODDO, Vicenza, 1507.

Subsequent eds include: Vicenza, 1508; Milan, 1508, 1512, & 1519; and Venice, 1513 & 1521.

[cont.]

Translations: Fr. 1516 & 1521; Eng. 1521; Ger. (Strasbourg) 1534.

This was the first published collection of voyages. There are some slight variations of title between the various editions, and the collection is sometimes known (erroneously) as *Il Mondo Nuovo*. Only the first of the six books concerns western Africa, 'El libro de la prima navigazione per l'oceano a la terre di Nigri de la Bassa Ethiopia...', i.e. 1455 CADAMOSTO. Books 2 and 3 deal with da Gama, 4 with Columbus, 5 with Vespucci, and 6 with Alvarez. There is sometimes confusion with 1532 VOYAGES: GRYNÆUS. It would seem that the texts which Fracanzano da Montalboddo edited had been put together by Alessandro Zorzi; see 1517 ZORZI.

c. 1509-13

LEO AFRICANUS

Della descrizione dell'Africa... per Giovan Lioni Africano,  
in G.B. RAMUSIO, *Delle navigationi e viaggi...*, Venice, 1550, Vol. 1.

Innumerable translations in many languages, including:

*A geographical historie of Africa*, tr. John PORY, London, 1600 (modern ed. by Robert BROWN, Hak. Soc., 1st ser., vols 92-4, London, 1896).

Good modern ed. in Fr. trans. by A. EPAULARD, with annotation by H. LHOÏTE, R. MAUNY, & Th. MONOD: *Jean-Léon l'Africain: Description de l'Afrique*, 2 vols, Paris, 1956.

Leo was born al-Hasan b. Muhammad al-Wazzan az-Zayyati at Granada between 1489 and 1495. Following the Spanish conquest, the family moved to Morocco. Between about 1509 and 1513, Leo made two trips to the Sudan. He was captured by a Christian corsair c.1518 and presented to Pope Leo X; it is known that the MS of his great *Description* was in existence by 1529, and it became the first item in 1550 VOYAGES: RAMUSIO. See also 1641 LEERS.

1514

LISBOA, João de

*Livro de marinaria, tratado da agulha de marear, por João de Lisboa; roteiros, sondas e outros conhecimentos relativos a navegação, codice do seculo XVI...*, ed. Jacinto Ignacio de BRITO REBELLO, Lisbon, 1903.

There is a collated ed. of the various MSS of the *Tratado da agulha de marear*, with full editorial matter and with a Fr. trans., by Luis de ALBUQUERQUE (*Rev. Univ. de Coimbra*, 29, (1981) 129-62), but this section of the material that was first published by Brito Rebello does not include any topographical information.

1517

[ ZORZI, Alessandro ]

F. LEITE de FARIA & A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA, 'Novidades náuticas e ultramarinas numa informação dada em Veneza em 1517', *Mem. Ac. Ciências Lisboa, Classe de Ciências*, 20 (1977) 7-75.

The authors print, with considerable annotation, that part of MS Magl. XIII, 80 in the Biblioteca Nazionale, Florence, which deals with western Africa. There is specific mention of Mina, Labadi, Benin, Udo, Calabar, the Gulf of Guinea islands, and Congo. The information was collected by Alessandro Zorzi in Venice in 1517, apparently in preparation for an up-dating of 1507 VOYAGES: PAESI NOVAMENTE RETROVATI.

**1518-1640** COLLECTION: CUVELIER, *Mgr Jean*, & JADIN, *Abbé Louis*  
*L'ancien Congo d'après les archives romaines (1518-1640)*, ARSC Mém. 36, 2,  
 Brussels, 1954.

Documents in Fr. trans., including many of the letters from the Congo kings and other pieces in Vat. lat. 12516 in the Vatican Library (cf. 1595 VIVES), most of which are to be found in the original languages in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO.

(1519)

ENCISO, Martin Fernandez de

*Suma de geographia que trata de todas las partidas y provincias del mundo...*  
 Seville, 1519; later eds. 1530 & 1546.

Modern ed. by J. IBANEZ CERDA, Madrid, 1948.

Eng. trans. with some additional material:

Roger BARLOW, *A brief summe of geographie*, written in 1541 but first pub. in an ed. by E.G.R. TAYLOR, Hak. Soc. 2nd ser. 69, London, 1932.

P.E.H. HAIR, 'Some minor sources for Guinea, 1519-59', *HA*, 3 (1976), has a translation of Enciso's section on Guinea with notes and discussion.

Hair points out that Enciso had never visited Africa but that he must have used unpublished Portuguese sources; however his material, though accurate, is thin and adds little to what is available in, e.g., 1505 PACHECO or 1506 FERNANDES. For the Congo, on the other hand, Enciso has the earliest printed account of *Manicongo* Afonso's war with his brother, and one which is independent of similar accounts in 1552 BARROS and 1554 RESENDE. See also 1544 FONTENEAU.

1522

SANTA MARIA DA COMÇEICA

A.F.C. RYDER, 'An early Portuguese trading voyage to the Forcados River',  
*JHSN*, 1, 4 (1959) 512-35.

Ryder was the first to print, in Eng. trans., the ship's book of this voyage which ended in the transfer of the cargo to another ship (see 1522 *SÃO MIGUEL*). The document was later printed in the original by A. BRASIO in *Studia* (Lisbon), 15 (1965) 155-74. There is also an annotated Fr. trans.:

R. MAUNY, 'Le livre du bord du navire *Santa Maria da Comçeiça*', *BIFAN*, B, 29 (1967) 512-35.

1522

SÃO MIGUEL

A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA & R. MAUNY, 'Livre de l'armement du Navire *São Miguel* de l'île de São Tomé au Bénin (1522)', *BIFAN*, B, 40 (1978) 66-86.

A ship's trading records. An abridged Eng. trans. is the first document in 1522 COLLECTION: RYDER. See also 1522 SANTA MARIA.

1522-1892

COLLECTION: RYDER, Alan Frederick Charles

*Benin and the Europeans, 1485-1897*, London, 1969.

Eight documents from the 16th, 17th & 19th centuries are printed in an appendix.

1526

NAVIO *SANTIAGO*

A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA, 'A viagem do navio *Santiago* à Serra Leoa e Rio de S. Domingos em 1526', *BCGP*, 24 (1969) 529-79.

A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA & R. MAUNY, 'Le voyage du navire *Santiago* à la Sierra Leone et la Rivière de S. Domingos (1526)', *BIFAN*, B, 37 (1975) 589-603.

Annotated Eng. trans. of Sierra Leone section by P.E.H. HAIR in *ARB*, 8, 1 (1978)

The instructions and accounts book of this voyage has useful details of early trading on the coast.

(1532)

VOYAGES: GRYNAEUS, Simon

*Novus Orbis regionum ac insularum veteribus incognitarum...*, Paris, 1532;

Basel, 1532, 1534, 1555.

Ger. trans. Strasbourg, 1534.

Grynaeus, Professor of Greek at Basel, edited this collection from material collected by Joannes HUTTICHIUS. There is sometimes confusion with 1507 VOYAGES: PAESI; the coverage is not dissimilar and both include 1455 CA' DA MOSTO.

c.1536?

ALFONCE, Jean. (or João AFONSO)

*Les voyages aventuriers du Capitaine Jan Alfonse, Sainctongeois...*

Poitiers, 1559; Rouen, 1578 & 1602; La Rochelle, c.1585.

Alfonse/Afonso was a seaman and pilot who sailed first in Portuguese vessels, from possibly as early as 1496 to about 1528, and was then based in France until his death in 1544. The MS of this book, probably composed about 1536, was apparently lost, and was not discovered and published until after his death. It would seem to be based to a considerable extent on Afonse's own voyaging, so that the western African material is often different from that in the adaptation of 1519 ENCISO with which his name is also associated (for which see 1544 FONTENEAU). There is original geographical and commercial information for the Congo region. The Guinea material in all three books is translated, annotated and compared by P.E.H. HAIR in *HA*, 3 (1976).

c.1540

? LAMY, Jehan

David DALBY & P.E.H. HAIR, '"Le langage de Guynee"; a sixteenth century vocabulary from the Pepper Coast', *ALS*, 5(1964) 174-91

The editors argue that the vocabulary relates to one of the dialects of Kru.

c. 1541

BARLOW, Roger

*A brief summe of geographie*, ed. E.G.R. TAYLOR, Hak. Soc., 2nd ser. 69, London, 1932.

This work, which remained in MS until published by Taylor, is basically a translation of 1519 ENCISO. It has little new material for western Africa.

c. 1544

FONTENEAU, Jean (*dit* ALFONSE)

*La cosmographie avec l'espère et régime du soleil et du nord*, par Jean Fonteneau dit Alfonse de Saintonge, ed. Georges MUSSET, Paris, 1904.

There is some doubt as to the extent of Jean Alfonse's participation in this work, which is basically a French version of 1519 ENCISO with some additions, and which remained unpublished until 1904. The useful geographical and commercial material concerning Guinea, Gabon and the Congo which it contains is often different from that in 1536 ALFONCE. The Guinea material is translated, annotated, and compared with the texts of 1519 ENCISO, 1536 ALFONCE and 1541 BARLOW by P.E.H. HAIR in *HA*, 3 (1976).

(1544)

MÜNSTER, Sebastian

*Cosmographia universalis*,

many printings in German, Latin, French etc from 1544 onwards.

Eng. trans. by Richard EDEN, *A treatyse of the newe India with other newfoundelandes and islandes*, London, 1553.

Münster's section on Guinea is derived from 1454 CA' DA MOSTO.

c. 1545

ANONYMOUS PORTUGUESE PILOT

'Navigazione da Lisbona all'isola di San Tomé...scritta per un pilotto portoghese', in G.B. RAMUSIO, *Navigazioni e viaggi*, Venice, 1550, vol.1, pp.125-29.

Annotated Eng. trans. by J.W. BLAKE, *Europeans in West Africa*, Hak. Soc., 2nd ser., 86 (London, 1942), Vol.1, pp.145-66.

Annotated Fr. trans. by Serge SAUVAGEOT, Th. MONOD, & R. MAUNY, 'Navigation de Lisbonne à l'île São Tomé par une pilote portugais anonyme (vers 1545)', *Garcia de Orta*, 9 (1961) 123-68.

An important original account.

(1550)

VOYAGES: RAMUSIO, Giovanni Battista

*Delle navigationi et viaggi...*, 3 vols, Venice, 1550-59.

Ramusio's western African material is in Vol.1 (first pub. 1550; 2nd ed. corrected & enlarged, 1554; 3rd ed. 1563; 4th ed. 1588) - though the First Decade of 1552 BARROS is to be found in Vol.2.

[cont.]

Thereafter the whole work was republished in 1606 in 3 vols entitled *Delle navigationi e viaggi raccolte da M. Gio. Battista Ramusio*, of which Vol.1 was reprinted in 1613.

Facs. ed. with intro. by R.A.SKELTON & G.B.PARKS, Amsterdam, 1967-70.  
(Vol.1 is from the 1563 ed.; vols 2 & 3 from that of 1606. The same text reset in modern type was pub. in 6 vols from Turin in 1978.)

Ramusio was the first to print 1509 LEO AFRICANUS and 1545 ANONYMOUS PORTUGUESE PILOT. Other substantial African items include 1455 CA' DA MOSTO and the voyages of Hanno and of Vasco da Gama.



# 1551 - 1600

(1552)

BARROS, João de

*Asia: dos feitos que os Portuguezes fizeram no descubrimento e conquista dos mares e terras do Oriente*, Década I, Lisbon, 1552.

(Decade II was pub. in 1553, III in 1563, and IV in 1615; I-III were reprinted in 1628. A later ed. entitled *Asia de J. de Barros: dos feitos...* appeared in 8 vols at Lisbon in 1777-78.)

Modern eds by A. BAIÃO, Coimbra, 1932; by H. CIDADE, Lisbon, 1945-46.

Eng. trans. and ed. of passages relating to West Africa in G.R. CRONE, *The voyages of Cadamosto and other documents...*, Hak.Soc., London, 1937 (see 1455 CA'DA MOSTO).

It. trans. of Decades I and II, Venice, 1562 (in VOYAGES: RAMUSIO, Vol.2).

Books 1 & 2 of the first Decade narrate the Portuguese discovery of the western coast of Africa in the 15th century. Barros was a man of the following century (b.1486, d.1570), but service at S. Jorge da Mina and later in senior positions in the Casa da Índia e Mina placed him in a good position to gain access to original material of the previous century, much of which has not survived in the original. Excerpts are printed in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO.

1553

WINDHAM, Thomas

'The voyage of M. Thomas Windham to Guinea and the kingdom of Benin, An. 1553' first printed in 1555 VOYAGES: EDEN and then reprinted in Richard HAKLUYT, *The principal(1) navigations...*, London, 1589; 2nd ed. 3 vols, London, 1598-1600.

Annotated modern ed. by J.W. BLAKE, *Europeans in West Africa...*, Hak.Soc., 2nd ser., 86-7 (London, 1942) Vol.2, 314-20.

Windham's voyage to Benin appears in Vol.6 of the Maclehoose ed. of Hakluyt (Glasgow, 1903-05) and in Vol.4 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907).

(1554)

RESENDE, Garcia de

*Livro que trata da vida do... Principe el Rey Dom João II*, Lisbon, 1554.

Resende was secretary to King John II of Portugal (1487-95). Excerpts from his chronicle are printed in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO.

1554-55

LOK, John

'The second voyage to Guinea set out...in the yere 1554, the Captaine whereof was M. John Lok', first printed in 1555 VOYAGES: EDEN, and reprinted in Richard HAKLUYT, *The principal(1) navigations...*, London, 1589; 2nd ed. 3 vols, 1598-1600.

[cont.]

Annotated modern ed. by J.W.BLAKE, *Europeans in West Africa...*, Hak.Soc., 2nd ser. 86-7 (London, 1942), Vol.2, 326-46.

Eden embellished a somewhat bleak account of a voyage to the Gold Coast and of the trade done there with a collection of traditional lore concerning Africa as a whole. The account may be found in Vol.6 of the Maclehose ed. of Hakluyt (Glasgow, 1903-05) and in Vol.4 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907).

1555

THEVET, André

(1) *Les singularitez de la France antarctique*, Paris, 1558.

Modern ed. by P.GAFFAREL, Paris, 1878.

This work is about Brazil, which Thevet visited in 1555. On his voyage out he called at Senegal and the Cape Verde Is.

(2) *La cosmographie universelle*, 2 vols, Paris, 1575.

The section on West Africa is partly based on his visit in 1555.

1555-58

TOWERSON, William

'The three voyages of Master William Towrson to Guinea',

in Richard HAKLUYT, *The principal(1) navigations...*, London, 1589: 2nd ed, 3 vols, 1598-1600.

Annotated modern ed. by J.W.BLAKE, *Europeans in West Africa...*, Hak.Soc., 2nd ser. 86-7 (London, 1942) Vol.2, 360-430.

Towerson's accounts are some of the most informative of the early European accounts of the Gold Coast and they include a description of a visit to the inland capital of Agona. For comment and interpretation see J.D.FAGE in *HA*, 7 (1980) and 1556-57 COLLECTION: HAIR. The accounts may be found in Vol.6 of the Maclehose ed. of Hakluyt (Glasgow, 1903-05), and in Vol.4 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907).

(1555)

VOYAGES: EDEN, Richard

*The decades of the newe worlde...*, London, 1555.

Eden was a propagandist for, and a promoter of English colonial ventures. In this work, he translates the first three decades of Peter Martyr's *De orbe nove...* of 1530 about Spanish successes in the Americas but also prints accounts of early English voyages, such as 1553 WINDHAM and 1554 LOK (which were subsequently incorporated in 1589 HAKLUYT).

1556-73

COLLECTION: HAIR, P.E.H.

*East of Mina: Afro-European relations on the Gold Coast in the 1550s and 1560s...*, African Studies Program, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1988.

Hair prints four Portuguese documents which refer to the second voyage of 1555 TOWERSON, in annotated Eng. trans. as well as in the original, together with annotated translations of 1572 INFORMAÇÃO and of another Portuguese document of 1573.

1560-65

COLLECTION: RUELA POMBO, *Fr* Manuel*Angola Menina (1560-1565)*, Lisbon, 1944.

All the documents in this collection are also printed in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO.

1562-64

BAKER, Robert

P.E.H. HAIR, *Travails in Guinea; Robert Baker's 'Breve Dyscourse'...*,  
 Liverpool Historical Essays, 2, Liverpool University Press, 1990.

A modern printing with full editorial matter of an account, in 1384 lines of verse, first published in 1589 VOYAGES: HAKLUYT (but replaced in his 2nd ed. by 1562 RUTTER), written by a factor on two English voyages to Guinea, the first to the Malagueta or the Ivory Coast and the other reaching as far as the Gold Coast.

1562-68

HAWKINS, John

C.R. MARKHAM (ed.), *The Hawkins' voyages*, Hak.Soc. 1st ser. 57, London, 1878.

The original accounts of John Hawkins's three voyages to the West Indies in which he put in to Sierra Leone were in 1589 VOYAGES: HAKLUYT; see Vol.10 of the Maclehose reprint of the 2nd ed. (Glasgow, 1903-05) and Vol.7 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907). His father, William Hawkins, touched at R.Sestos on his voyage to Brazil in 1530; this is mentioned in two lines by Hakluyt (Maclehose Vol.11; Everyman Vol.8).

1562

RUTTER, William

'The relation of one William Rutter... touching a voyage set out to Guinea in the yeare 1562...', in Richard HAKLUYT, *The principal navigations...*, 2nd ed., 3 vols, 1598-1600.

The voyage was to the Gold Coast, but the account is uninformative compared with 1554 LOK and 1555 TOWERSON. It is to be found in Vol.6 of the Maclehose ed. of Hakluyt (Glasgow, 1903-05) and in Vol.4 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907).

1562-86

COLLECTION: SOUSA DIAS, Gastão

*Relações de Angola (primórdios da ocupação portuguesa) pertencentes ao Cartório dos Padres da Companhia de Luanda...*, Coimbra, 1934.

An annotated ed. of Jesuit letters written from Angola, 1562-86, all of which are also printed in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO. Some Jesuit letters from Angola were also published in *BSGP* 4 (1883) 300-04, 338-52, 364-86.

(1563)

GALVÃO, António

*Tratado dos descobrimentos...*, Lisbon, 1563.  
 Modern Portuguese ed., Porto, 1944.

[cont.]

First Eng. ed.: *The discoveries of the world... corrected, quoted and published in English by R. Hakluyt*, London, 1601; facs, Amsterdam, 1969.  
Eng. trans. and ed. by Vice-Admiral BETHUNE, Hak. Soc., 1st ser. 30, London, 1862.

This chronicle contains a little West African material not elsewhere available.

1564-76

AHMAD b. FURTU (AHMED b. FARTUA)

(1) Dierck LANGE, *A Sudanic Chronicle: the Bornu expeditions of Idris Alauma (1564-1576)*, Stuttgart & Wiesbaden, 1988.

This is the authoritative edition, Arabic text plus excellent English translation and notes, which replaces earlier editions or translations such as

J.W.REDHOUSE, *J.Roy.Asianic Soc.*, 19 (1862),

H.R.PALMER, *History of the first twelve years of the reign of Mai Idris Alooma of Bornu*, Lagos, 1926; facs. London, 1970.

LANGE is preparing a companion volume of

(2) *The Kanem wars of Idris Alauma*,

an Eng. trans. of which by H.R.PALMER forms Vol.1 of his *Sudanese Memoirs*, Lagos 1928; facs. London, 1967. See 1470 COLLECTION: PALMER.

1565

CARREIRO, Diogo

A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA, 'A malograda viagem de Diogo Carreiro a Tombuctu em 1565', *BCGP*, 25 (1970) 3-23.

1566

FENNER, George

'The voyage of M. George Fenner to Guinie and the Islands of Cape Verde in the yeare of 1566...', in Richard HAKLUYT, *The principal(1) navigations...* London, 1589; 2nd ed. 3 vols, 1598-1600.

Fenner's voyage appears in Vol.6 of the Maclehose ed. of Hakluyt (Glasgow, 1903-05) and in vol.4 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907). Members of the expedition spent five days at Cape Verde.

1572

INFORMAÇÃO DA MINA

'Informação da Mina',

in Antóniô BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana...*, Ser.1, Vol.3, 89-113. (see 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO).

annotated Eng. trans. in 1556 COLLECTION: HAIR, pp.73-88.

An informative report on the Gold Coast dated 29 September 1572. The MS is in the Biblioteca Nacional in Lisbon.

(1573)

ANANIA, Giovanni Lorenzo

*La universale fabrica del mondo...*, Naples, 1573 & 1576; Venice, 1582 & 1596. Modern ed. with Fr. trans. of that part of Ch.3 which deals with the interior of West Africa by Dierk LANGE & Silvio BERTHOUD in *Cahiers d'histoire d'histoire mondiale*, 14 (1972) 299-351.

Anania's work is essentially a compilation from well known published sources; all the material relating to Africa is in Ch.3. It was successively enlarged in the 2nd and 3rd eds, and by the time of the 1582 Venice ed. some information from unpublished sources was included so far as the interior of West Africa is concerned. This is discussed by Lange and Berthoud, who conclude that the information came from Italian merchants who were trading with North Africa and were conversant with the trans-Saharan trade; in at least one case, it would seem that the informant himself must have crossed the Sahara. There is no new material in the 4th ed., which is identical with the 1582 ed. See also 1677 GIRARD.

(1573/99)

MARMOL CARAVAJAL, Luys del

- (1) *Primera parte de la descripcion general de Affrica*, 2 vols, Granada, 1573. facs. Vol.1, Madrid, 1953  
 (2) *Segunda parte y libro septimo de la descripcion...*, 1 vol. Malaga, 1599.  
 Fr. trans. by Nicolas PERROT, *L'Afrique de Marmol*, 3 vols, Paris, 1667, with maps by Nicolas SANSON.  
 Annotated Eng. trans. of material relating to Upper Guinea by P.E.H. HAIR in *ARB*, 9, 3 (1979).

1705 Harris (extracts attached to chapters from Leo Africanus)

Marmol's work has been supposed to derive mainly from 1509 LEO AFRICANUS, but he also used Arabic and Hebrew sources, and included some information for the Sahara and the western African coastlands which had not been published before, and which may have partly derived - probably indirectly - from Portuguese trading activities. HAIR says that 'As far as West Africa is concerned', the *Segunda parte* 'merely repeats the information in *Primera parte*, with slight additions from obvious printed sources'.

1574-1625

DONELHA, André

*Descrição da Serra Leoa e dos Rios de Guiné do Cabo Verde (1625).*

- (1) Portuguese text ed. by A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA, with introduction, notes and appendices; Eng. trans. and further notes by P.E.H. HAIR, Lisbon, 1977.  
 (2) Parallel ed. with Fr. trans. by L. BOURDON, also Lisbon, 1977.

Donelha was native to the Cape Verde Is.; from internal evidence he first visited the adjacent coastlands in 1574. His MS was completed in 1625, and was a prime source for Walter RODNEY, *A history of the Upper Guinea Coast, 1545-1800* (Oxford, 1970), who read his name as 'Dornel(l)as'.

1574-1631

COLLECTION: CORDEIRO, Luciano

*Memórias do ultramar; viagens, explorações e conquistas dos Portuguezes; collecção de documentos*, 6 parts, Lisbon, 1881.

Cordeiro was the first secretary of the Lisbon Geographical Society, founded in 1877. His *Memórias* printed five accounts by early Portuguese settlers in Angola, some of which touch on activities in other parts of western Africa, together with a number of shorter pieces touching on 'African slaves and mines' for the period 1516-1619. Some of this material is available in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO, and all of it is reprinted in

Luciano CORDEIRO, *Questões histórico-coloniais*, 3 vols, Lisbon, 1935-36.

1575-1845

CATALOGO DOS GOVERNADORES DE ANGOLA

Joseph C. MILLER and John K. THORNTON (*Paideuma*, 33 (1987) 359) call the Catálogo an anonymous compilation of short chronicle-style narratives covering the administrations of successive governors of Angola. It long served as a major source for historians of the country. A report of some of the various and variant MSS of the Catálogo that were circulating in Luanda in 1799 appeared in *Archivos de Angola*, 1, 1 (1933), but it was always being updated and rewritten. Its first publication was in Pt.2 of:

Carlos FEO CARDOSO de CASTELLO BRANCO e TORRES, *Memórias contendo a biographia do Vice-Almirante Luis da Motta Feo e Torres, a História... de Angola desde 1575 até 1825...*, Paris, 1825.

A second version was published by the Academia Real das Sciencias of Lisbon: *Collecção de noticias para a história das nações ultramarinas*, 3, 2 (1826), and this was reprinted in *Archivos de Angola*, 3, 34-6 (1937).

The second version was a principal source for 1844 LOPES da LIMA. Another variant was used by 1780 SILVA CORREIA.

1575-1619

MENDES CASTELLO BRANCO, Garcia

Four papers by Mendes Castello Branco are printed from MSS in the Biblioteca da Ajuda in Lisbon in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Lisbon, Ser.1, Vol.6, 437-78.

Mendes Castello Branco was one of Paulo Dias's captains in the conquest of Angola, and wrote these papers in 1620. They are primarily concerned with the affairs and the history of Angola and the Congo, but the fourth touches briefly on lands northwards of the Congo to as far as Mina.

1575-93

HISTÓRIA DA RESIDENCIA

'História da residência dos Padres da Companhia de Jesus em Angola e cousas tocantes au reino e conquista'.  
ed. Francisco RODRIGUES, S.J., *Arquivo Histórico de Portugal*, 2, Lisbon, 1936, also printed by António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Ser.1, Vol. 4., 546-81 (see 1342 COLLECTION: BRASIO).

The MS was written in 1594 and covers events since 1575.

(1577)

VOYAGES: WILLES, Richard

*The history of travayle in the West and East Indies and other countries*,  
London, 1577.

This is essentially 1555 VOYAGES: EDEN (and hence also Decades 1-3 of Peter Martyr) 'augmented and finished' by Willes. The western African material is the same as Eden's.

1578-83

PIGAFETTA, Filippo, &amp; LOPEZ, Duarte

*Relazione del Reame di Congo et delle circonvicine contrade, tratta dalli  
scritti e ragionamenti di Odoardo Lopez, Portoghese*, Rome, 1591.  
facsim. with Port. trans, Lisbon, 1949-51

## Translations:

Dutch, Amsterdam, 1596, 1650, 1658; Ger., Frankfurt, 1597, 1609; Latin,  
Frankfurt, 1598, 1624 etc.

First Eng. trans: *A report of the kingdom of Congo, a region of Africa, and  
of the countries that border rounde the same*, London, 1597.

This first English translation is reprinted, somewhat abridged, in Samuel PURCHAS, *Hakluytus  
Posthumus, or Purchas his Pilgrimes*, London, 1625 (in Vol.6 of the Maclehose ed., Glasgow, 1905-07),  
and wholly in Awnsham & John CHURCHILL, *A collection of voyages & travels*, Vol.8 (see 1704  
VOYAGES: CHURCHILL) and 1745 VOYAGES: HARLEIAN COLLECTION).

## Modern eds:

*Relazione del reame di Congo*, ed. Giorgio CARDONA, Milan, 1978.

*Description du Royaume de Congo et des contrées environnantes...*, tr. & ed.  
Willy BAL, 2nd. rev. ed., Louvain & Paris, 1965.

These excellently annotated eds are now much to be preferred to that published in London in 1881 in  
Eng. trans. by Margarite HUTCHINSON, *A report of the Kingdom of Congo and of the surrounding  
countries...*, which was reissued in facsimile in 1970.

Lopez, a converted Portuguese Jew, went to seek his fortune in the Congo in 1578, and in 1583 was  
sent by the *Manicongo* as his ambassador to the Pope. In Rome he was introduced to the courtier, writer  
and geographer, Filippo Pigafetta, and out of their collaboration this book emerged. If there ever were a  
Portuguese original, the MS has not been found.

1582

ANDRADE, Francisco de

'Relação de Francisco de Andrade sobre as Ilhas de Cabo Verde',  
in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Ser.2, Vol.3, 97-107  
(see 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO).

Annotated Fr. trans. by Jean BOULÈGUE, 'Relation de F. d'A. sur les îles du  
Cap-Vert et la côte occidentale d'Afrique', *BIFAN*, B, 29 (1967) 67-87.

Annotated Eng. trans. of Sierra Leone section by P.E.H. HAIR in *ARB*, 5, 1  
(1975) 47-56.

1582

FENTON, *Capt.* Edward

*The troublesome voyage of Captain Edward Fenton*, ed. E.G.R.TAYLOR, Hak.Soc., 2nd. ser., 103, London, 1957.

Fenton's ships spent some time in the Sierra Leone River in the course of a voyage which was intended to go to the East Indies. This voyage is also known from the diaries kept by two ship's chaplains (see 1582 MADOX) as well as from an account published by Hakluyt (see 1582 WARD). There is an annotated conflation of the texts concerning Sierra Leone:

P.E.H.HAIR, 'Sources of early Sierra Leone, 14: English accounts of 1582', *ARB*, 9, 1 & 2 (1978) 67-99.

1582

MADOX, *Rev.* Richard, & WALKER, *Rev.* John

*An Elizabethan in 1582: the diary of Richard Madox*, ed. C.S.DONNO, Hak. Soc., 2nd ser., 147, London, 1976.

The sections relating to Sierra Leone are ff. 32-49v and 180-86. Donno also prints the diary of Madox's fellow chaplain, John WALKER, in which the Sierra Leone section is ff. 205-254. See also above, 1582 FENTON, and below, 1582 WARD.

1582

WARD, Luke

'The voyage intended towards China, wherein M. Edward Fenton was appointed Generall; written by M. Luke Ward his Viceadmiral...', in Richard HAKLUYT, *The principal(1) navigations...*, London, 1589; 2nd. ed. 3 vols, 1598-1600.

The account appears in Vol.11 of the Maclehose ed. of Hakluyt (Glasgow, 1903-05) and in Vol.8 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907). See also above 1582 FENTON and 1582 MADOX.

1583

DIOGO do SANTÍSSIMO SACRAMENTO

'Relação de Frei Diogo do Santíssimo Sacramento', in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Ser.1, Vol.4, 355-92 (see 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO).

An account of a missionary journey from Portugal to the Congo and back via S. Tomé. Printed from an MS in the Biblioteca Nacional in Madrid.

1584

CARMELITE FATHERS

António BRÁSIO prints in his *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Ser.1, Vol.4, pp.393-415, an account in Italian of a visit to the kingdom of Congo in 1584 by four Carmelite fathers.



1585-1617

COLLECTION: HAIR, P.E.H.

*Jesuit documents on the Guinea of Cape Verde and the Cape Verde Islands, 1585-1617; documents assembled by the late Avelino Teixeira da Mota and translated by P.E.H.Hair, issued for the use of scholars by the History Department, University of Liverpool, 1989.*

The greater part of this collection comes from 1604 BARREIRA and 1607 ALVARES, and most of it has been published in the original in 1342 COLLECTION: BRASIO, Ser.1, Vol 4.

1588

REBELLO, Fr Amador

*Alguns capitulos tirados das cartas que vieram este anno 1588 dos Padres da Companhia de Jesus que andam nas partes da India, China, Japão e Reino do Angola, Lisbon, 1588.*

(1588)

SANUTO, Livio

*Geografia... dell'Africa, Venice, 1588.*  
Modern ed. Amsterdam, 1965.

A systematic geography of Africa based on the best accounts available in the later 16th century.

1588-91

WELSH, James, &amp; INGRAM, Anthony

'Two voyages to Benin... set forth by Master Bird and Master Newton, merchants of London... in which Master James Welsh was chief Master', in Richard HAKLUYT, *The principal navigations...*, 2nd ed., 3 vols, London, 1598-1600.

These two voyages, the first related by Welsh and also by Ingram, who was chief factor, and the second only by Welsh, may be found in Vol.6 of the Maclehose ed. of Hakluyt (Glasgow, 1903-05) and in Vol.4 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907).

1589-1610

BATTELL, Andrew

'The strange adventures of Andrew Battell... in Angola...', in Samuel PURCHAS, *Hakluytus posthumus, or Purchas his Pilgrimes*, London, 1625.  
Modern ed. by E.G.RAVENSTEIN, Hak.Soc., 2nd ser. 6, London, 1901.

Battell, a captive of the Portuguese in Angola, gives a unique account of the Jaga/Imbangala during the semi-nomadic, military period of their history. The first publication of his adventures was in Purchas's *His Pilgrimages* in 1613, where the text was put together by Purchas from oral statements made by Battell (and also by 1591 KNIVET). The text published in 1625 had been written by Battell and edited by Purchas. Ravenstein's ed. includes some excerpts from the 1613 text.

(1589)

VOYAGES: HAKLUYT, Richard

*The principall navigations, voiajes and discoveries of the English nation...*,  
London, 1589. facs. 2 vols, Cambridge, 1965

2nd ed., enlarged: *The principal navigations, voyages, traffiques and  
discoveries of the English nation...*, 3 vols, London, 1598-1600.

Modern printings: Maclehose in 12 vols, Glasgow, 1903-05; Everyman in 8 vols,  
London, 1907, reprinted 1926; Dent in 10 vols, London, 1927-28.

The first major compilation of English voyages (incorporating material from 1555 VOYAGES:  
EDEN). Note that the modern printings are from the 2nd ed., which omitted one western African item  
printed in the first ed., namely 1562 BAKER. The other western African material is distributed as follows  
in the modern printings:

*Maclehose Vol.6; Everyman Vol.4*: 1553 WINDHAM \*, 1554 LOK \*, 1555 TOWERSON \*, 1562

RUTTER, 1556 FENNER, 1588 WELSH & INGRAM

*Maclehose Vol.7; Everyman Vol.5*: 1591 RAINOLDS & DASSELL

*Maclehose Vol.10; Everyman Vol.7*: 1562 HAWKINS

\* Annotated eds of these accounts are available in 1450 COLLECTION: BLAKE.

c. 1590

ANONYMOUS PORTUGUESE

'Copia do emperio e reinos dos Xarifes na Barberia em Africa et de alguns  
terras dos Negros', in Henri de CASTRIES, *Les sources inédites de  
l'histoire du Maroc*, Ser.1, Vol.2, Paris, 1909, 231-313.

This contains some information on Mali and the Tuareg.

1590-91

ANONYMOUS SPANIARD

'Relation de l'expédition envoyée par le Roi de Maroc à la conquête de Gago',  
in Henri de CASTRIES, 'La conquête du Soudan par el-Mansour', *Hespéris*,  
3 (1923) 433-88.

1591

ABREU de BRITO, Domingos de

Sumário e descrição do Reino de Angola e do descobrimento da Ilha de Loanda,  
in Alfredo de ALBUQUERQUE FELNER, *Um inquérito à vida administrativa de  
Angola e do Brazil em fins do século XVI*, Coimbra, 1931.

Also in *Archivos de Angola*, 3, Nos.25-27.

Excerpts are printed in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO.

1591

KNIVET, Anthony

'The...adventures... of Master Anthony Knivet which went with Master T.  
Candish in his second voyage to the South Sea', in Samuel PURCHAS,  
*Hakluytus Posthumus, or Purchas his Pilgrimes*, 5 vols, London, 1625-26.

[cont.]

Knivet's account is to be found in Vol.16 of the Macle hose ed. of Purchas (Glasgow, 1905-06) at pp. 177-289.

Partial modern ed., annotated, by E.G.RAVENSTEIN, as Appendix 1 to his ed. of 1589 BATTELL. (See entry for this for comments on original publication.)

Sigbert Axelson (*Culture confrontation in the lower Congo*, Uppsala, 1970, p.20) says of Knivet that he 'seems to give his imagination free range in his description of the Congo, and can hardly be relied on in a serious context'.

1591-92

RAINOLDS, Richard, &amp; DASSEL, Thomas

The voyage of Richard Rainolds and Thomas Dassel to the rivers of Senega and Gambia adjoining upon Guinea..., in Richard HAKLUYT, *The principal navigations...*, 2nd ed., 3 vols, London, 1598-1600.

Annotated Fr. trans. by J.BOUÏÈGUE & R.MARQUET, *BIFAN*, B, 33, (1971) 1-13.

This voyage appears in Vol.7 of the Macle hose ed. of Hakluyt (Glasgow, 1903-05) and in Vol.5 of the Everyman ed. (London, 1907).

1592

LE BLANC, Vincent

*Les voyages fameux... qu'il a fait depuis l'âge de douze ans jusques à soixante aux quatre parties du monde... dans les royaumes de Guinée et dans toute l'Afrique intérieure...*, Paris, 1648; Troyes, 1658.

Dutch trans. *De vermaarde reizen van de Heer V. Le Blanc*, Amsterdam, 1654.

Eng. trans. *The world surveyed, or the famous voyages and travailes...*, London, 1660.

The French savant Peiresc refused to publish Le Blanc's memoirs on the ground that they were too far-fetched. However Le Blanc says that in 1592 he joined in a trading venture to Upper Guinea; this is dealt with in a few pages.

c. 1594

ALVARES de ALMADA, André

(1) *Relação e descripção de Guiné, na qual se trata das varias nações de negros*, Lisbon, 1733.

(2) *Tratado breve dos Rios de Guiné...*, ed. Diogo KÖPKE, Porto, 1841; and by Luis SILVEIRA, Lisbon, 1946.

These are two versions of the same work. The first - in which the author's name appears as André GONCALVES d'ALMADA - is a shorter version than the second. Both are printed in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, 2nd. Ser., Vol.3. In 1984, selected libraries and scholars were presented by P.E.H.HAIR with copies of an Eng. trans. he had made of (2) with partial annotation by himself and J.BOUÏÈGUE.

Almada was born around 1550 in an Afro-Portuguese family which was long established in the Cape Verde Is and in trade with the adjacent mainland.

1595-97

HOUTMAN, Cornelis de

*De eerste schipvaart der Nederlanders naar Oost-Indië onder Cornelis de Houtman, 1595-1597*, ed. G.P. ROUFFAER & J.W. IJZERMAN, Linsch. Ver. 25, The Hague, 1925.

There are a large number of more or less contemporary printings in various languages of this account of the first Dutch voyage to the East Indies. It contains useful information about S. Tomé and the Guinea trade.

(1595-96)

LINSCHOTEN, Jan Huygen van

*Itinerario: voyage ofte schipvaart van Jan Huygen van Linschoten naar Oost ofte Portugaels Indien...*, 3 parts, Amsterdam, 1595-96.

Eng. trans. 1598; Latin trans. 1599; Fr. trans. 1610.

Modern ed. by H. KERN et al., Linsch. Ver. 2, 31 & 43, The Hague, 1910, 1934 & 1939, of which Parts 1 & 2 revised by H. TERPSTRA, Linsch. Ver. 57-60, The Hague, 1955-57.

There are many printings of the *Itinerario*, which is in three parts. The first is the account of Linschoten's travels to and from India, and of his sojourn there, in 1583-92, and was published in 1596. The second, published first, in 1595, is the *Reysgheschrift*, translations from the Spanish and Portuguese of early accounts of voyages to the Americas and the Orient. Part 3, which is sometimes found bound before Part 2, is entitled:

*Beschryvinghe van de gantsche custe van Guinea, Manicongo ende Angola...*

This is a description of the African coasts put together from existing material. It was published in 1596, and is sometimes ascribed to PALUDANUS, which is the Latin name for Bernardus TEN BROECKE, a physician who helped Linschoten with the *Itinerario*, to which he contributed many notes. The modern ed. of the *Beschryvinghe* (Linsch. Ver. 39, 1934) is by C.P. BURGER Jr & F.W.T. HUNGER. There is no modern Eng. tr. and ed.; Hak. Soc. 70 & 71 cover only Part 1 of the *Itinerario*. The *Beschryvinghe* is especially valuable for the original information it contains for the Gabon and C. Lopez area.

c. 1595/c. 1610

? VIVES, Fr Juan Bautista

'Storia del Congo',

trans. & ed., with some omissions, by Mgr Jean CUVELIER & Abbé Louis JADIN, *L'ancien Congo d'après les archives romaines*, ARSC Mem. 36, Brussels, 1954.

'Storia del Congo' is one of a collection of MSS in the Vatican Library (Vat. lat. 12516). This collection may have been assembled by Mgr Giovanni Battista CONFALONIERI who, after service in Portugal and Spain, served in the Secretariat of State and as archivist in the Vatican in 1600-38; indeed, Cuvelier and Jadin thought that he himself may have been the author of the *Storia*. ut John K. THORNTON is convinced that it was written by Vivès, a Spanish priest who was the Congo's ambassador at the Vatican during 1613-32 or by one of his secretaries. The text is in Italian but contains many Spanish words. [cont.]

The 'Storia' has two parts. The first was probably composed about 1595 and draws heavily on 1578 PIGAFETTA and on unpublished accounts written by two Carmelites who were in the Congo in 1584-87. The second part seems to have been composed in the early 17th century - the year 1608 is mentioned on p.149 of the published translation - from notes made by Vivés, who received many letters from the Congo (some of which are published elsewhere in Cuvelier & Jadin's volume and in 1342 COLLECTION: BRASIO).

1595-1645

VOYAGES: COMMELIN, Isaak

*Begin ende Voortgangh van de Vereenighde Nederlandtsche Oost-Indische Compagnie*,  
2 vols, Amsterdam, 1645-46.  
Modern ed., Amsterdam, 1970.

This includes 1598 NOORT and 1605 BROECKE, and is the origin of 1702 VOYAGES: RENNEVILLE, a later and better known work in French which passed through many editions in the early 18th century.

(1597-1628)

VOYAGES: BRY, Johann Theodor de,  
& BRY, Johann Israel de

*India Orientalis*, Frankfurt-am-Main, 1597-1628.

There are parallel series in German and Latin, each with 13 parts. Printings of 1578 PIGAFETTA, 1600 MAREES and 1611 BRUN are included.

1598-1600

JOLINCK, Hendrick

'Log of the *Vriesland*', in J.KEUNING (ed), *De tweede schipvaart der Nederlanders naar Oost-Indië...*, Linsch.Ver. 50, Part 1, The Hague, 1947.

Early Dutch voyages to the East Indies would call en route at points on the western African coasts. But - as in this case - what is said about their landfalls may be very brief and uninformative. Cf. 1598 NOORT.

1598

NOORT, Olivier van

*Beschryvinghe van de voyagie om den geheelen werelt...*, Amsterdam, 1618.  
Modern ed. by J.W.YZERMAN, *Reis om de wereld, 1598-1601*, 2 vols, The Hague, 1926.

The voyage touched at Principe I. and C.Lopez; cf. 1595 COMMELIN and 1598 JOLINCK.

(1598-1663)

VOYAGES: HULSIUS, Levinus

*Schiffahrten*, Frankfurt & Nuremberg, 1598-1663.

26 parts in 74 volumes; includes printings of 1600 MAREES and 1611 BRUN.

1599-1600

LÜBELFING, Johann von

*Ein schön lustig Reißbuch*, Ulm, 1612.

Modern ed. with Ger. text and Eng. trans in Adam JONES, *German sources for West African history, 1599-1669*, Wiesbaden, 1983.

Lübelfing's work is useful for S. Tomé.

c.1599

[ PILOTO PORTUGUES ]

'Noticias das terra de Guiné', in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Ser.1, Vol.4, 619-32.

This is extracted from a Portuguese Pilot of the end of the 16th century.

1599-1669

COLLECTION: JONES, Adam

*German sources for West African history, 1599-1669*, Wiesbaden, 1983.

This prints, with very full annotation, English translations of the relevant sections of 1599 LÜBELFING \*, 1603 ULSHEIMER \*, 1611 BRUN, 1639 HEMMERSAM \*, 1662 MÜLLER and 1659 ZUR EICH \*. Asterisks indicate that texts in German are also provided.

c.1600

GRAN FULO

'Relacion del Reyno del Gran Fulo',

text and related documents, with Fr. trans., in A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA,

'Un document nouveau pour l'histoire des Peuls au Sénégal pendant les XV<sup>e</sup> et XVI<sup>e</sup> siècles', *BCGP*, 24 (1969) 781-860.

1600-09

GUERREIRO, Fr Fernão

*Relaçam annal das cousas que fizeram os Padres da Companhia de Jesus....*

4 vols, Lisbon, 1603-11.

Fr. ed. by Pierre DUJARRIC, slightly abbreviated, but with some additional material, 3 vols, Bordeaux, 1608-14 (see 1608 DUJARRIC).

Ger. ed. by Aegidius ALBERTINUS, Ingolstadt, 1604; Munich, 1609.

Sp. ed. by SUAREZ de FIGUEROA, Madrid, 1614.

It. ed. by Ludovico ZANETTI, Rome, 1625.

Modern ed. by A. VIEGAS, 3 vols, Lisbon & Coimbra, 1930-52.

This work prints the annual or bi-annual letters written by Jesuit missionaries. There is no complete Eng. trans, but there is a summary of the Guinea material in Samuel PURCHAS, *Hakluytus Posthumus...*(London, 1625-26), and P.E.H.HAIR has published translations of letters written from Sierra Leone (see 1585 COLLECTION: HAIR). Extracts from Guerreiro's work may be found in 1342 COLLECTION: BRASIO. See also 1608 JARRIC: 1604 ALBERTINUS.

c. 1600

LAVANHA, João Baptista

'Relação do porto do Rio Senegal feita por João Baptista Lavanha',  
 ed. Francisco de LEITE FARIA, *BCGP*, 15 (1959) 365-71.  
 trans. & ed. by Jean BOULÈGUE as 'Relation du port du fleuve Sénégal de João  
 Barbosa, par João Baptista Lavanha', *BIFAN*, B, 29 (1967) 496-511.

Lavanha was Royal Cosmographer to King Philip II; the identity of his informant has not been unequivocally established.

1600-01

MAREES, Pieter de

*Beschryvinge ende historische verhael vant Gout Koninckrijck van Gunea...*,  
 Amsterdam, 1602; later eds. 1617, 1650.  
 Ger. trans. in BRY, *Sechster Theil dess orientalischen Indien*, Frankfurt, 1603  
 (cf. 1603 ARTHUS); also in HULSIUS, *Siebende Schiffahrt in das goldreiche  
 Konigreich Guinea*, also Frankfurt 1603, later printings 1606, 1624, 1630.  
 Latin trans., Amsterdam, 1604.  
 Fr. trans. (generally good) pub. by C. CLAESSEN, Amsterdam, 1605.  
 Eng. trans., abridged, in Samuel PURCHAS, *Hakluytus Posthumus, or Purchas  
 his Pilgrimes*, London, 1625-26 (in Vol. 6 of the Maclehose ed., Glasgow,  
 1905-07).  
 Modern ed. by S.P. l'Honoré NABER, *Linsch. Ver.* 5, The Hague, 1912.  
 New Eng. trans. & ed. by Albert van DANTZIG & Adam JONES, *Fontes Historiae  
 Africanae, Series Varia*, 5, Oxford, 1987.

This is the first substantial first-hand account of the Gold Coast, its peoples and society, one which became a model for later 17th and 18th century accounts. The additional section on Benin is credited to 'D.R.', who is very probably 1601 RUITERS, while that on Gabon is substantially borrowed from 1595 LINSCHOTEN. Van Dantzig and Jones provide an authoritative annotated edition, though Naber's edition is still needed for its Dutch text.

# 1601 - 1625

c.1601-11

RUITERS, Dierick

*Toortse der zee-vaert; verlichtende de West-Indien, Brasilien, Guinee en Angola*, Flushing, 1623; Amsterdam, 1648

Modern ed. by S.P.l'Honoré NABER, Linsch.Ver. 6, The Hague, 1913.

Fr. trans. of Senegal section, annotated, by G.THILMANS & J.P.ROSSIE, *BIFAN*, B, 31 (1969) 106-19.

Eng. trans. of C.Roxo - Sherbro section, annotated, by P.E.H.HAIR, *ARB*, 5, 1 (1974) & 3 (1975).

Ruiters was probably the 'D.R.' who contributed the Benin section to 1600 MAREES. He covers the whole coast from Senegal to Angola, but not all his observations come from personal experience; thus he borrows some material from 1608 FIGUEIREDO.

(1603)

ARTHUS, Gotthard

*Warhafftige historische Beschreibung des gewaltigen goltreichen Königreichs Guinea*, Frankfurt-am-Main, 1603.

This is an indifferent German translation of extracts from 1600 MAREES, which was published as Part 6 of 1597 VOYAGES: BRY. Arthus was also responsible for the Latin version of Marees that was published by Bry.

(1603)

OTTSEN, Hendrick

*Journael ofte daghregister van de voyagie na Rio de Plata...*, Amsterdam, 1603.  
Ger trans., Frankfurt, 1604.

Modern ed. by J.W.IJZERMAN, Linsch.Ver.16, The Hague, 1918.

This includes an account of trading on the Gold Coast.

1603-04

ULSHEIMER (or ULTZHEIMER), Andreas Josua

*Warhafft Beschreibung ettlicher Reisen in Europa, Africa, Asien und America, 1596-1610*, ed. Sabine WERG, Tübingen & Basel, 1971.

partial ed. by W.CRECELIUS, 'Josua Ulsheimers Reisen nach Guinea und Beschreibung des Landes', *Alemania*, 7 (1879) 97-120.

Ger. text with Eng. trans., annotated, by Adam JONES, *German sources for West African history*, Wiesbaden, 1983.

Although Sabine Werg made use of a photocopy of the original account dictated by Ulsheimer in 1616, her edition is not wholly reliable. Crecelius used a copy made in 1622 which is not identical with the 1616 MS. Jones's edition derives from a photocopy of the 1616 MS and is very fully annotated.



(1604)

ALBERTINUS, Aegidius

*Historische Relation was sich inn etlichen Jaren hero in Königreich Japon... zutragen wie auch... eine Beschreibung des Landts Guinea*, Ingolstadt, 1604; 2nd ed. Munich, 1609.

This is a German version of 1600 GUERREIRO.

1604-12

BARREIRA, Fr Baltasar

Letters from Santiago (Cape Verde Is.) and Sierra Leone.

Barreira was a Jesuit missionary whose annual letters are of great interest. They were first pub. in 1600 GUERREIRO and the translations thereof. A summary of them was printed in English in 1625 VOYAGES: PURCHAS. There are a number of modern editions:

- (1) Many Barreira letters are printed in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, 2nd. Ser., Vol.4, between pp.35 and 480. (See 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO).
- (2) Barreira's material relating to Senegambia is trans. & ed. by G. THILMANS & N.I. de MORAES, 'La description de la côte de Guinée du Père Baltasar Barreira, 1606', *BIFAN*, B, 34 (1972) 1-50.
- (3) Barreira's letters written from Sierra Leone, his paper on just enslavement, and his 1606 account of the coast of Guinea, together with related Guerreiro material are trans. into Eng. and fully annotated by P.E.H. HAIR in *ARB*, 5/4, 6/1 (1975), 6/2 & 3 (1976), 8/2 (1978), 11/1 & 2 (1981), & 12/1 & 2 (1983); all now reprinted, with additional material, in 1585 COLLECTION: HAIR.

See also A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA, *BCGP*, 24 (1960) 846-50, and B. PINTO-BULL & Jean BOULÈGUE, *Notes Africaines*, No.130 (1970) 44-46.

1605

BAREZZI, Barezzo

*Avisi et lettere ultimamente giunti de cose memorabili succedute tanto in Africa nel Regno di Biguba, ch'è nella Guinea, quanto in Moscovia...*, Venice, 1606.

The first item in this collection of pieces retailing 'memorable conversions' put out by a well known printer and editor is a 1605 letter from the King of Biguba (modern Guinea-Bissau) to the King of Spain & Portugal. There are references to this letter in correspondence printed in 1342 BRÁSIO, 2nd Series, Vol.4.

1605-14

BROECKE, Pieter van den

*Korte historiael end journaelsche aenteyckeninghe... nae Cabo Verde, Angola...* Amsterdam, 1634; Haarlem, 1634.

Fr. trans. 1705, and also in 1702 VOYAGES: RENNEVILLE, Vol.4. There is a modern annotated trans. of the section dealing with the Petite Côte by G. THILMANS & N.I. de MORAES in *BIFAN*, B, 39 (1977).

See also Jean CUVELIER, 'L'ancien Congo d'après Pieter van den Broecke (1608-1612)', *Bull. des Séances ARSC*, 1, 2 (1955). [cont.]

Modern edition of Broecke's original MS (which is appreciably longer than the book published in 1634) by K.RATELBAND, *Reizen naar West Afrika*, Linsch. Ver. 52, The Hague, 1950.

1606

ANDRÉ, Bartolomeu

Letter dated 20 February 1606 from Sierra Leone to King Philip II of Portugal and III of Spain,

in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Ser.2, Vol.4, 112-24.

Eng. trans., annotated, by P.E.H.HAIR, *ARB*, 6, 3 (1976).

André was in his time the leading Portuguese trader in Sierra Leone; he appears in accounts by the English visitors of 1607 - see 1607 FINCH & KEELING (3) and P.E.H.HAIR, 'Hamlet in an Afro-Portuguese setting...', *HA*, 5 (1978) 21-42.

1607-17

ALVARES, Fr Manuel

*Etiopia Menor e descrição geográfica da Província da Serra Leoa.*

In 1607, Alvares joined 1604 BARREIRA in the Jesuit mission to Guinea. Work on an edition of his substantial account of Sierra Leone was held up by the death of its principal editor, Admiral A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA, but in 1979 copies of an English translation made by his co-editor, Professor P.E.H.HAIR of the University of Liverpool, were made available 'for consultation only by approved scholars'. 1342 COLLECTION: BRASIO contains reports by Alvares. See also 1585 COLLECTION: HAIR.

1607

FINCH, William, & KEELING, William

(1) Observations of William Finch, merchant, taken out of his journal,

(2) The third voyage to East India, 1607,

both in Samuel PURCHAS, *Hakluytus Posthumus, or Purchas his Pilgrimes*, London, 1625-26.

The third voyage to India of the English East India Co. called en route at Sierra Leone. In the Macle hose ed. of Purchas (Glasgow, 1905-07), Finch's account of the visit to Sierra Leone is at pp. 1-9 of Vol.9 and short extracts from Keeling's journal at pp. 504-7 of Vol.2. See the article by HAIR mentioned in note to 1606 ANDRE and his annotated, ed. of the surviving MS accounts of the visit:

(3) P.E.H.HAIR, *Sierra Leone and the English in 1607; extracts from the unpublished journals of the Keeling voyage to the East Indies*, Freetown, Institute of African Studies, 1981.

(1608)

DU JARRIC, Pierre

*Histoire des choses les plus mémorables... de ce que les Religieux de la Compagnie de Jesus... ont fait*, 3 vols, Bordeaux, 1608-14.

This is commonly supposed to be only a French version of 1600 GUERREIRO. But John K. THORNTON has pointed out that it also contains original material. Thus while the section in Vol.2 on Congo and Angola is largely based on 1578 PIGAFETTA, it also has information on Ndongo and on late 16th century Jesuit missions which is not known elsewhere.

(1608)

FIGUEIREDO, Manuel de

Hydrografia, exame de pilotos... com os roteiros de Portugal para o Brazil...  
Guiné, S. Thomé, Angolla..., Lisbon, ?1608; 2nd ed. 1614.

See A. TEIXEIRA da MOTA, 'Evolução dos roteiros portugueses durante o século XVI', *Rev. Univ. Coimbra*, 24 (1969). Figuerido seems to have used 1505 PACHECO.

c. 1610

SANDOVAL, Fr Alonso de

*Naturaleza, policia sagrada i profana, costumbres i ritos, disciplina i catechismo evangelico de todos Etiopes*, Seville, 1627.

Modern ed. by Angel VALTIERRA, S.J., *De instaurande Aethiopum salute: el mundo de la esclavitud en America*, Bogota, 1956.

Annotated Eng. trans. of Sandoval's material relating to Sierra Leone by P.E.H. HAIR in *ARB*, 5, 2 (1975).

Sandoval was a Jesuit ministering to the substantial numbers of African slaves in the Spanish colony of New Granada (the modern Columbia). His book is essentially a discussion of the duty of the Church in respect of such slaves, but its Bk.1 has a systematic description of the Black peoples of the world, those of western Africa in particular. Some of his information is similar to that in published sources such as 1600 GUERREIRO. But P.E.H. HAIR argues convincingly, in the introduction to his translation of the Sierra Leone material, that much of it must have come from correspondents in Africa. This is confirmed by John K. THORNTON, who states that Sandoval's information on the Congo derives from Jesuit sources not all of which have been published. It also seems likely that Sandoval's account of Benin and the Slave Coast must have come from Portuguese slavers. The title used by VALTIERRA for his edition is one which Sandoval originally gave to his work.

1611-20

BRUN (or BRAUN), Samuel

*Samuel Brun, des Wundartzet und Burgers zu Basel, Schiffarten...*,  
Basel, 1624.

Also pub. in BRY, *India Orientalis*, Frankfurt, 1625, and in HULSIUS, *Schiffahrten*, Frankfurt, 1626.

Modern ed. by S.P.I. Honoré NABER, *Linsch. Ver. 6*, The Hague, 1913.

Annotated Eng. trans. by Adam JONES, *German sources for West African history*, Wiesbaden, 1983 - which see for discussion of Brun's travels and writings.

Brun went as a surgeon on a voyage to Loango and the River Congo in 1611-13 and on a voyage the length of the coast from Cape Mount to Cape Lopez in 1614-16. In 1617-20 he was in the Gold Coast, where he served as surgeon at the Dutch fort at Mori.

(1613-26)

VOYAGES: PURCHAS, Rev. Samuel

*Purchas his Pilgrimage*, London, 1613.

This one volume work went through a number of subsequent editions and enlargements (1614, 1617 and 1626), the last of which is also Vol.5 of *Hakluytus Posthumus*. . . , for which see 1625 VOYAGES: PURCHAS. For comment on the contents which bear on Africa, see article by P.E.H. HAIR to which reference is made in the 1625 entry.

(1614-60)

AVITY (or DAVITY), Pierre d'

There are many recensions of this author's major work, for example:

- (1) *Les estats, empires... du monde*, Paris, 1614;
- (2) *Le monde*, Paris, 1637;
- (3) *Le monde*, with additions by F.RANCHIN, Paris, 1643;
- (4) *Le monde*, revised by J.B.de ROCOLES, Paris, 1660 (the final ed.).

The editions have been compared by P.E.H.HAIR in *HA*, 1 (1974), who concludes that there is no African material in (1) and no original African material in the others. There are translations into Dutch and English (of the 1614 ed.).

1615/16

AHMAD BABA al-Tinbukti

Bernard BARBOUR & Michelle JACOBS, 'The *Mifraj*; a legal treatise on slavery by Ahmad Baba', in John Ralph WILLIS (ed.), *Slaves & Slavery in Muslim Africa*, Vol.1, London, 1985.

1615

LE MAIRE, Jacob, & SCHOUTEN, Willem Cornelisz

(1) *Journaal ofte beschryvinghe van de wonderlicke reyse ghedaen door Willem Cornelisz Schouten...inde jaren 1615, 1616 en 1617*, Amsterdam, 1618.

(2) *Spiegel der australische navigatie door...Jacob le Maire*, Amsterdam, 1622.

Modern ed. of both the above:

W.A.ENGELBRECHT & P.J. van HERWERDEN, *De ontdekkingsreis van Jacob le Maire en Willem Cornelisz Schouten*, Linsch.Ver. 49, The Hague, 1945.

There are a number of Eng. versions, e.g. in 1625 VOYAGES: PURCHAS and 1705 VOYAGES: HARRIS.

Modern Eng. trans. & ed., J.A.J. de VILLIERS, *The East and West Indian Mirror* Hak. Soc., Ser.2, 18, London, 1906.

The Sierra Leone material is ed. and discussed by P.E.H.HAIR, in *ARB*, 7, 2 (1976) 56-75.

The Dutch publications of 1618 and 1622 are two rival accounts of this famous voyage of exploration which put in at Sierra Leone in 1615: Le Maire was its commander and Schouten its pilot. See VILLIERS or HAIR for a full discussion of the complicated publication history, only a small part of which is given in this entry.

1615-17

COLLECTION: ANDRADE, António Alberto de

'O regimento do fundador de Benguela e o sentido humano e científico dessa "Conquista"', *Studia* (Lisbon) 33 7-89.

This prints 22 pages of documents, including a *roteiro* of the coast of Angola.

1615 onwards

COLLECTION: DELGADO, Ralph

*Ao sul do Cuanza: ocupação e aproveitamento do antigo Reino de Benguela*, Lisbon, 1944.

1617-24

MATEUS CARDOSO, Fr

- (1) *História do Reino do Congo*, ed. António BRÁSIO, *Studia* (1969) 27-8.  
Fr. trans: 'Histoire du royaume de Congo (c.1624)', trans. & ed. François BONTINCK, *EtHA* 4 (1972) 5-145; also separate pub., Louvain & Paris, 1972.

The MS (Reservados No. 8080 in the National library in Lisbon) is a 19th century copy which has no author's name. CUVELIER & JADIN (*L'ancien Congo*, 1954) argued that the author was the Spanish Jesuit BRAS CORREIA, writing c.1623. BRÁSIO maintained that the author could not have been a Spaniard. BONTINCK has shown that the author must have been writing in Portugal c.1624, and that he must have been Portuguese, a priest and a Jesuit, and have visited certain specific places in both the Congo and Brazil; he concluded that only one person fits this specification, namely Father Mateus Cardoso. The *História* begins with twelve descriptive chapters; the following narrative in seventeen chapters breaks off in 1517.

- (2) 'Relação da morte de Reij de Congo e da eleição que fez em Don Pedro duque de Bamba', ed. António BRÁSIO, *Rev. Port. Hist.*, 12 (1979) 367-79.

BONTINCK has also established Mateus Cardoso's authorship of this document. See also 1621 COLLECTION: JADIN, which contains a Fr. trans. of the document and also of another document of 1621-22 emanating from Mateus Cardoso.

Acknowledged writing by Mateus Cardoso may be found in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO, Sr.1, Vol.7, and John K. THORNTON says that the letter starting at p.297 in that volume, and ascribed by Brásio (and also by Jadin) to André Cordeiro, is also by Mateus Cardoso. He was also responsible for the production of:

- (3) *Doutrina Christãa composta pelo P. Marcos Jorge... de nova traduzido na Língua do Reyno do Congo...*, Lisbon, 1624, 1666.

A later edition of this, with additional translations into Latin and Italian, was produced by 1652 GIACINTO BRUGIOTTI, *Doctrina Christina ad prefectum missionis totius regni Congi...* (Rome, 1650). There is a modern French edition:

*Le Catéchisme Kikongo de 1624*, trans. & ed. François BONTINCK with D. NDEMBE NSASI, Brussels, 1978.

1618

JOBSON, Richard

- (1) *The golden trade, or a discovery of the River Gambia and the golden trade of the Aethiopians...*, London, 1623.  
facs. or reprints: Teignmouth, 1904; London, 1932 & 1968
- (2) Samuel PURCHAS, *Hakluytus Posthumus...*, London, 1625, printed a journal of Jobson's travels as well as a summary of the book. The journal was pub. in Dutch trans. in 1707. 1745 Astley, 1747 Schwabe  
The expedition up the Gambia led by Jobson was the first substantial penetration of western Africa by Englishmen.

1619

BEAULIEU, Augustin de

'Mémoires du voyage aux Indes Orientales...',  
in Melchisedech THEVENOT, *Relation de divers voyages*, Vol.1, Paris, 1664.  
1765 Harris. [cont.]

Beaulieu's material on Sierra Leone and the Iles de Los is trans. and ed. by P.E.H. HAIR in *ARB* 4, 4 (1974).

Beaulieu's service (1604-25) with the Compagnie des Indes Orientales was mainly in the Far East, but he had previously visited the Senegambia with Guillaume de Briquerville in 1612.

1621-31

COLLECTION: JADIN, *Abbé* Louis

*Relations sur le Congo et l'Angola tirées des archives de la Compagnie de Jésus, 1621-1631*, Brussels & Rome, 1968.

Reprint from *BIHBR*, 39 (1968), 333-454. There are documents in Fr. trans. from p.361 onwards; some of these are available in their original languages in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO. See also 1617 MATEUS CARDOSO.

1621-32

WASSENAER, Nicolaas Janszoon van, & LAMPE, Barend

*Historisch verhael alder ghedenck-weerdichste geschiedenissen...*, 21 vols, Amsterdam, 1622-35.

This contemporary history, initiated by Wassenaer and continued after his death by Lampe, contains something like fifty accounts of happenings in western Africa.

1622

LANGE, Jacob (or LANGIUS, Jacobus)

*Demonomanie of der Mooren Wonderheden; zijnde een verhael, of voyagie nae het Moorse Koninkrijk van Guinea*, Amsterdam, 1658.

1705 Harris

A trading voyage to the Gold Coast. The first word in the title may also be spelt *Daemonomanie*.

1622-35

SOUSA, Fernão de

Beatrix HEINTZE, *Fontes para a história de Angola do século XVII*.

Vol. 1: *Memórias, relações e outros manuscritos da Colectânea Documental de Fernão de Sousa (1622-1635)*, Stuttgart, 1985.

Vol. 2: *Cartas e documentos oficiais... (1624-1635)*, Stuttgart, 1988.

Sousa, governor of Angola in 1624-30, made a collection of some 850 documents relating to Angola in the first half of the 17th century. Some reports written by Sousa may be found in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Ser.1, Vol.8. See article by HEINTZE in *HA*, 9 (1982) 77-103.

(1623)

ABREU, Aleixo de

*Tratado das sete enfermidades*, Lisbon, 1623.

This has references to disease in Angola.

1624-25

HEYN, Piet (or HEIN, Pieter), *Admiral*

- (1) K. RATELBAND, *De westafrikaner reis van Piet Heyn, 1624-25*, Linsch. Ver. 61, The Hague, 1959.  
 (2) L.M.AKVELD, 'Journaal van de reis van Piet Heyn naar Brasilië en West-Afrika, 1624-25', *Bijd. en Med. Hist. Genoot.*, 27 (1962) 85-174.

After the Dutch West India Co. had taken Bahia in 1624, Piet Heyn went on an unsuccessful expedition against the Portuguese in Angola.

1624-36

LAET, Joannes de

*Historie ofte jaerlijk verhael van de verrichtinghen de geoctroyeerde West-Indische Compagnie...*, 2 vols, Leyden, 1644.

Modern ed. by S.P.l'Honoré NABER & J.C.M.WARNSINCK, Linsch.Ver. 34, 35, 37, & 40, The Hague, 1931, '32, '34, & '37.

This chronicle makes use of contemporary material which no longer survives in the original. It includes (Vol.1 of the Naber ed.) an account of the Dutch attack on Elmina in 1625 (cf. 1624 LAM), and information on Dutch attempts to secure the cooperation of the Kongo kingdom in their attack on Luanda in 1624.

1624-25

LAM, Jan Dirkzoon

*Waerachtich verhael van de gantsche reyse ghedaen by den eersamen Jan Dircksz Lam; ende voorts vande nederlaghe aent Casteel de Myna op de Kust van Guinea voorgevallen*, Amsterdam, 1626.

Annotated Eng. trans. by Adam JONES of the visit to Sierra Leone in 1624 in *ARB*, 15, 2 (1986) 43-64.

This includes an eyewitness account of the unsuccessful Dutch attack on Elmina in 1625. cf. 1624 LAET.

(1625-26)

VOYAGES: PURCHAS, Samuel

*Hakluytus Posthumus, or Purchas his Pilgrimes*, 5 vols, London, 1625-26.

Modern printing in 20 vols by Maclehose, Glasgow, 1905-07. Major western African material in this printing may be found as follows:

Vol.2: 1607 KEELING; Vols 5 and 6: 1509 LEO AFRICANUS; Vol.6: 1600 DE MAREES, 1589 BATTELL, 1578 LOPEZ; Vol.9: 1618 JOBSON, 1607 FINCH; Vol.16: 1591 KNIVET.

See also 1613 VOYAGES: PURCHAS.

For a full discussion of the material bearing on Africa in Purchas's works, see article by P.E.H.HAIR in *HA*, 13 (1986); among other things, this draws attention to less obvious items than those mentioned above.

# 1626 - 1650

1626

HERBERT, Sir Thomas, Bt

*A relation of some years travaile... into Afrique and the greater Asia*,  
London, 1634 etc.

Dutch trans. 1658; Fr. trans. 1663.

1705 Harris, 1780 Moore

This work passed through a number of editions, with slight variations in the title. A few pages at the beginning describe the author's voyage down the western coast of Africa, but he does not seem to have gone ashore before the Cape of Good Hope.

1629-35

TAVAREZ, Fr Pero

Louis JADIN, *Pero Tavaréz, missionnaire jésuite; ses travaux apostoliques au Congo et en Angola, 1629-1635*, Brussels & Rome, 1967.

Reprint from *BIHBR*, 38 (1967) 271-402; documents in Fr. trans., some of which may be found in the original in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana*, Ser.1, Vol.8.

1630-35

COLLECTION: RUELA POMBO, Fr Manuel

*Anais de Angola (1630-35)...*, Lisbon, 1945.

1634-40

COLOMBIN de NANTES, Fr

(1) *Relation... d'un voyage en Guinée...*, Paris & Vannes, 1906.

reprinted in António BRÁSIO, *Monumenta Missionaria Africana...*, Ser.1, Vol.8, 278-88.

Columbin was a Capuchin missionary. His letter, dated 20 June 1634, was in response to a request for information from Fabri de Peiresc, a savant and collector of Aix-en-Provence. During 1631-37, Peiresc corresponded with a number of Capuchin missionaries; the correspondence was published by Fr APPOLINAIRE de VALENCE (Paris, 1892). Brásio prints some other letters from it, and also other letters of Fr Colombin, notably:

(2) Letter in Italian, dated 7 August 1637, to the Capuchin Superior;

(3) Letter in Latin, dated 26 December 1640, to the Prefect of Propaganda Fide.

1635

ALEXIS de SAINT-LO, Fr

*Relation du voyage au Cap Verd*, Paris & Rouen, 1637.

1826 Walckenaer.

On this mission, see articles by P.LINTINGRE in *Afrique-Documents*, No.97 (1968) 77-97, and by G.THILMANS & N.I.MORAES in *BIFAN*, B, 36 (1974), especially pp.696-707.



1635

PIREZ de CARVALHOS, Francisco

'Roteiro da costa da Guiné',

first pub. by A.VIEGAS in *O Instituto* (Coimbra), 70 (1923) 97-102.Port. text with Fr. trans., ed. G.THILMANS & N.I.de MORAES, 'Le routier de la côte de Guinée de Francisco Pirez de Carvalho', *BIFAN*, B, 32 (1970) 343-69.

The document is less a *roteiro* than an argument that Spain and Portugal should recover from the Dutch the trade they had lost on the coast from Arguin to Mina. As a result, it contains much useful information, especially of an economic nature.

1637-44

BAERLE, Kaspar van (or BARLAEUS, Caspar)

*Rerum per octennium in Brasilia et alibi gestarum...*, Amsterdam, 1647,  
2nd ed. Cleves, 1660.

Ger. trans: *Brasilianische Geschichte bey Achtjähriger in selbigen Landen*,  
Cleves, 1659.

Modern ed. in Dutch trans. by S.P.l'Honoré NABER: *Nederlandsch Brazilië onder het bewind van Johan Maurits Grave van Nassau...*, The Hague, 1923.

Modern ed. in Port. trans. by Cláudio BRANDÃO: *História dos feitos recentemente praticados durante oito anos no Brasil...*, Rio de Janeiro, 1940.

This is a history of Johan Mauritz of Nassau's governorship of Brazil and includes accounts of the African expeditions which he mounted. The author never left the Netherlands, but his primary source was Johan Mauritz's papers and despatches. The German and Latin editions of the work in 1659-60 are said to be inferior to the original 1647 edition.

1637-39

JANNEQUIN, Claude, *Sieur de Rochefort*

*Voyage de Lybie au royaume de Senega, le long du Niger...*, Paris, 1643.  
facs. 1980

The accounts of this journey up the R.Senegal that were pub. in the collections by Astley, Prévost and Walckenaer tend to have variant titles and dates.

1639-80

CADORNEGA, António de Oliveira de

*História geral das guerras angolanas.*

ed. José Matias DELGADO & Manuel ALVES da CUNHA, 3 vols, Lisbon, 1940-42.

Cadornega arrived in Angola in 1639 and fought in many of the wars that he chronicled. His *História* goes back to the arrivals of the Jaga and the Portuguese in the 16th century. Vol.3 contains geographical and ethnographic information.

1639-45

HEMMERSAM, Michael

*Guineische und West-Indianische Reißbeschreibung de An. 1639 biß 1645  
von Amsterdam nach St Joris de Mina*, Nuremberg, 1663 & 1669.

Swed. trans. 1674. Modern ed. by S.P.l'Honoré NABER, The Hague, 1930. [cont.]

Ger. text with annotated Eng. trans. in Adam JONES, *German sources for West African history, 1599-1669*, Wiesbaden, 1983.

This is essentially a description of the Gold Coast. There are borrowings from 1600 MAREES which Adam Jones estimates may amount to about a third of the whole.

1639-55

COLLECTION: JADIN, Abbé Louis

*L'ancien Congo et l'Angola, 1639-1655, d'après les archives romaines, portugaises, néerlandaises et espagnoles*, 3 vols, Brussels, 1975.

The documents are in Fr. trans. Many of them may be found in their original languages in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO.

c. 1640 - c. 1665

LEMONS COELHO, Francisco de

Damião PERES, *Duas descrições seiscentistas da Guiné de Francisco de Lemos Coelho*, Lisbon, 1935.

Eng. trans., with intro., of 1684 text by Professor P.E.H. HAIR (University of Liverpool) issued in 1985 'for circulation to scholars'.

Fr. trans, annotated, of Ch.1 of 1684 text by N.I. de MORAES, *BIFAN.*, B, 35, (1973) 239-68.

Lemos Coelho was a trader on the Upper Guinea coast. The two texts published by Peres are shorter and longer versions of the same account, composed respectively in 1669 and 1684. Professor Hair intends to produce a second volume containing a comparison with the 1669 text and full annotation. The French translation covers only the description of the Petite Côte.

c. 1640 - 1784

COLLECTION: RUELA POMBO, Fr Manuel

*Inéditos Coloniais*, Lisbon, 1937 [1936].

Two series of printings of documents (by no means always complete).

1641

AUGSPURGER, Johann Paul

*Kurtze und warhaffte Beschreibung der See-Reisen...*, Schleusingen, 1644.

Augsburger was a German serving in the Dutch West India Co.; he has 29 pages on Angola.

1641-48

CRUS, Luis Felis

*Manifesto das ostillidades que a gente que serve a Companhia Ocidental de Olanda obrou contra os vassalos del Rei de Portugal neste Reyno de Angola...*, Lisbon, 1651.

Modern printing by Edgar PRESTAGE, Coimbra, 1919.

Crus was serving in the Portuguese administration in Angola at the time of the Dutch invasion and conquest.

1641

A LITTLE FORRAINE NEWES...

*A little forraine newes better than a great deale of domestic spurious false newes published daily without fears or wit, to the shame of the nation and beyond the liberty of Paris Pasquils*, London, 1641 [1642].

This marvellously titled piece contains an account, translated from a Dutch original printed in Middelburgh in 1642, of the Dutch capture of Luanda in 1641. Cf. 1641 JOL.

1641

JOL, Cornelis Cornelissen, *Admiral*

K. RATELBAND, *De expeditie van Jol naar Angola en São Thomé*, The Hague, 1943.  
Ratelband prints some of the contemporary documents.

c. 1641-54

LEERS, Arnout

*Pertinente beschryvinghe van Africa... getrocken en vergadert uyt de reysboeken van Johannes Leo Africanus*, Rotterdam, 1665.

Leers, a Rotterdam bookseller, added to his ed. of 1509 LEO AFRICANUS information, largely commercial, relating to the African coasts, which is especially valuable for Allada, Benin, Calabar and Cameroon. Adam JONES and John K. THORNTON point out that much of the information is very similar to that in MS BPL 927 in Leiden University Library (which JONES is editing for publication). This would appear to have been assembled in 1648-54 (or perhaps somewhat earlier, during the Dutch occupation of São Tomé in 1641-48).

1641-75

COLLECTION: JADIN, Abbé Louis

*Rivalités luso-néerlandaises au Soho, Congo, 1600-1675; tentatives missionnaires des récollets flamands et tribulations des Capucins italiens*, Brussels & Rome, 1966.

Reprint of *BIHBR*, 37 (1965) 137-360. The documents, in French translation, begin in 1641, but most of them come from the shorter period 1672-75.

(1642)

MARIS CARNEIRO, António de

*Regimento de pilotos e roteiro de navegação e conquistas do Brazil, Angola, Sam Thomé etc*, Lisbon, 1642.

This is largely based on 1608 FIGUEIREDO.

1643

MORTAMER, Pieter

S.P. l'Honoré NABER, 'Nota van Pieter Mortamer over het gewest Angola, 1643', *Bijd. en Med. Hist. Gen. Utrecht*, 54 (1933) 1-42.

1643-47

PIETRO da DOLCEDO, *Fr*

Carlo TOSO, 'La "Missio antiqua" e la "Narratione" inedita del genovese Pietro da Dolcedo', *L'Italia Franciscana*, 54 (1979) 179-214, 309-54, 437-98.

1645-1705

ANGUIANO, Juan Garcia Mateo de

*Misiones Capuchinas en Africa*, ed. *Fr* BUENVENTURA de CARROCERA, 2 vols, Madrid, 1950-57.

This was written c.1716, but draws extensively on earlier material, such as the MS by 1648 ANTONIO de TERUEL. Vol.1 deals with the Congo; Vol.2 with Matamba, Benin, Ardra, Guinea and Sierra Leone. There is also some relevant material, e.g. at pp. 121-40, in the same author's *Epitome historial y conquista espiritual del Imperio Abyssinia*. . . (Madrid, 1706).

1645-48

GIOVANNI FRANCESCO da ROMA, *Fr*

Breve relatione del successo della Missione de' Frati Minori Capuccini... al Regno del Congo..., Rome, 1648.

Other eds. Naples, Milan, Rome & Parma, Trento etc, 1648-51.

*Fr.* trans. Lyon, 1649; *Ger.* trans. Constance, 1664.

For 'Spanish edition', see 1645 PELLICER de TOVAR.

Modern *Fr.* trans. and ed., annotated, by François BONTINCK, *Brève relation de la fondation de la mission...*, Louvain & Paris, 1964.

1671 GIOVANNI ANTONIO CAVAZZI used this author for his Bk.3, paras 15-92.

1645-48

PELLICER de TOVAR, Joseph

*Mision evangelica al Reyno de Congo por la Serafica Religion de los Capuchinos*. Madrid, 1649.

Pellicer was Chronicler to the King of Spain, but his book derived from information from two missionaries, Giovanni Francesco da Roma and Angel de Valencia. The former published his own account, i.e. 1645 GIOVANNI FRANCESCO.

1645-47

VIJF DAGREGISTERS

K. RATELBAND, *Vijf dagregisters van het Kasteel São Jorge da Mina (Elmina) aan de Goudkust, 1645-1647*, Linsch.Ver.55, The Hague, 1953.

1645 onwards

COLLECTION: ROCCO da CESINALE, *Fr*  
(*Bp* ROCCO COCCHIA)

*Storia della missione dei Cappuccini*, 3 vols, Paris, 1867-73.

This summarises much unpublished documentation.

1647

LIGON, Richard

*A true and exact history of the Island of Barbados...*, London, 1657; 2nd ed., 1673. facs. of 2nd ed. 1970, 1976.

Ligon has a few pages on the Cape Verde Islands, where he stopped *en route* to Barbados.

1648-57

ANTONIO de TERUEL, Fr

Antonio de Teruel was a Capuchin missionary in the Congo. An unpublished MS of his, 'Descripcion narrativa de la mision de los PP. Capuchinos en el Reyno de Congo' (No.3533 in the Bib. Nac. in Madrid), was substantially copied by 1645 ANGUIANO as a major source for his first volume.

1648-68

GIROLAMO da MONTESARCHIO, Fr

'Viaggio del Ghongo',

ed. C. PIAZZA, *La prefettura apostolica del Congo alla metà del XVII secolo: la relazione inedita di Girolamo de Montesarchio*, Milan, 1976.

Fr. trans., annotated, by Olivier de BOUVEIGNES & Jean CUVELIER, *Jérôme de Montesarchio, apôtre du vieux Congo*, Namur, 1951.

1648

STRUYS, Jan

*Drie aanmerkelijke en seer rampspoedige reysen*, Amsterdam, 1676.

Brief accounts of the Cape Verde Islands and of Sierra Leone in 1648 are to be found in pp. 6-12.

1652 GEORGII GALENSIS, *Fr* (or GEORG/JORIS van GEEL)

Vocabularium Latinum/Hispanicum et Congense,  
trans. into French & Flemish and ed. by J. van WING & C. PENDERS, *Le plus  
ancien dictionnaire Bantu*, Brussels, 1928.

The groundwork for this was done by the mulatto priest Fr Manuel Roboredo. Cf. 1652 GIACINTO BRUGIOTTI da VETRALLA.

1652 GIACINTO BRUGIOTTI da VETRALLA, *Fr*

*Regulae quaedam pro difficillime Congensium idiomatis*, Rome 1659.  
Modern Eng. trans, H. Grattan GUINNESS, *Grammar of the Congo language as  
spoken 200 years ago*, London, 1882.

Giacinto da Vetralla was Prefect of the Capuchin mission in the Congo. His own detailed account of his prefecture was incorporated in 1711 GIUSEPPE MONARI. The groundwork for his Congo grammar was done by the mulatto priest Fr Manuel Roboredo. Cf. 1652 GEORGII. See also 1617 MATEUS CARDOSO (3).

(1652) HEYLIN, Peter

*Cosmographie... containing the chorographie and historie of the whole world*  
London, 1652.

A compilation; Book 4 deals with Africa. There are many subsequent editions, corrected and enlarged (e.g. 5th ed. 1677).

1654 BONAVENTURA da CORELLA, *Fr*

Vittorio A. SALVADORINI, 'La relazione sul Congo di Bonaventura da Corella,  
1654', *Ann. Fac. Sc. Pol. Univ. degli Studi di Pisa*, 3 (1973) 421-48.

(1654) CHAULMER, Charles

*Le tableau de l'Afrique ou sont représentez les royaumes, republicues,  
principautez, isles..., avec quelques relations succinctes des progrès que  
font les Pères de la Compagnie de Jésus...*, Paris, 1654.

c.1655 (but see comment) ABDERRAHMAN b. ABDALLAH b. °IMRAN  
b. °AMIR es-SADI

*Tarikh es-Soudan*, ed. & trans. Octave HOUDAS & Edmond BENOIST, 2 vols,  
Paris, 1898, 1900. facs. 1964, 1981 [cont.

The date given for this entry is an approximate date for the completion of this history of the western Sudan written at Timbuktu. About half the work concerns the 17th century, i.e. the author's own time. There is one volume of Arabic text and one of French trans.

1656

BONAVENTURA da FIRENZE, *Fr*

V.A.SALVADORINI, *Le missioni a Benin e Warri nel XVII secolo; la relazione inedita di Bonaventura da Firenze*, Varese, 1972.

c.1657

FRANCESCO MARIA GIOIA & ANTONIO LAUDATI da GAETA, *Fr*s

*La meravigliosa conversione alla Santa Fede di Cristo della Regina Singa e del suo Regno di Matamba nell' Africa meridionale; descritta con historico stile del P. Francesco Maria Gioia...e cavata da una relatione di la mandata del P. Antonio da Gaeta*, Naples, 1669.

This was one of the sources employed by 1671 GIOVANNI ANTONIO CAVAZZI.

1657-66

COLLECTION: MAKEPEACE, Margaret

*Trade on the Guinea Coast, 1657-1666: the correspondence of the East India Company*, ed. Margaret MAKEPEACE, African Studies Program, University of Wisconsin - Madison, 1991.

131 letters from the Gold Coast transcribed and edited from the India Office Records.

1658-61

BUENAVENTURA de CARROCERA, *Fr*

'Misión Capuchina al Reino de Arda', *Missionalia Hispanica*, 6 (1949) 523-46.

This prints documents relating to the Spanish Capuchin mission to Allada.

1659-61

NAXARA, *Fr* Joseph de (or NAJERA, *Fr* José de)

*Espejo místico en que el hombre interior se mira practicamente ilustrado*, Madrid, 1672.

Naxara was one of the survivors of the 1659-61 Spanish Capuchin mission to Allada. On this see H. LABOURET & P. RIVET, *Le Royaume d'Arda et son évangélisation au XVII<sup>e</sup> siècle*, (Paris, 1929), which prints the 'Doctrina christiana... en Español... y en lengua Arda', which has one of the earliest pieces of prose in a West African language.

1659-69

ZUR EICH, Hans Jacob

'Africanische Reißbeschreibung in die Landschaft Fetu, auf der guineischen Gold-Cüst gelegen', in Johann W. SIMLER, *Vier löblicher Statt Zürich verbürgerter Rei -beschreibungen*, Vol.2, Zurich, 1677-78.

[cont.]

(2) *Further correspondence of the Royal African Co... relating to the 'Slave Coast', 1681-1699*, African Studies Program, Univ. of Wisconsin-Madison, 1992

The first collection is of documents from the Public Record Office; the second of documents from Ms Rawlinson C.745-747 in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. Dr Law is now preparing a full publication, in book form, of the RAC material in Rawlinson; see HA 20 (1993) 173-84.

1680-1700

COLLECTION: JONES, Adam

*Brandenburg sources for West African history, 1680-1700*, Stuttgart, 1985.

This includes English translations of 1682 GROEBEN and 1692 OETTINGER.

1680s

FRANCISCO de SANTIAGO, Fr

António J. DIAS, 'Crenças e costumes dos indigenas da ilha de Bissau no século XVIII', *Portugal em Africa*, 2<sup>e</sup> sér. 2 (1945) 159-65, 223-29.

This prints useful ethnographic material from the unpublished second volume of Francisco de Santiago's *Crónica de Provincia Franciscana da Nossa Senhora da Soledade...* (the first volume of which was published at Lisbon in 1695).

1681-82

CELESTIN de BRUXELLES, Fr

'Documenta ad historiam Missionis Guineae spectantia', *Analecta Ordinis Minorum Capuccinorum*, 31. (1915) 327-30, 357-9.

Two letters from the chaplain of the French factory at Whydah; these are printed in Latin and are not to be found in 1342 COLLECTION: BRÁSIO.

1682-83

FRANÇOIS de PARIS, Fr

Guy THILMANS, 'Voyage à la coste d'Affrique dite de Guinée et aux isles de l'Amérique fait en années 1682 et 1683', *BIFAN*, B. 38 (1976), 1-51.

1682

GIROLAMO MEROLLA da SORRENTO, Fr

*Breve e succincta relatione del viaggio nel Regno de Congo... scritto e ridotto al presente stile... dal P.A.Piccardo*, Naples, 1692 (& 1726).

Eng. trans.: *Voyage to Congo...* in 1682, in Awnsham & John CHURCHILL.

*A collection of voyages & travels*, London, 1702, Vol.1, 651-756.

1745 Astley, 1746 Prévost, 1747 Schwabe, 1808 Pinkerton

Girolamo or his editor (or both) were cognisant of 1671 GIOVANNI ANTONIO CAVAZZI, published five years before their book.



1682-83

GROEBEN, Otto Friedrich von der

*Guineische Reise-Beschreibung...*, Marienwerder, 1694. facs. Leipzig, 1913  
 Dutch trans: *Voorname scheepstogt... na Guinea... in... 1682...*, Leyden, 1707.  
 Annotated modern ed. with Eng. trans. in Adam JONES, *Brandenburg sources for West African history, 1680-1700*, Wiesbaden, 1985.

Von der Groeben established the Brandenburg Fort Groß-Friedrichsburg on the Gold Coast; his narrative also touches on Sierra Leone and the Grain Coast. Adam JONES estimates that about one sixth of the text is borrowed from 1601 RUITERS. Groeben later republished his memoirs in verse, *Des edlen Bergone...* (Danzig, 1700).

1682-83

LE MAIRE, Jacques-Joseph

*Les voyages du Sieur Le Maire aux Isles Canaries, Cap-Verd, Sénégal et Gambie...*, Paris, 1695 (two separate eds).

Ger. trans. 1747.

Eng. trans.: *A voyage of the Sieur Le Maire to the Canary Islands, Cape Verd, Senegal and Gamby...*, London, 1696.

Modern Eng. trans., abridged, by Edmund GOLDSMID, *Voyage to the Canaries, Cape Verd, and the coast of Africa under the command of M. Dancourt*, Edinburgh, 1887.

1745 Harleian, 1745 Astley, 1746 Prévost, 1747 Schwabe, 1826 Walckenaer

Le Maire was a surgeon who accompanied Dancourt, the Director-General of the Senegal Company, on a tour of inspection of its African posts. On the two 1695 French eds of his work, see note by Yves SAINT-MARTIN in *BIFAN*, B, 26 (1964) 709-13.

1682-97

TILLEMANN, Erich Adamsen

*En liden enfoldig beretning om det landskab Guinea*, Copenhagen, 1697.

Eng. trans. by Ove JENSEN, with notes by Sir Matthew NATHAN, in *JASoc*, 4 (1904) 10-32, covering 72 of the 162 pages of the original.

Tilleman went three times to West Africa, and resided some nine years on the Gold Coast. A complete Eng. trans., annotated, is being undertaken by Selena WINSNES (cf. 1783 ISERT).

(1683)

VOOGT, Claas Janszoon

*De nieuwe groote lightende zee-fakkelt, 't vyfde deel, verbeterd door Joannes van Keulen*, Amsterdam, n.d. (1683).

This can also be found under the name of its 'improver', (Jan) VAN KEULEN; the text is by VOOGT and is very similar to that in 1668 ROBYN. See also 1701 SELLER & PRICE.

1685

ANNIABA, Louis

*Histoire de Louis Anniaba, roi d'Essénie en Afrique...*, Paris, 1740.

An anonymous novel based on the story of Anniaba or Aniaba, who was taken from Assini to France in 1685 and returned in 1702. See 1687 COLLECTION: ROUSSEAU and 1701 GODOT.

c. 1685 - c. 1689

DOUBLET, Jean-François

Charles BRÉARD, *Journal du corsaire Jean Doublet de Honfleur, lieutenant de frégate sous Louis XIV*, Paris, 1883.

See note to 1725 LABAT.

1685

GUILLEMIN, Capt. Antoine

Abdoulaye LY, *Un navire de commerce sur la côte sénégalienne en 1685*, Dakar, 1964.

Ly prints the *journal de voyage* of Capt. Guillemin, commanding the Senegal Company's *Amitié* during a voyage which traded mainly at Albreda, Goree and Portudal.

c. 1685 - 1720

LABAT, Fr Jean-Baptiste

*Nouvelle relation de l'Afrique occidentale...*, 5 vols, Paris, 1728.

1745 Astley, 1747 Schwabe, 1826 Walckenaer

Labat was a Dominican who served in the West Indies and then in Italy before being brought back to Paris and becoming librarian of the Couvent des Jacobins and exploiting its resources for the writing of books, beginning with a *Histoire d'Amérique* (1722). Like others of his works, the *Nouvelle relation* is a compilation. Pierre CULTRU showed, in his introduction to 1688 LA COURBE, that substantial sections of it were taken from La Courbe's then unpublished MS and were credited to André BRUE. Abdoulaye LY, in *BIFAN*, B, 15 (1953), has shown the extent of Labat's borrowings from authors such as 1666 VILLAUT and 1702 LOYER. Indeed Labat drew upon a substantial number of sources when composing this book. See also 1671 GIOVANNI ANTONIO CAVAZZI and 1724 DES MARCHAIS.

1685

LA COURBE, Michel Jajolet de (or  
JAJOLET de LA COURBE, Michel)

Pierre CULTRU, *Premier voyage du Sieur de la Courbe fait à la coste d'Afrique en 1685*, Paris, 1913.

La Courbe served in Senegal on and off from 1685 to 1709, acting as governor in 1685 and 1688-90 and being substantive governor in 1706-09. His MS, including probably sections that are now lost and which relate to his later times in Senegal, was pirated by 1685 LABAT, who attributed his activities to André Brue.

(1686)

B [urton], R (Robert or Richard)

*A view of the English acquisitions in Guinea and the East Indies with an account of the inhabitants...*, by R.B., London, 1686.

Later eds, e.g. 1728, are by 'Robert BURTON', and are entitled:

The English acquisitions in Guinea and East India...

[cont.]

'R.B.', 'B., R.', & 'Richard/Robert Burton' are all *noms de plume* of Nathaniel CROUCH, a prolific writer and publisher for a popular market. The African section of this work is essentially derived from published sources, including 1589 HAKLUYT, 1668 DAPPER and 1666 VILLAUT. It also provides an early printing of the account of Old Calabar occasioned by the visit and captivity there of 1668 WATTS.

1686-87

HILLIER, J.

'Part of two letters from Mr J. Hillier... to the Rev. Dr Bathurst...',  
*Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc.*, 19 (1697) 687-707.

Events, scenery and weather at Cape Coast are described for 1686-87. This item is printed next to 1695 PETIVER.

1686-98

VITORIANO PORTUENSE, *Friar & Bishop*

Avelino TEIXEIRA da MOTA, *As viagens do Bispo D. Frei Vitoriano Portuense à Guiné e a Christianização dos reis de Bissau*, Lisbon, 1974.

Vitoriano's journeys were in 1694-96, but Teixeira da Mota prints much more than the accounts of them. The additional material includes a trans. of 1685 LA COURBE's visit to Bissau in 1686 and a number of letters to and from the kings of Bissau during 1694-98.

1687-91

ANDREA da PAVIA, *Fr*

Louis JADIN, *Andrea da Pavia au Congo, à Lisbonne, à Madère; journal d'un missionnaire capucin, 1685-1702*, Brussels & Rome, 1970.

Reprint of *BIHBR*, 41 (1970) 375-592; the material is in Fr. trans.

1687-88

DUCASSE (or DU CASSE), Jean-Baptiste

'Relation (Mémoire) du Sieur du Casse sur son voyage de Guynée avec *La Tempeste* en 1687 et 1688' in Paul ROUSSIER, *L'établissement d'Issiny, 1687-1702*, Paris, 1935.

Ducasse was a captain in the service of the Senegal Company from 1675 and later its director. He then entered the royal service and was sent to reconnoitre the ground in West Africa for French expansion.

1687

[ GABY, *Fr* Jean-Baptiste ]

*Relation de la Nigritie, contenant une exacte description de ses royaumes et de leurs gouvernements avec la découverte de la rivière de Senega...*, Paris, 1689.

The author was one of four Franciscans who visited Senegal in 1687, but his book plagiarises from the MS of 1675 CHAMBONNEAU; see Charles BECKER, 'A propos d'un plagiaire, le père Gaby', *Notes Africaines*, No.133 (1972) 17-21.

1687-88

GONZALEZ FRANÇOIS, Fr

'Relation abrégée du voyage des Pères de l'Ordre des Frères Prêcheurs, missionnaires en Afrique et en Guinée...', *L'Année Dominicaine*, 14 (1702); modern ed., Lyon, 1902, 462-75.

c.1687

LE PETIT, C.

H.C.HAZEWINCKEL, 'Twee attestaties over de Nederlandsche kolonisatie aan de Goudkust', *Bijd. Med. Hist. Genoot. Utrecht*, 53 (1932).

Eng. trans. in Albert VAN DANTZIG, *The Dutch and the Guinea coast*, Accra, 1978.

Le Petit served with the Dutch West India Co. and then, c.1687, returned to the Gold Coast in the service of the Brandenburg Co.

1687-1702

COLLECTION: ROUSSIER, Paul

*L'établissement d'Issiny, 1687-1702*, Paris, 1935.

This valuable collection prints the narratives of the visits to Assini by 1687 DUCASSE, 1692 TIBIERGE, 1698 & 1701 DAMON, and 1702 LOYER.

1688-1702

BOSMAN, Willem (or William)

*Nauwkeurige beschryving van de Guinese Goud-, Tand- en Slave-Kust*, Utrecht, 1704; 2nd ed., revised & enlarged, Amsterdam 1709, repr. 1719, 1737.

Eng. trans.: *A new and accurate description of the coast of Guinea...*

London, 1705; 2nd ed. 1721, 1754. facs. (of 1705 ed.) 1907, 1967.

Fr. trans.: *Voyage de Guinée...*, Utrecht & also London, 1705.

Ger. trans.: *Reyse nach Guinea...*, Hamburg, 1708.

It. trans. (from the Fr.): *Viaggio...*, 3 vols, Venice, 1752-54.

1808 Pinkerton

Bosman's book is the classic late 17th century description of the coast and society of Lower Guinea based on experience over some 14 years. It is written in the form of letters, 17 of which are on the Gold Coast and 3 on the Slave Coast, which Bosman also knew at first-hand. To these are added a letter on Benin by David van Nyendaël and another on the Grain and Ivory Coasts by Jan Snoek; the latter owes a good deal to 1666 VILLAULT. The 1967 facs. of the Eng. trans. is annotated, and there is an illuminating line by line comparison of this translation with the original Dutch by Albert van DANTZIG in volumes of *HA* from 2 (1975) to 11 (1984).

(1688)

LA CROIX, A. Pherotée de

*Relation universelle de l'Afrique ancienne et moderne*, 4 vols, Lyon, 1688.

Based on the Fr. trans. of 1668 DAPPER with the plates redrawn and a few added.

1689-90

HODGES, Cornelius

Thora B. STONE, 'The journey of Cornelius Hodges in Senegambia, 1689-90', *EHR*, 39 (1924) 89-95.

A trader on the Gambia for a number of years, Hodges visited Bambuk and then crossed the Senegal into Mauritania; 1685 LA COURBE refers to him as 'Agis'. See E. Ann McDUGALL, 'The quest for "Tarra"...', *HA*, 18 (1991) 271-89.

1690-1701

LUCA da CALTANISSETTA, *Fr*

Romain RAINERO, *Il Congo agli inizi del settecento nella relazione di P. Luca da Caltanissetta*, Florence, 1974.

*Fr. trans.*, annotated, by François BONTINCK, *Diaire congolais de Fra Luca da Caltanissetta, 1690-1701*, Louvain & Paris, 1970.

1690-1700

MARCELLINO d'ATRI, *Fr*

Carlo TOZO, *L'anarchia congolese nel sec. XVII: la relazione inedita di Marcellino d'Atri*, Genoa, 1984.

*Partial Fr. trans.*, annotated, by Jean CUVELIER, 'Relation sur le Royaume du Congo', *Cahiers Ngombo*, 5, (1960).

This work contains unacknowledged borrowing from 1690 LUCA da CALTANISSETTA.

1690-91

PAVORT, J. van der

'Description of the Gold Coast',

in H.C. HAZEWINKEL, *Twee attestaties over de Nederlandsche kolonisatie aan de Goudkust*, *Bijdr. Med. Hist. Genoot. Utrecht*, 53 (1932).

*Eng. trans.* in A. VAN DANTZIG, *The Dutch and the Guinea Coast*, Accra, 1978.

(1690)

WILKINSON, William, *mariner*

*Systema Africanum, or a treatise discovering the intrigues of the Guiney Company*, London, 1690.

Reprinted in 1441 COLLECTION: DONNAN, Vol.1, 377-84.

Wilkinson says he had frequented the African coasts for many years and, inter alia, he describes the Royal African Co. establishments from the Gambia to Benin.

1692-93

OETTINGER, Johann Peter

*Unter kurbrandenburgischer Flagge: nach dem Tagebuch des Chirurgen Johann Peter Oettinger*, ed. Paul OETTINGER, Berlin, 1886.

*Eng. trans.*, annotated, in Adam JONES, *Brandenburg sources for West African history...*, Wiesbaden, 1985.

The published version appears to be corrupt, but the original MS has not been traced. The work is valuable for Whydah.

1692

TIBIERGE, *Le Sieur*

'Journal du Sieur Tibierge de la Compagnie de Guinée sur... *Le Pont d'Or...* en 1692', in Paul ROUSSIER, *L'établissement d'Issiny...*, Paris, 1935.

1693-94

PHILLIPS, Thomas, *Capt.*

'Journal of a voyage made in the *Hannibal...* to Cape Monseradoe, in Africa, and thence along the coast of Guiney to Whidaw... St. Thomas... with... account of the country, the people, their manners...', in Awnsham & John CHURCHILL, *A collection of voyages & travels*, Vol.6, London, 1732, 171-239. Astley, Schwabe

1694-97

PETIVER, James

'A catalogue of some Guinea-plants, with their native names and virtues...', *Phil.Trans.Roy.Soc.*, 19 (1697) 677-86.

The information was provided by Rev. John Smyth, who was at Cape Coast in 1694-97. The item is printed next to 1686 HILLIER.

1695-97

FROGER, François

*Relation d'un voyage fait en 1695, 1696, et 1697 aux côtes d'Afrique...*, Paris, 1698; Lyon, 1702.

Eng. trans: *Relation of a voyage... on the coasts of Africa... by a squadron of French men-of-war*, London, 1698.

Some 35 pages relate to Goree and the Gambia.

1695

MONTAUBAN, *Le Sieur de*

*Relation du voyage du Sieur de Montauban, capitaine des filibustiers en Guinée en l'année 1695, avec une description du Roiaume du Cap de Lopez.*

Amsterdam, 1698 etc.

Eng. trans. 1698 etc.

This was Montauban's second voyage in West African waters: in 1691 he had visited Sierra Leone; on this voyage he touched at the Cape Verde Is., the Grain and Gold Coasts, Principe, S. Tomé, and Angola. There are many publications of the Montauban *Relation*. It can be found attached to eds of Alexandre Olivier EXQUEMELIN, *De Americaensche zee-rovers* (first pub. Amsterdam, 1678, but with numerous subsequent eds., including trans. into Ger., Eng., Fr., Sp. etc under titles such as *The buccaneers of America* or *The history of the buccaneers*), or attached to RAVENEAU de LUSSAN, *A journal of the voyage made into the South Sea by the bucaniers or freebooters of America*, which itself can be attached to eds. of Exquemelin (e.g. London, 1771).

(1696)

DUQUESNE, Abraham

*A new voyage to the East Indies in... 1690 and 1691... by Monsieur Duquesne.  
To which is added a new description of the Canary Islands, Cape Verde,  
Senegal and Gambia etc., London, 1696.*

The Bib. Nat. catalogue would seem to have no entry for such a title in French or English. This Abraham Duquesne was a son of the famous admiral (d.1688). The expedition was written up by Grégoire de CHALLES, a professional author, *Journal d'un voyage fait aux Indes orientales*. . ., but not published until 1721 (3 vols, The Hague & Rouen).

1697-1702

ANTONIO ZUCCHELI de GRADISCA, Fr

*Relazione del viaggio e missione di Congo...*, Venice, 1712.  
Ger. trans. *Merckwürdige Missions- und Reise-Beschreibung...*, Frankfurt, 1715.

?1697-?1715

BRUE, André

Voyages along the coast and up the Senegal are attributed to Brue in 18th and 19th century collections of voyages. The source for these is 1685 LABAT, but much of what Labat credited to Brue seems in reality to have been the work of 1685 LA COURBE.

1697-1708

DAVENANT, Charles

*Reflections upon the constitution and management of the trade to Africa*,  
London, 1709.

There are many later eds., e.g. in Davenant's *Political and commercial works*.  
(5 vols, London, 1771), Vol.5, pp.77-343.

Davenant, well known as a commentator on political and economic affairs, never went to Africa, but the second part of this work contains testimony from captains and agents who were involved in the slave trade. Extracts are printed in 1441 COLLECTION: DONNAN, Vol.2. Davenant was also the author of a number of shorter pamphlets on the African trade.

1698-1702

DAMON (or d'AMON), Le Chevalier

- (1) 'Relation du voyage de Guynée fait en 1698 par le Chevalier Damon',
  - (2) 'Relation très curieuse du voyage que M. le Chevalier Damon a fait...  
à Issigny (1701-02)',
- both in Paul ROUSSIER, *L'établissement d'Issiny...*, Paris, 1935.

Damon made voyages to Guinea in the service of the French Guinea Co. in 1686, 1687 and 1688. He then served in the French navy and, following the War of the League of Augsburg, was sent out to renew French activities in Guinea. See also 1685 ANIABA and 1701 GODOT.

1699 BARBOT, James (the elder, brother of Jean)

'An abstract of a voyage to New Calabar River, or Rio Real, in... 1699...'  
Supplement to the text of Jean Barbot (1678 BARBOT) in Awnsham & John  
CHURCHILL, *A collection of voyages and travels*, Vol.5, London, 1732.

1700 BARBOT, James (the younger, nephew of Jean)

'An abstract of a voyage to the Congo... and to Cabinda in the year 1700...'  
Supplement to the text of Jean Barbot (1678 BARBOT) in Awnsham & John  
CHURCHILL, *A collection of voyages and travels*, Vol.5, London, 1732.

1700-17 LORENZO da LUCCA, Fr

Jean Cuvelier, *Relations sur le Congo du Père Laurent de Lucques (1700-1717)*,  
Brussels, 1953.

Fr Lorenzo's text deals mainly with events in Soyo; it is here printed in Fr. trans. The original Italian  
text (MS in the archives of the Capuchin Order in Florence) does not seem to have been published, but  
1700 COLLECTION: FILESI includes some extracts from it.

1700-18 COLLECTION: FILESI, Teobaldo

*Nazionalismo e religione nel Congo all'inizio del '700: la setta degli  
Antoniani*, Rome, 1972.

Filesi includes extracts from the account by 1700 LORENZO da LUCCA and from many of  
the documents relating to the Antonine movement. Cf also 1710 COLLECTION: JADIN.

1700-26 COLLECTION: JADIN, Abbé Louis

*Le clergé séculier et les Capucins du Congo et d'Angola au XVI<sup>e</sup> et XVII<sup>e</sup>  
siècles: conflits de juridictions, 1700-1726*, Brussels & Rome, 1964.

Reprint of *BIHBR*, 36 (1964) 185-483; the documents are printed in Fr. trans.



c.1701-1800

°ABD al-QADIR b. al-MUSTAFA

H.R.PALMER, 'Western Sudan history; being the Raudthat 'ul Afkari', *JASoc*, 15, 15 (1915-16) 59.

Murray LAST (*The Sokoto Caliphate*, 1967, xxiv) says that the *Raudat al-Afkar* is 'the most detailed early source for eighteenth-century Gobir history', but he is very critical of this translation by Palmer (who ascribed the work to 1780 MUHAMMAD BELLO).

c.1701-34

JOB ben SOLOMON (or AYUBA SULIEMAN DIALLO)

Thomas BLUETT, *Some memoirs of the life of Job, the son of Solomon, the High Priest of Boonda in Africa...*, London, 1734.

Job's story was also published in 1730 MOORE.

Modern annotated editionss in 1701 COLLECTION: CURTIN, pp. 17-59, and 1701 COLLECTION: AUSTIN, pp. 75-120.

'Boonda' is Bundu. See also Douglas GRANT, *The fortunate slave* (London, 1969) and Abdoulaye BATHILY, 'Job ben Solomon' in C.A.JULIEN (ed.), *Les Africains* (Paris, 1978), Vol. 6, pp.191-227, for modern accounts.

1701-03

GODOT, Jean

Jean-Claude NARDIN & Hermann SPIRIK, 'Un nouveau document pour l'étude des populations de la Côte d'Ivoire au début du XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle; le voyage de Jean Godot à Assinie (1701)', *Proc. 8th Int. Cong. Anth. & Ethn. Sc.* (Tokyo, 1970), Vol.3, 78-81.

This gives a summary of a MS of over 500 pages, fr. 13380-81 in the Bib. Nat. in Paris. Godot's voyage, in which 1698 DAMON participated, was to restore 1685 ANNIABA to Assini; Goree, the Grain Coast and points on the Gold Coast were also visited briefly. The MS also makes mention of another voyage, in 1703, to the Congo and Angola.

1701-02

LOYER, Fr Godefroy

*Relation du voyage au Royaume d'Issyny, Côte d'Or...*, Paris, 1714.

Eng. trans. 1745; Ger. trans. 1749.

Modern ed. in Paul ROUSSIER, *L'établissement d'Issyny...*, Paris, 1935.

1826 Walckenaer

Loyer would seem to have borrowed substantially from 1682 LE MAIRE and 1666 VILLAULT; see articles by J. MENDES CASTRO & R. MAUNY, *Notes Africaines*, No.55 (1952) and by Abdoulaye LY, *BIFAN*, B 15 (1953) 751-66.

1701

NYENDAEL, David van

'A description of the Rio Formosa, or the River of Benin...',

Printed as Letter XXI in 1688 BOSMAN.

(1701)

SELLER, Jeremiah, & PRICE, Charles

*The fifth part of the General English Pilot*, London, 1701.

facs. Amsterdam, 1972.

The text is basically a translation of the text of 1668 ROBYN and 1683 VOOGT: in his edition of 1678 BARBOT, P.E.H.HAIR says that it is more comprehensible than the 1687 Amsterdam translation.

1701

SNOEK, Capt. Jan

'A description of the Tooth and Grain Coast, &c.'

Printed as Letter XXII in 1688 BOSMAN.

See comment in note to 1688 BOSMAN.

c.1701-c.1850

COLLECTION: AUSTIN, Allan D.

*African Muslims in antebellum America: a sourcebook*, New York & London, 1984.

Austin prints, with considerable editorial matter, contemporary accounts of or by eleven African Muslims who had been taken as slaves to the United States or the West Indies. There are separate entries in the *Guide* for each of these that provides significant information about western Africa.

c.1701-c.1835

COLLECTION: CURTIN, Philip D.

*Africa remembered: narratives by West Africans from the era of the slave trade*, Madison, 1967.

Curtin has assembled ten accounts by West Africans of their homelands and/or their travels, each with an introduction and notes by an appropriate modern editor. Each of these accounts has a separate entry in the *Guide*.

1701-1800

COLLECTION: MACHAT, Jules

*Documents sur les établissements français de l'Afrique occidentale au XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle*, Paris, 1905.

Machat's collection contains many informative documents; there are separate entries in the *Guide* for 1724 LEVENS, 1725 CHARPENTIER, 1730 PELAYS, 1744 DAVID, 1747 DULIRON, and 1774 LE BRASSEUR.

1702-03

DIARIO ANONIMO

Gilberto FERRES, 'Diário anônimo de uma viagem às costas d'Africa e às Indias Espanholas (1702-1703)', *Rev. Inst. Hist. e Geog. Brasil*, 267 (1965) 3-42.

1702-06

## JOURNAL D'UN VOYAGE

*Journal d'un voyage sur les costes d'Afrique et aux Indes d'Espagne, commencé en 1702 et fini en 1706, Amsterdam & Rouen, 1723.*

1702-12

N - - - -

*Voyages aux côtes de Guinée et en Amérique, Amsterdam, 1719.*  
 Voyages to Whydah are described from 1702 onwards.

(1702-25)

VOYAGES: RENNEVILLE, René-Augustin-Constantin de

*Recueil des voyages qui ont servi à l'établissement et au progrès de la Compagnie des Indes Orientales, 5 vols, Amsterdam, 1702-06 etc.*

Eng. trans.: *A collection of voyages made by the Dutch East India Company...*, London, 1703.

This began as a trans. of 1595 VOYAGES: COMMELIN, and developed into a very popular work that went through a number of eds, culminating in one in 10 vols (Amsterdam & Rouen, 1725). Its African interest is marginal, but 1605 BROECKE may be found in Vol.4 of the first ed.

(1704-32)

VOYAGES: CHURCHILL, Awnsham &amp; John

*A collection of voyages and travels, 4 vols, London, 1702; reprinted with additional Vols 5 & 6, London, 1732.*

new ed. by Thomas OSBORNE with additional Vols 7 & 8, London, 1745, 1752.

The new Vols 7 & 8 added by Thomas Osborne in 1745 are the same as the two volumes of 1745 VOYAGES: HARLEIAN COLLECTION, which see for details of contents. The following western African items may be found in the earlier volumes:

Vol. 1: 1666 DIONIGI CARLI, 1682 GIROLAMO MEROLLA,

Vol. 5: 1678 BARBOT (occupies virtually the whole volume),

Vol. 6: 1693 PHILLIPS.

(1705-1748)

VOYAGES: HARRIS, John, D.D., F.R.S.

*Navigantium atque itinerantium bibliotheca, or a compleat collection of voyages and travels...*, 2 vols, London, 1705.

revised and enlarged ed.: *A complete collection of voyages and travels, 4 vols, London, 1744-48.*

This includes 1607 KEELING, 1607 FINCH, 1619 BEAULIEU, 1626 HERBERT.

1707-08

## LA SPHÈRE

L. BAIDAFF, 'Extrait d'un journal de voyage fait en 1707, 1708... aux côtes de Guinée... et à Buenos Aires par le Vaisseau du Roy *La Sphère*', *Bol. Inst. Investig. Hist.*, 7, 40 (1949).

1709-12

RASK, Rev. Johannes

*En kort og sandfaerdig Rejse-beskrivelse til og fra Guinea*, Trondheim, 1754.  
Modern ed. by Jotein ØVRELID, *Ferd til og fra Guinea, 1708-1713*, Oslo, 1969.  
Rask was chaplain at Christiansborg Castle on the Gold Coast.

1710-11

URING, Capt. Nathaniel

*A history of the voyages and travels of Captain Nathaniel Uring*, London, 1726,  
other eds: 1727, 1749.  
Modern ed. by Capt. Alfred DEWAR, London, 1928.  
Uring was on the West African coasts in 1710-11.

1710-18 (see comment)

COLLECTION: JADIN, Abbé Louis

*Le Congo et la secte des Antoniens; restauration du royaume sous Pedro IV et la 'saint Antoine' congolaise (1694-1718)*, Brussels & Rome, 1961.  
Reprint of *BIHBR*, 32 (1961) 411-614. The 153 pages of documents are in French trans. and for 1710-1718 only. Many appear in the original in 1700 COLLECTION: FILESI.

1711-20

GIUSEPPE MONARI da MODENA, Fr

Calogero PIAZZA, *La missione del Soyo (1713-16) nella relazione inedita di Giuseppe da Modena*, Rome, 1973.  
This is a partial ed. (originally pub. in *L'Italia Francescana*, Vols. 47 & 48) of 'Viaggio al Congo', a 600 page MS in the Este Library at Modena which, inter alia, incorporates a detailed account of the mid 17th century prefecture of 1652 GIACINTO da VETRALLA. Extracts from the MS are also printed in:

Fr EVARISTO GATTI, *Sulle terre e sui mari*, Parma, 1931.

c.1712

DRALSÉ de GRAND PIERRE, Le Sieur

*Relation de divers voyages faits dans l'Afrique, dans l'Amérique et aux Indes Occidentales, la description du Royaume de Juda et quelques particularitez touchant la vie du roy regnant*, Paris, 1718; another ed. 1726.  
The Cape Verde Islands and R. Sestros were visited as well as Whydah.

c.1714-38

PELLOW (or PELLEW), Thomas

*The history of the long captivity of Thomas Pellow in South Barbary, by himself*, London, 1739, 2nd ed. 1740.  
Modern ed. by Robert BROWN, *The adventures of Thomas Pellow...*, London, 1890.  
Pellow, a boy sailor, was captured by a Sali rover c.1714. He became the slave of a son of Mulay Ismael of Morocco, was converted to Islam, commanded Moroccan troops, and conducted a caravan to Timbuktu before escaping back to England in 1738.

(c. 1715)

STAAT VON GUINEA

*Staat von Guinea und Congo in Afrika*, n.p., n.d.Adam JONES says, in *HA*, 13 (1986), that this anonymous work, printed without place or date of publication, is based on 1662 MÜLLER, 1682 GROEBEN, and 1688 BOSMAN.

1716

COMPAGNON, P.

'Voyage au Bambouc en 1716',

in J.-B. LABAT, *Nouvelle relation de l'Afrique occidentale...*, Paris, 1728, in Vol.4 at pp.32-56; reproduced in some of the collections, e.g. 1745 Astley and 1826 Walckenaer.

(1717)

HUET, Pierre Daniel

*Mémoires sur le commerce des Hollandois dans tous les états et empires du monde*, Amsterdam, 1717.

This includes a few pages on West Africa largely derived from 1668 DAPPER.

1721-22

ATKINS, John, Surgeon, R.N.

(1) *A voyage to Guinea, Brasil and the West-Indies in H. M. Ships Swallow and Weymouth*, London, 1735; 2nd. ed. 1737. facs. 1970

1745 Astley, 1747 Schwabe, 1826 Walckenaer

(2) *The navy surgeon, or a practical system of surgery...*, London, 1734.

The first book is an account of the voyage under Capt. Chaloner Ogle which was sent out to deal with the piracy that was rife after the Treaty of Utrecht. It achieved considerable success in West African waters, and Atkins participated in the trial at Cape Coast chronicled in 1722 JOHNSON. The second book has an appendix on the climate and diseases of the Guinea coast, the Slave Coast in particular.

1721-22

ROBERTS, Capt. George

*The four years voyages of Captain George Roberts...to the islands of the Canaries, Cape de Verde, and Barbadoes, from whence he was bound to the coast of Guiney...written by himself*, London, 1726.

Roberts had been engaged in the Guinea trade for some years, but the book refers only to the offshore islands; it has been suggested that it was actually written by Daniel DEFOE. Cf. 1722 JOHNSON.

1721 onwards

COLLECTION: VERGER, Pierre

*Flux et reflux de la Traite des Nègres entre le Golfe de Bénin et Bahia... du XVIIe au XIXe siècle*, Paris, 1968.

[cont.]

Eng. trans. by Evelyn CRAWFORD, *Trade relations between the Gulf of Benin and Bahia*, Ibadan, 1976.

Verger prints substantial extracts from records in Portugal and Brazil and from some other sources relating in particular to Whydah.

1722-25

HOUSTOUN (or HOUSTON), Dr James

- (1) *Some new and accurate observations... of the coast of Guinea...*, London, 1725.
- (2) *Memoirs of the life and travels of James Houstoun... written by his own hand*, London, 1747.
- (3) *Dr Houston's memoirs of his own life time... collected from the author's original MSS and published by I. Bickerstaff*, London, 1747.
- (4) *The works of James Houston, containing memoirs of his life and travels...*, 2 vols, London, 1753.

Houston had been chief surgeon at Cape Coast Castle, and had visited Sierra Leone and Whydah. He wrote his 1725 book mainly to discredit Governor Baldwin of the British fort at Whydah; extracts from it may be found in 1441 COLLECTION: DONNAN, Vol.2, pp.287-92.

1722

[ JOHNSON, Charles ]

*A general history of the robberies and murders of the most notorious pyrates*, 4 eds of Vol.1, London, 1724-26; Vol.2 supplement, London, 1728.

Modern ed. by Manuel SCHONHORN, London, 1972.

'Charles Johnson' was a *nom de plume* of Daniel DEFOE. The book touches on the West African coastlands and islands at many points, and includes an account of the trial and execution at Cape Coast in 1722 of many of the pirates led by Capt. Bartholomew Roberts who had been captured by the expedition under Capt. Ogle (see 1721 ATKINS). SCHONHORN has some discussion of Defoe's sources.

1722-24

LAMB(E), Bulfinch

Letter written from Abomey, 27 November 1724,

printed in William SMITH, *A New Voyage to Guinea* (London, 1744), 171-89; and also in Frederick E. FORBES, *Dahomey and the Dahomans* (London, 1851), 181-95.

Lambe (or Lamb), an employee of the Royal African Company, was held captive in Allada when it was invaded by Dahomey in 1724. He was taken to Abomey and there conceived the idea of securing his liberty by acting as an intermediary between King Agaja and the R.A.C. See articles in *HA* by Marion Johnson, 5 (1978) 345-50, and by Robin LAW, 17 (1990) 211-26, and cf. 1726 AGAJA.

1723-25

STIBBS, Capt. Bartholomew

*Journal of a voyage up the Gambia*,  
printed in Francis MOORE, *Travels into the interior parts of Africa...*,  
(London, 1738).

1724-25

LEVENS de LA ROUQUETTE, J.

Levens was Governor of Senegal in 1726-33; see 1701 COLLECTION: MACHAT.

1725

CHARPENTIER, P.

'Description du pays de Galam'. Printed in 1701 COLLECTION: MACHAT.

1725-27

DES MARCHAIS, *Le Chevalier*

Jean-Baptiste LABAT, *Voyage du Chevalier des Marchais en Guinée... et à Cayenne, fait en 1725, 1726 et 1727...*, 4 vols, Paris, 1730; Amsterdam, 1731.

Labat's account of Des Marchais's voyage in 1625-27 to West Africa and the Caribbean, when he was serving as a captain in the service of the Compagnie des Indes, is very much longer than Des Marchais's surviving MS journal (MS fr. 24223 in the Bib. Nat. in Paris). It incorporates material from an account by Des Marchais of another voyage to West Africa in 1704-06, when he was serving under 1685 DOUBLET (MS now in Br. Lib. as Add. 19560), and also much other matter, some of which may have been communicated orally by Des Marchais.

Vol.1 of Labat's work runs from Arguin to the Gold Coast, and the material in it is for the most part borrowed from 1666 VILLAUT, 1668 DAPPER, 1688 BOSMAN and 1702 LOYER. Vol.2 extends from R. Volta to Whydah, and includes some material from Des Marchais's earlier visit to Whydah in 1704. Vol.3 covers the coast from Whydah to Principe, but for the most part it is about Cayenne. Vol.4 deals with Cayenne, but it includes as an appendix a vocabulary from Whydah.

1678 BARBOT (2) provides evidence that Des Marchais's acquaintance with West Africa goes back to the 1690s, when he was active in Senegal. See Jean-Claude NARDIN, 'Que savons-nous du Chevalier Des Marchais?' in Serge DAGET (ed.), *De la Traite à l'Esclavage* (Paris, 1988), which inter alia establishes that, before he became a Chevalier, his name was Jean Pierre Thibault, and which also looks in some detail at Labat's work and his relations with Des Marchais. See also 1685 LABAT.

# 1726 - 1750

1726

AGAJA, *King of Dahomey*

Letter to King George III of Great Britain and Ireland, in *The Parliamentary History of England...*, Vol. XXVIII (London, 1816) 82-91, annotated ed. by Robin LAW, in *HA*, 17 (1990) 211-26.

Among many issues discussed by Law is the extent to which the letter was composed - as well as put on paper - by Bulfinch Lamb, who was held prisoner in Dahomey in 1724-26. See 1722 LAMB(E).

1726-27

SMITH, William, *surveyor*

(1) *Thirty different drafts of Guinea*, London, n.d. (c.1730).

(2) *A new voyage to Guinea...*, London, 1744; 2nd ed. 1745; facs. 1967.

Fr. trans. 1751.

1745 Astley, 1746 Prévost, 1826 Walckenaer

The second book was put together after Smith's death from his MS account of his visit to West Africa in 1726-27, to survey the Royal African Co.'s forts, and from published sources, notably 1688 BOSMAN. See articles in *HA* by H.M.FEINBERG, 6 (1979) 45-60, and Adam JONES, 7 (1980) 327-28.

(1727)

MISSIONALIA

*Missionalia, or a collection of missionary pieces relating to the conversion of the heathen, both the African Negroes and the American Indians.*  
London, 1727.

It is doubtful whether there is anything here which does not come from a published source.

1727

RINGARD, *Le Sieur*

Robin LAW, 'A neglected account of the Dahomian conquest of Whydah (1727): the "Relation de la guerre de Juda" of the Sieur Ringard of Nantes', *HA*, 15 (1988) 321-38.

This document of no more than four pages is the only known eyewitness account of the Dahomian conquest of Whydah.

1727-30 (but see note)

SNELGRAVE, *Capt. William*

*A new account of some parts of Guinea and the slave trade, containing... the history of the late conquest of the Kingdom of Whidaw by the King of Dahomè...*, London, 1734; 2nd ed. 1754. facs. 1971

Fr. trans. Amsterdam, 1735.

[cont.]



Snelgrave has been put at 1727-30 because this was the period of his major activity on the Slave Coast. However his experience of the African trade went back to at least 1704 (he tells us that he was at Old Calabar in that year, and again in 1713), and he had been to the Slave Coast before (in 1717 and 1725). His book also includes material dealing with events down to 1732. Robin LAW (*HA*, 17 (1990) 367-72) has examined differences between the published text and MS WEL/29 in the National Maritime Museum.

c. 1727

TOLD, Silas

*An account of the life of, and dealings of God with, Silas Told, late preacher of the Gospel... written by himself*, London, 1786.

This includes accounts of slaving voyages to Bonny and Calabar.

1727-28

COLLECTION: LAW, Robin

*Correspondence of the Royal African Company's Chief Merchants at Cabo Corso Castle with William's Fort, Whydah, and the Little Popo Factory...*, African Studies Program, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1991.

This has the subtitle *An annotated transcription of MS. Franklin 1055/1 in the Bedford Country Record Office*. In his Introduction, Law discusses the survival of the R.A.C.'s records, with particular reference to those dealing with Whydah.

(1728)

CUTLER, Nathaniel

*Atlas maritimus and commercialis...*, London, 1728.

The West African material is either fanciful or borrowed (e.g. from 1688 BOSMAN).

(1729)

AUBREY, T. M.D.

*The sea-surgeon, or the Guinea man's vade mecum...*, London, 1729.

A practical handbook to foreign diseases, 'especially on the coast of Guinea'.

1729

BOUCARD, Claude

'Relation de Bambouc', ed. Philip D. CURTIN & Jean BOULÈGUE, *BIFAN*, B, 36 (1974) 246-75.

Boucard was active during 1728-31 in French attempts to establish a post in Bambuk.

1729

COSTE d'ARNOBAT, Charles-Pierre

*Voyage au pays de Bambouc, suivi d'observations intéressantes sur les castes indiennes, sur la Hollande et sur l'Angleterre*, Brussels & Paris, 1789.

Ger. tr. Ernst W. CÜHN, *Sammlung merkwürdiger Reisen...*, Vol.3, Leipzig, 1790.

[cont.]

Coste d'Arnobat (1732-c.1810) would seem to have had a first career as a soldier of fortune and a second one as a Parisian *littérateur*. The Bambuk section of this book was taken over from 1729 BOUCARD.

1729-31

JOURNAL HISTORIQUE

Charles BECKER & Victor MARTIN, 'Journal historique et suite du journal historique (1729-31)', *BIFAN B*, 39 (1977) 223-89.

Two anonymous accounts of Senegambia.

1730 onwards

ANECDOTES OF AFRICA

*Anecdotes of Africa*, London, 1827.

An anthology from published sources, starting with the story of 1730 JOB ben SOLOMON.

1730-35

MOORE, Francis

*Travels into the inland parts of Africa, containing a description of the several nations up the R. Gambia;... to which is added Capt. Stibbs' voyage up the Gambia in 1723...*, London, 1738; 2nd ed. 1740. facs. 1968

For partial Fr. trans., see 1804 LEDYARD.

1745 Astley, 1760 Newbery, 1826 Walkenaer

Moore was Factor of the Royal African Co. on the Gambia; to the account of his own journey is added not only 1723 STIBBS, but also the account of 1660 VERMUYDEN's expedition up the Gambia and one of the original accounts of 1701 JOB ben SOLOMON.

1730

PELAYS, Le Sieur

'Mémoire sur les mines d'or du Bambouc',

in Jules MACHAT, *Documents sur les établissements français...*, Paris, 1906.

1733

CAMSTRUP, Nicolaas J.

*Rampspoedige reysbeschrijving ofte journael van't Ed. O.J.C. schip Blijnde gestrand op de Guinese kust in Afrika*, Amsterdam, 1735.

The ship was wrecked in 1733 on the mainland 15 miles from Goree; good illustrations.

1734-65

PRUNEAU de POMMEGORGE, Joseph (or Antoine-Edmé)

(1) *Description de la Nigritie par M. P.D.P.*, Amsterdam & Paris, 1789.

Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1790-91. 1826 Walckenaer.

(2) *Mémoire sur le commerce de la concession du Sénégal...*, ed. Charles

BECKER, provisional pub., CNRS La83, Kaolack, 1982. [cont.]

It has long been known that 'P.D.P.' was Pruneau de Pommegorge (1720-1802), who was in the service of the Senegal Co. from at least 1734 to 1765. During c.1734-41 he was in Senegal, Galam and Goree, and between c.1748 and c.1765 he seems to have spent three periods at the French fort at Whydah; in the Preface to *La Nigritie*, he tells us that he had served in Africa for 22 years. In 1752 a series of memoirs on the French interest in West Africa was written by a Joseph Pruneau. These clearly foreshadow the 1789 book (except that, by 1789, 'P.D.P.' was an opponent of the slave trade in which Joseph Pruneau had taken an active part), and there is really no doubt that the book's author was this same Joseph, who had retired to live at Pommegorge. It is not clear why library catalogues and biographical dictionaries should give Antoine Edmé as the Christian names for Pruneau de Pommegorge, but there is some evidence that Joseph had a brother called Antoine, who was serving in Senegal in the 1740s.

c. 1739-46

LIND, Dr James

*Essay on the diseases incidental to Europeans in hot countries*, London, 1768; four later eds.

Lind's service as a young man as a Royal Navy surgeon included experience of West Africa which he later used for one of his major works as 'the founder of naval hygiene'.

1739-49

RÖMER, Ludevig Ferdinand

(1) *Efterretning om negotien paa Kysten Guinea...*, Copenhagen, 1756.

Ger. ed.: *Die Handlung verschiedener Völker auf der Küste von Guinea und Westindien*, Copenhagen, 1758.

(2) *Tilforladelig efterretning om Kysten Guinea...*, Copenhagen, 1760.

Ger. ed.: *Nachrichten von der Küste Guinea...*, Copenhagen & Leipzig, 1767  
Modern Fr. trans. and ed., with some omissions, by Mette DIGE-HESS, *Le golfe de Guinée 1700-1750: Récit de L.F.Römer...*, Paris, 1989.

Römer (or Römer) served on the Gold Coast with the Danish Company. His books contain much of interest even if his claim to have used records kept at Christiansborg Castle is suspect. There has been speculation about the existence of two further translations of (2). There is no substantiation of the indication in 1784 LABARTHE that there was an eighteenth century French translation; on the other hand, in 1965 the Institute of African Studies of the University of Ghana did cyclostyle and distribute two chapters of (2) in an English translation by P.H.BERTELSSEN.

(1742)

CAPITEIN, Rev. Jacobus Eliza Johannes

*Dissertatio politico-theologica: de servitute libertati Christianae non contraria...*, Leyden, 1742.

*Staatkundig-godgeleerd onderzoekschrift over de slaverny, als niet strydig tegen de Christelyke vryheid...*, Leyden, 1742.

These are Latin and Dutch versions of the same thesis. Capitein, born in the Gold Coast c.1717, was in 1726 taken to the Netherlands where, in 1742, he was ordained. He then served as chaplain at Elmina Castle. See article by F.L.BARTELS, *THSG*, 4, 1 (1959).

1744

DAVID, Pierre-Félix-Barthelemy

*Journal d'un voyage fait en Bambouc en 1744*, ed. A. DELCOURT, Paris, 1974.

David was governor of the French colony in Senegal in 1738-46. Delcourt provides extensive annotation and additional documents. See also 1701 COLLECTION: MACHAT.

1744

LE GAGNEUR, *Le Sieur*

*Description d'une partie des plantes dont les Nègres de l'Isle de Bissau se servent pour la cure de différentes maladies...* annotée par Adanson,

ed. Charles BECKER, provisional pub., CNRS La83, Kaolack, 1982.

Cf. 1749 ADANSON.

1745-54

NEWTON, Rev. John

- (1) *An authentic narrative of some remarkable and interesting particulars in the life of \*\* \*\*\*\*\**, London, 1764.

This is also published as pp.1-103 of Vol.1 of *The works of the Rev. John Newton* (London, 1808).

Letters 4-13 deal with voyages to, and experiences in West Africa during 1745-54.

Fr. trans.: Geneva, 1825; Toulouse 1835 & 1862; Valence, 1838.

- (2) *Thoughts upon the African slave trade*, London, 1787, 2nd ed. 1788.

- (3) *Letters to a wife*, London, 1793.

Pt.1, pp. 1-154, of this work prints letters written during three voyages to Africa, 1750-1754. The letters are also in Vol.10 of *The works of the Rev. John Newton* (London, 1808).

- (4) Ed. of selected passages from Newton's MS journal or log: Bernard MARTIN & Mark SPURRELL, *Journal of a slave trader, John Newton, 1750-54. With Newton's 'Thoughts on the African slave trade'*, London, 1962.

After two years in the merchant marine and the Royal Navy, Newton entered the slave trade in 1744 at the age of 19, and he continued in it until 1755, when he joined H.M.Customs at Liverpool. There he came under the influence of Whitfield and Wesley, with the result that he was ordained into the Church of England, becoming a fashionable priest and hymn writer. He gave evidence on the slave trade before the Privy Council in 1789 and also before a Select Committee of the House of Commons in 1790. In addition to the works of his cited above, mention might also be made of *The life of John Newton (by himself)*, (London, 1862), and *An autobiography of John Newton and narrative compiled. . . by Josiah Bull*, (London, 1868).

(1745-46)

POSTLETHWAYT, Malachy

- (1) *The African trade, the great pillar and support of the British plantation trade in America...*, London, 1745 etc.

- (2) *The national and private advantages of the African trade considered, being an enquiry how far it concerns the trading interest of Great Britain effectually to support and maintain the forts and settlements in Africa belonging to the Royal African Company...*, London, 1746; repr. 1772.

[cont.]

Postlethwayt, an established writer in the mercantile interest, was in close touch with active British traders to West Africa. See also 1758 POSTLETHWAYT. Some printings of (1) are by 'A British merchant'. A multi-volume facsimile ed. of his works has been published (Farnborough, 1968).

(1745-47)

VOYAGES: ASTLEY, Thomas

*A new general collection of voyages & travels*, 4 vols, London, 1745-47.

facs. 1968

One of the most famous and, so far as Africa is concerned, complete collections of voyages and travels, first pub. in parts from 1743 onwards. It is supposed that the editor and compiler was the geographer John GREEN.

A careful and critical use is made of the original sources, and the material is arranged systematically. In general, the accounts of voyages and travels relating to each region are first summarised, and there then follows a general description of the region derived from their information. The western African material is arranged as follows:

Vol.1, Bk.2: 16th century English voyages.

Bk.4: Cadamosto etc; Cape Verde Islands.

Vol.2, Bk.1: Cape Blanco to Senegal.

Bk.2: the Gambia & Sierra Leone; voyages & travels; description.

Bk.3: Sierra Leone to Benin; voyages & travels.

Bk.4: general description of the Grain, Ivory & Gold Coasts.

Vol.3, Bk.1: R. Volta to Benin, essentially descriptive.

Bk.2: Benin to Congo, essentially descriptive.

Bk.3: Congo & Angola; voyages & travels.

Bk.4: Congo & Angola; description.

French and German translations provided the beginnings of the collections produced by 1746 PREVOST and 1747 SCHWABE, both of whom went on to extend the work and to enlarge its coverage of the world outside Africa.

(1745) VOYAGES: HARLEIAN COLLECTION (or OSBORNE'S COLLECTION)

*A collection of voyages and travels, consisting of authentic writers in our own tongue... and continued with others of note... compiled from the... library of the late Earl of Oxford...*, printed for... Thomas OSBORNE, 2 vols, London, 1745.

Osborne's two volumes became Vols 7 & 8 of 1704 VOYAGES: CHURCHILL. In Vol. 8 may be found 1578 PIGAFETTA & LOPEZ, 1695 FROGER, and 1682 LE MAIRE. On pp.511-19, the item 'Murders of Englishmen in Old Calabar' derives from 1668 WATTS.

1746-94

LE DAHOMET

Simone BERBAIN, *Le comptoir français de Juda (Ouidah) au XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle*, Dakar 1942; repr. Amsterdam, 1968.

This prints 4 documents, including the accounts of *Le Dahomet* trading at Whydah in 1772.

(1746-89) VOYAGES: PRÉVOST D'EXILES, Abbé Antoine François

*Histoire générale des voyages...*, 80 vols, Paris, 1746-89.

Prévost (1697-1763), the prolific novelist whose works include *Manon Lescaut*, was the first editor of this *Histoire générale*. It began with translations of the four vols of 1745 VOYAGES: ASTLEY, and then was increasingly extended, passing to other editors and into a number of editions with various numbers of volumes, for example that by LA HARPE (32 vols. Paris, 1780-1802). There is also an *Abregé de l'histoire générale des voyages* (23 vols, Paris, 1780-86).

1747 DULIRON, Le Sieur

'Mémoire sur la rivière de Felemé', printed in 1701 MACHAT.

1747-1801 MAWLAY al-QASIM b. MAWLAY SULAYMAN

Michel ABITBOL, *Tombouctou au milieu du XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle d'après la chronique de Mawlay al-Qasim b. Mawlay Sulayman*, Paris, 1982.

1747 PRATIQUE MISSIONNAIRE, La

Fr. J. NOTHOMB, *La pratique missionnaire des Frères Capucins Italiens dans les royaumes de Congo, Angola...* 1747, Louvain, 1931.

This is a manual, based on more than a century of missionary experience in west central Africa, and probably written by a Prefect of Luanda who had had experience in Soyo.

(1747-74) VOYAGES: SCHWABE, Johann Joachim

*Allgemeine Historie der Reisen...*, 21 vols, Leipzig, 1747-74.

The first four vols are translated from the first four vols of 1745 VOYAGES: ASTLEY (which see for the arrangement of the western African material). Vols 8, 10-13, 15-21 are translated from 1746 VOYAGES: PRÉVOST.

1748-75 COLLECTION: COUTO, Carlos

*Os capitães-mores em Angola no século XVIII*, Luanda, 1972.

This prints documents relating to the period.

1749-53 ADANSON, Michel

(1) *Histoire naturelle du Sénégal; coquillages; avec une relation d'un voyage fait en ce pays...*, Paris, 1757.

Eng. trans.: *Voyage to Senegal, the isle of Goree and the River Gambia...*  
*translated from the French with notes by an English gentleman...*

London, 1759.

[cont.]

Ger. trans., Leipzig, 1773; Brandenburg, 1773.

1808 Pinkerton, 1826 Walckenaer

- (2) Charles BECKER & Victor MARTIN, 'Mémoires d'Adanson sur le Sénégal et l'île de Gorée', *BIFAN*, B, 42 (1980) 722-79.

These two memoranda were written in 1763, i.e. after the publication of Adanson's book.

- (3) Alfred LACROIX, 'Michel Adanson au Sénégal (1749-1753)', *BCEHSAOF*, 22, 1 (1938) 18-107.

This prints many letters written by Adanson from Senegal.

- (4) Charles BECKER, Victor MARTIN & R. MBODJ, *Documents inédits d'Adanson sur la langue Wolof*, provisional pub. CNRS La83, Kaolack, 1978.

Adanson, a notable botanist, whose system of plant classification did not prevail against that developed by Carl Linnaeus, began his career with four years in the service of the Senegal Company. The core of the *Histoire Naturelle* is Adanson's description of the large collection he had made of the Senegalese flora. He also published many papers in scientific journals. See also 1744 LE GAGNEUR (and, for the West African work of a pupil of Linnaeus, 1795 AFZELIUS).

1749

[ OSBORN, Capt. Robert ]

*A narrative or journal of the Duke of Cumberland, Indiaman, Captain Robert Osborn...*, London, 1750.

The ship was wrecked near Cape Verde; the narrative covers the survivors' adventures in Senegambia.

(c. 1749)

ROYAL AFRICAN, *The*

*The Royal African, or memoirs of the young prince of Annamaboe*, London, n. d., (c. 1749).

The *Royal African* is a novel, inspired by the presence in London in 1749-51 of William Ansah, a son of the ruling potentate of Anomabu on the Gold Coast, Eno Baisie Kurentsi (known to Europeans as 'John Currantee'). Ansah was the protégé of Lord Halifax, was presented to George III, attended the opera at Covent Garden, and figured in poems by Rev. William DODD and in pieces in *The Gentleman's Magazine*. The novel has a number of allusions to West Africa which could well derive from, for example, 1721 ATKINS or 1727 SNELGRAVE (the former is in fact mentioned). See Wylie SYPHER, 'The African Prince in London', *Jour. Hist. Ideas*, 2, 2 (1941) 237-47, and especially 239-43. Sypher's fn.5 has a conclusive argument as to the date of publication.

(1749)

ROYAL AFRICAN COMPANY

*A detection of the proceedings and practices... of the Royal African Company of England... with remarks on the use and importance of the British forts and settlements on the Coast of Guiney...*, London, 1749.

1750-59

OWEN, Nicholas

Eveline MARTIN, *Journal of a slave dealer... on the coast of Africa and America from... 1746... to... 1757*, London, 1930.

After adventures on both sides of the Atlantic, Owen eventually settled as a slave trader on the coast of Guinea.

1750-64

PROTTEN, Christian

*En nyttig grammaticalisk indledning til tvende hidtil hidtindtil grandske ubekjendte sprog, Fanteisk og Acraisk*, Copenhagen, 1764.

Reprinted with Eng. trans. and ed. by H.M.J. TRUTENAU, *Introduction to the Fante and Ga languages*, London?, 1971.

Proten, a mulatto educated in Denmark, was schoolmaster at Christiansborg.

c.1750-1761

SCHMIDT, Christian Lindholm

*Beskrivelse over... Fri-Neger Qvou Ursovs, Fetisserier og Krigsrustning*, Copenhagen, 1762.

Schmidt was in the service of the Danish West Indies and Guinea Companies, becoming chief merchant at Christiansborg in 1762.

c.1750

TEDZKIRET en-NISIAN

*Tedzkiret en-Nisian fi Akhbar Molouk es-Soudan*, ed. & trans.

O. HOUDAS, 2 vols, Paris, 1899, 1901. facs. 1966

An anonymous chronicle of the Pashalik of Timbuktu; one vol. of Arabic text and one vol. of Fr. trans.

c.1750

VIAGEM AO CASSANGE

Gastão de SOUSA DIAS, 'Uma viagem ao Cassange nos meados do século XVIII',

*Bol.Soc.Geog.Lisboa*, 56 (1938) 3-30.

1750-1874

COLLECTION: CROOKS, John Joseph

*Records relating to the Gold Coast settlements from 1750 to 1874*, Dublin, 1923.

facs. London, 1973

Crooks served in the Gold Coast and Sierra Leone administrations in the early twentieth century.



# 1751 - 1775

1751-55

BARKER, Robert, *carpenter*

- (1) *The unfortunate shipwright, or cruel captain... a narrative of Robert Barker, late carpenter aboard the Thetis... in a voyage to the coast of Guinea and Antigua*, London, n.d. (1760?), & later eds.
- (2) *The genuine life of Robert Barker, dictated by himself while in a state of total blindness...*, London, 1809.

1751-64 (but see comment)

GONJA CHRONICLES

Ivor WILKS, Nehemia LEVTZION, & Bruce M. HEIGHT, *Chronicles from Gonja*, *Fontes Historiae Africanae*, Series Arabica, 9, Cambridge, 1986.

A number of Arabic MSS from Gonja are presented with English translations and considerable discussion and commentary. The most substantial item is the *Kitab Ghanja*, a chronicle some MSS of which end in 1751 and others in 1764. Some of the other items contain information relating to the early nineteenth century.

1752-56

THOMPSON, Rev. Thomas

- (1) *An account of two missionary voyages... the one to New Jersey... the other ... to the coast of Guiney*, London, 1758. facs. 1937  
Ger. trans. 1767.
- (2) *The African trade for Negro slaves shewn to be consistent with the principles of humanity and of revealed religion*, Canterbury, n.d. (1772).
- (3) *Memoirs of an English missionary to the coast of Guinea*, London, 1788.

Thompson was the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel's missionary at Cape Coast in 1752-56. It was he who recommended 1766 QUAQUE for education and training in England.

1753-63

CONSIDERATIONS...

*Considerations on the present peace as far as it is relative to the colonies and the African trade*, London, 1753.

This includes affidavits from persons engaged in the trade with western Africa. Extracts are printed in 1441 COLLECTION: DONNAN.

1753

COSTA ARAUJO, António José da

Damião PERES, *Relação da viagem da fragata Nossa Senhora da Estrella a Bissau em 1753 por António José da Costa Araújo*, Lisbon, 1952.

(1753)

G - - - , J. S.

*The detector detected, or the state of affairs on the Gold Coast...* London, 1753.

The author is described as 'the last commander of Commenda under the Royal African Company'.

c. 1755

EQUIANO, Olaudah

*The interesting narrative of the life of Olaudah Equiano or Gustavus Vassa, the African*, 2 vols, London, 1789; many other U.K. & U.S. eds. Dutch trans. 1790; Russian trans. 1794.

Abridged, annotated ed. by Paul EDWARDS, London, 1967; rev. & extended, 1989. Annotated ed. of first three chapters by G.I. JONES, in Philip D. CURTIN, *Africa remembered*, Madison, 1967, 60-98.

Equiano was captured and sold into the Atlantic slave trade when he was about ten years old. The first three chapters of his memoirs describe society and his childhood in western Igboland.

1758

LINDSAY, Rev. John

*A voyage to the coast of Africa in 1758, containing a succinct account of the expedition to, and the taking of the Island of Goree by, a squadron commanded by the Hon. Augustus Keppel*, London, 1759.

Lindsay was a chaplain in Keppel's squadron. He spent some time in Senegal and made an expedition up the river. See also 1758 TOUCHET.

(1758)

POSTLETHWAYT, Malachy

*The importance of the African expedition...* London, 1758.

The expedition was that sent to capture St. Louis and Goree (1758 LINDSAY), and Postlethwayt argued that the French should be completely ousted from West Africa. For a note on the author, see 1745 POSTLETHWAYT.

1758

[ TOUCHET, Samuel ]

*A letter to a merchant of Bristol concerning a petition of S-- T-- Esq. to the King for an exclusive grant of the trade of the R. Senegal...* by a merchant of London, London, 1762.

Touchet had been involved, together with Thomas Cumming, in the British expedition against Senegal in 1758. See also 1758 LINDSAY.

1759-74

CHERUBINO da SAVONA, Fr

Carlo TOSO, *Il Congo nella seconda metà del XVIII secolo: il 'Breve ragguaglio' di P. Cherubino da Savona*, Rome, 1976 [cont.]

Fr. trans. & ed. by Louis JADIN, *Aperçu de la situation du Congo et rite d'élection des rois en 1775, d'après le P. Cherubino da Savona, missionnaire au Congo de 1759 à 1774*, Brussels & Rome, 1963.

Jadin's ed. was originally published in *BIHBR*, 35 (1963) 246-419.

c. 1760

BOONE, Dr

'A curious account of the climate and diseases in Africa, upon the Senegal...' published as an appendix to Richard BROCKLESBY, M.D., *Oeconomical and medical observations... 1758-63... tending to the improvement of military hospitals...* London, 1764.

Boone spent three years in Senegal as Surgeon to the British garrison.

1760s

HIPPISLEY (or HIPPERSELEY), John

*Essays on the populousness of Africa, on the trade at the forts on the Gold Coast...* London, 1764.

Hippisley served on the Gold Coast with the Company of Merchants, in 1766 becoming Governor at Cape Coast (where he eventually died).

(1760-61)

VOYAGES: NEWBERRY, John

*The world displayed, or a curious collection of voyages and travels, 20 vols*, London, 1760-61; later eds, 1767, 1774-78, 1790.

Ger. trans. 1764.

African material is in Vols. 17 and 18.

c. 1762-88

ABDUL RAHAHMAN

Allan D. AUSTIN, *African Muslims in antebellum America: a sourcebook*, New York & London, 1984), pp. 121-263.

Austin reprints and discusses the considerable contemporary source material for the life of Abdul Rahahman. Born in Futa Jalon c. 1762, he had travelled widely in West Africa before being shipped from the Gambia to America as a slave in 1788. Later he went to Liberia, where he died in 1829. Austin also lists the considerable supporting literature, which includes a modern biography, Terry ALFORD, *Prince among Slaves* (New York, 1977).

(1762-88)

BENEZET, Anthony

(1) *A short account of that part of Africa inhabited by the Negroes... extracted from divers authors*, Philadelphia, ?1762; another ed. 'with large additions and amendments', Philadelphia, 1762; eds. also pub. in London, 1763, 1768.

Ger. trans. 1763.

[cont.]

- (2) *Some historical account of Guinea... also a republication of the sentiments of several authors... on this interesting subject...*, Philadelphia, 1771; also pub. in London, 1772, with several subsequent eds. (that of 1788 being reissued in facs, London, 1968.)

What is essentially the same anti-slavery tract was extensively developed over the years and enjoyed a wide success. Benezet (1713-84) came of a French Huguenot family which moved to London in 1715 and to Philadelphia in 1731, where he became a Quaker and ran a school for Black children. His African material is almost all extracted from well known published 17th and 18th century sources. However (2) contains previously unpublished extracts from the journal of a surgeon who visited R. Sestos on a Liverpool ship in 1724-25; the fullest version of these is in the 1788 ed. There is a *Memoir* by Roberts VAUX (Philadelphia, 1817), revised and extended by 1848 ARMISTEAD (London, 1859).

1762-63

CHOISEUL, Etienne-François de, Comte

'The Choiseul Papers', *Munger Africana Library Notes* (Pasadena), No.3. 1971.

This publication reproduces in facsimile four memoranda sent to the Duc de Nivernais by Choiseul, Louis XV's Foreign Minister, at a time when the French were considering whether to press for the return of Senegal and other possessions in Africa in the negotiations with Great Britain that led up to the Treaty of Paris in 1763. They contain considerable information, from the French point of view, on West Africa and its trade. The accompanying Eng. trans. is not wholly reliable. Cf. 1762 COLLECTION: BECKER.

1762

WORGE, Major-General

George DUKE, *The life of Major-General Worge, Colonel of the 86th Regiment of Foot, and Governor of Senegal in Africa, with an account of the settlement of Senegal and Goree*, London, 1844.

1762-83

COLLECTION: BECKER, Charles

*Trois mémoires inédits sur le commerce du Sénégal, 1762-1783*, provisional pub. CNRS La83, Kaolack, 1982.  
Cf. 1762 CHOISEUL.

1764-67

DEMANET, Abbé Jean-Baptiste

*Nouvelle histoire de l'Afrique française*, 2 vols, Paris, 1767.  
Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1778.

Demanet had been chaplain in Goree and St Louis; there is an account of a journey made by him in 1826 VOYAGES: WALCKENAER, Vol.5. But his book contains borrowings from 1685 LABAT.

1764-72

SOUSA COUTINHO, Francisco Innocencio de

Maria Tereza Amado NEVES, *D. Francisco Innocencio de Sousa Coutinho; aspecto moral de sua acção em Angola*, Lisbon, 1938.

This study of an energetic governor of Angola prints some informative documents.

1766-76

PROYART, Abbé Liévin Bonaventure

*Histoire de Loango, Kakongo et autres Royaumes d'Afrique...*, Paris & Lyon,  
1776; Paris, 1819. facs. Farnborough, 1968  
Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1777; Swed. trans. 1780.  
1808 Pinkerton

Proyart was active in the last of three successive French missionary campaigns in Loango and Kakongo.  
See 1766 COLLECTION: CUVELIER.

1766-1811

QUAQUE, Rev. Philip

'The letters of Philip Quaque', ed. Margaret PRIESTLEY, in Philip D. CURTIN,  
*Africa remembered*, Madison, 1967, pp.99-139.

Quaque, son of a Cape Coast *caboceer*, was educated and ordained in England and then served as Anglican chaplain and missionary for the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel at Cape Coast. Cf. 1752 THOMPSON.

1766-76

COLLECTION: CUVELIER, Mgr Jean

*Documents sur une mission française au Kakongo, 1766-1776*, ARSC Mém. 30, 1,  
Brussels, 1953. Cf. 1766 PROYART.

1767-70

DALZEL, Archibald

*The history of Dahomy, an inland kingdom of Africa, compiled from authentic  
memoirs*, London, 1793. facs. 1967

Dalzel, who had qualified in medicine at Edinburgh, was governor of the British fort at Whydah during 1767-70 (and his total experience of West Africa and the slave trade extended from 1763 to 1802), but his *History*, a work justifying the slave trade, is for the most part a compilation, drawing heavily, for example, on 1727 SNELGRAVE and 1772 NORRIS. He also made good use of material supplied to him by Lionel ABSON for the period 1774-90 when Abson resided on the Slave Coast. There are studies of Dalzel by I. A. AKINJOGBIN, *JAH*, 7, 1 (1966) 67-78, and by James A. RAWLEY, *JAHS*, 17, 2 (1984) 317-23.

1767-70

GRACE, Edward

*Letters of a West African trader*, ed. with an introduction by T.S. ASHTON,  
London, 1950.

(1767)

VOYAGES: KNOX, J.

*A new collection of voyages, discoveries and travels...*, 7 vols, London, 1767.

(1769)

CASTILHON, Jean-Louis

*Zingha, reine d'Angola, histoire africaine...*, Paris, 1769; Rotterdam, 1775.

A novel, with 1657 ANTONIO LAUDATI as a principal source; see O. de BOUVEIGNES in *Zaire*, 2, 7 (1948) 797-800.

1769

DOUMET de SIBLAS, Jacques

Charles BECKER & Victor MARTIN, 'Mémoire inédit de Doumet... [sur] le Kayor et les pays voisins', *BIFAN*, B, 38, 1 (1974) 25-92.

Doumet was an officer of engineers in the French army who was stationed at Goree for nine or ten years from 1763.

c.1770-1793

BJØRN, Andreas Riegelsen

*Tanker om slavehandelen*, Copenhagen, 1806.

Bjørn was chief merchant in the Danish establishment on the Gold Coast in the 1770s, and in the 1780s he became a fort commander. During 1789-92 he was governor of the Danish settlements, and he left the Gold Coast for good in 1793. See also 1780 THAARUP.

1770

COSMÉ, Dr Francisco Damião

Luis de PINA, 'Tratado das queixas endemicas, e mais fataes nesta conquista', *Studia*, 20-22 (1967) 119-268.

Pina has edited other work on the medical history of Angola in the 18th century, e.g.

'Documentos para a história medica nacional ultramarina', *A Medicina Contemporânea* (Lisbon) 37 (1937); & 'Notas para a medicina indígena angolense no século XVIII', *Bol. Geral das Colonias*, 151 (1938).

(c.1770)

GRONNIOSAW (or GRANWASA), James Albert Ukawsaw

*A narrative of the most remarkable particulars in the life of James Albert Ukawsaw Gronniosaw, an African prince, as related by himself*, Bath, ?1770.

There are many other publications of this pamphlet, e.g. from Leeds, Dublin, London, Newport R.I. and Catskill N.Y., with some variations in title, and varying from about 32 and about 48pp in length. Gronniosaw claimed to be a native of Bornu who had been shipped as a slave from the Gold Coast. (This would not have been unusual - cf. 1808 ALI EISAMI, or the recruitment at Cape Coast by 1830 LANDER of two Bornu men for service with the expedition to the Niger.) Depending on the edition, there are something like ten pages in which Gronniosaw retails the adventures he claimed to have had in Africa.

1770s

SCHOTT(E), Johann Peter

(1) *Kurze Nachrichten über den Zustand von Senegal, von den dasigen Möhren- und Negerstämmen... der Gegend*, Leipzig, 1781. [cont.]

- (2) *A treatise on the Synochus atrabilosa, a contagious fever which raged at Senegal in the year 1779*, London, 1782.  
Fr. trans. 1785; Ger. trans. Stendal, 1786.

The author's name is given as Schott on (1) and as Schotte on (2); he was a German surgeon based in London who made a number of voyages to West Africa on British vessels. The first publication was written up from Schott(e)'s information by Johann Reinhold FORSTER, the pioneer German naturalist and ethnographer, who was based in England during 1766-75. The second includes information on the slave trade from Galam.

1771-74

SMEATHMAN, Henry

*Plan of a settlement to be made near Sierra Leone on the Grain Coast of Africa*, London, 1786.

Smeathman, a man of varied enthusiasms, spent 1771-74 collecting botanical specimens in the Banana Islands. It was largely as a result of his urging - from at least 1783 - that Sierra Leone became the site for the 1787 settlement of 'Black Poor' from London (cf. his letters to the Quaker Dr Thomas Knowles and the 'Substance of a plan of a settlement. . .' printed in 1787 WADSTROM, Pt.2). In 1781 Smeathman published *Some account of the termites which are found in Africa and other hot countries*.

(1771)

[ TWEED, Mr ]

*Considerations and remarks on the present state of the trade of Africa, with some account of the British settlement... by a gentleman who resided upwards of fifteen years in that country*, London, 1771.

This anonymous pamphlet of some 88 pages is generally ascribed to a Mr Tweed.

1771-72 VERDUN de la CRENNE, Jean-René-Antoine de, *Admiral*, et al.

*Voyage fait par ordre du Roy en 1771 et 1772 en diverses parties de l'Europe de l'Afrique et de l'Amérique...*, Paris, 1778.

The purpose of the voyage was to check instruments for measuring latitude and longitude and to verify charts. Other authors include the Chevalier BORDA and M. PINGRE.

(1772)

[ ? DEMARIN, John Peter ]

*A treatise upon the trade from Great Britain to Africa... By an African merchant*, London, 1772.

Appendix H, pp. 53-123, consists of letters from the merchant Richard BREW at Anomabu etc.; extracts are printed in 1441 COLLECTION: DONNAN, Vol 2. For Brew, see Margaret PRIESTLEY, *West African trade and coast society*. . (London, 1969).

1772

NETTELBECK, Joachim

*Joachim Nettelbeck, Bürger zu Colberg; eine Lebensbeschreibung... herausgegeben von J.C.L.Haken*, 3 vols, Leipzig, 1821-22. [cont.]

Nettelbeck visited West Africa on a slaving vessel in 1772; the account of the voyage is in Vol.2. He called at Cape Mesurado and spent some time on the Gold Coast.

1772-75

NORRIS, Robert

- (1) *A short account of the African trade...*, Liverpool, 1788; a 'corrected' ed. was pub. in London in 1789, and was also incorporated in
  - (2) *Memoirs of the reign of Bossa Ahádee, King of Dahomy... to which are added the author's journey to Abomey... and a short account of the African slave trade*, London, 1789. facs. 1968.
- Fr. trans.: *Voyage au pays de Dahomé... avec une description de quelques parties de la côte de Guinée durant un voyage fait en 1787 et 1788 avec le Dr Sparman et le Capt. Arrenhuis*, par C.B.Wadstrom, Paris, 1790.

Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1790; Berlin, 1791.

The *Memoirs* are critically examined by Robin LAW, 'The slave-trader as historian: Robert Norris and the history of Dahomey', *HA*, 16 (1989) 219-35. A revised version of Norris's work was printed in 1767 DALZEL; both authors were active in the slave trade interest during the campaign against the trade.

1772-74

ROBERTSON, Dr Robert

*A physical journal kept... during three voyages on the coast of Africa and the West Indies in the years 1772-74*, London, 1777.

Robertson was Physician at the Royal Hospital, Greenwich, writing on tropical fevers.

1774-91

ABSON, Lionel

Abson, governor of the British fort at Whydah 1774-1803, provided Dalzel with information on Dahomey for the years 1774-91. See 1767 DALZEL, pp.156-230.

1774-77

LE BRASSEUR, Joseph-Alexandre

'Détails historiques et politiques sur la religion, les mœurs et le commerce des peuples qui habitent la côte occidentale d'Afrique depuis... Maroc jusqu'aux rivières de Casamance et de Gambie', ed. Charles BECKER & Victor MARTIN, *BIFAN*, B, 39, 1 (1977) 81-132.

Le Brasseur was royal governor at Goree in 1774-77, and his memorandum was written in 1778. See also 1701 COLLECTION: MACHAT.

(1775)

DUBOIS-FONTANELLE, Jean-Gaspard

*Anecdotes africaines, depuis l'origine ou la découverte des différents royaumes qui composent l'Afrique, jusqu'à nos jours*, Paris, 1775.

A superficial work deriving from standard 17th and 18th century sources.



(1776)

NORDENSKIÖLD, Ulric

*Afhandling om nyttan för Sverige af handel och nybyggen i Indierne och pa Africa*, Stockholm, 1776.

The author was the brother of Augustus Nordenskiöld who was mineralogist to the Sierra Leone Co. in 1792. See 1787 WADSTROM.

(1777)

OLDENDORP, Christian Georg Andreas

*Geschichte der Mission der evangelischen Brüder auf den Caraibischen Inseln St Thomas, St Croix und St Jan*, ed. Johann Jakob BOSSART, Barby & Leipzig, 1777.

Swedish ed.: *Tillförlätlig underrättelse om Negerne pa Guinea kusten, utragen u Herr Oldendorps Missions Historia*, Uppsala, 1784.

Danish ed.: *Fulstandig udtogt af C.G.A.Oldendorps Missions-Historie...*, Copenhagen, 1784.

Modern Eng. trans. by Arnold R. HIGHFIELD & Vladimir BARAC, *A Caribbean mission*, New York, 1987.

Oldendorp collected valuable information from interviews conducted in 1767-68 with African slaves, but Bossart printed only a proportion of this material. The Swedish and Danish eds are even more truncated (but publication of the whole original MS is now in prospect). See article by S.D.W.BROWN in *Plantation Society in the Americas*, 2, 1 (1983) 37-61.

1777

COTTON, Capt. R.N., & ROBERTS, John

*Extracts from an account of the state of the British forts on the Gold Coast of Africa, taken by Capt. Cotton of H.M. Ship Pallas in... 1777, to which are added observations by John Roberts*, London, 1778.

Roberts was Governor at Cape Coast Castle. He was also the author of an eight page pamphlet, *Cursory observations on the trade to Africa* (London, ?1777).

1778-79

BERTHOUT, J. M. & GLICOURT, P. de, Abbés

Alphonse LEFEBVRE, 'Le Sénégal et l'île Saint-Louis, d'après les documents inédits d'un missionnaire boulonnais (1778-1779)', *Bull. Union. Géog. du Nord de France*, 14 (1893) 289-334.

Lefebvre prints extracts from Berthout's MS account of the visits to Mauritania and Senegal of the two missionaries. See Pierre LINTINGRE, *Voyages du Sieur de Glicourt à la côte occidentale d'Afrique pendant les années 1778 et 1779* (Dakar, 1966).

1779-99

LANDOLPHE, Capt. Jean-François

*Mémoires du Capitaine Landolphe contenant l'histoire de ses voyages... aux côtes d'Afrique...*, redigés sur son manuscrit par J. S. Quesné, 2 vols, Paris, 1823.

Landolphe's career was substantially devoted to attempts to develop French trade on the Benin River, which he had first visited in 1769. See also 1784 MOREAU, 1784 COLLECTION: ROUSSIER and 1786 PALISOT-BEAUVOIS.

1779-89

LAMIRAL, Dominique Harcourt

(1) *L'Afrique et le peuple affriquin considérés sous tous leur rapports avec notre commerce et nos colonies*, Paris, 1789.

(2) *Mémoire sur le Sénégal*, Paris, 1791.

Lamiral went to Senegal in 1779 as agent for the Compagnie de la Guyane.

1779 LAUZUN, Armand-Louis de Gontaut, Duc de (also Duc de BIRON)

'Journal du Sénégal' and 'Mémoire sur le commerce et les possessions des Anglais que le Roi vient de conquérir...', documents printed by J. MONTHEILET in 'Le Duc de Lauzun, Gouverneur du Sénégal (janvier-mars 1779)', *BCEHSAOF*, 2 (1920) 193-237 & 515-563.

Lauzun (who in 1778 inherited the additional title Duc de Biron) commanded the force that retook St. Louis from the British. His *Mémoires* were eventually published in a number of editions, for example that by Georges d'HEYLII (Paris, 1880).

(1779)

MIDDLETON, Charles Theodore

*A new and complete system of geography*, 2 vols, London, 1779.

A typical 18th century compilation which gives good space to Africa.

c.1780-1806

°ABD ALLAH b. MUHAMMAD, *al-Turudi*  
(ABDULLAHI dan FODIO)

*Tazyin al-waraqat*, Arabic text with Eng. trans., ed. Mervyn HISKETT, Ibadan, 1963.

An account of the missionary work of Usman dan Fodio and of the jihad to which it led and in which the author participated. Cf. 1780 UTHMAN.

c.1780-1805

LAMINE KABBA (or LAMEN KEBBE)

Lamine Kabba, a literate native of Futa Jalon who was a slave in the United States, was the principal informant for two works by Theodore DWIGHT Jr.:

(1) 'Remarks on the Sereculehs, an African nation, accompanied by a vocabulary of their language', *Am. Ann. of Education and Instruction*, 5 (1835) 451-56.  
[cont.]

- (2) 'Condition and character of Negroes in Africa', *Methodist Quarterly Review*, Jan. 1864, 77-90.

These pieces are reprinted, with supporting material and other editorial matter, in 1701 COLLECTION: AUSTIN, pp.409-44.

c.1780-1808

MUHAMMAD BELLO

*The rise of the Sokoto Fulani, being a paraphrase and in some parts a translation of Infaku'l Maisuri*, tr. & ed. E.J. ARNETT & H.R. PALMER, Kano, n.d. (1922).

Muhammad Bello's 'Infaku'l Maisuri' is in part a biographical dictionary of notable 'ulama of the western Sudan from the 16th century onwards, and in part an account of the life of Usuman dan Fodio and of the jihad which he launched, and in which his son Muhammad Bello participated (cf. 1780 'UTHMAN). There are editions of the original Arabic by C.E.J. WHITTING (London, 1951) and by ABUBAKR GUMMI (Cairo, 1964). See comments by Murray LAST, *The Sokoto Caliphate* (London, 1967), xxx-xxxii.

c.1780-89

SILVA CORREIA, Elias Alexandre de

*História de Angola*, 2 vols, Lisbon, 1937.

Silva Correia was a Brazilian who had lived at Luanda, which he left in 1789. 1575 CATALOGO was a major source for him, but W.G.L. RANGLES (*L'ancien royaume du Congo*, Paris, 1968) thought that his work was reliable only for the period in which he was in Angola.

1780s

THAARUP, Prof. Frederic

Thaarup published documents relating to Danish activities on the Gold Coast, including the later activities of 1783 ISERT and the 1788 Report of 1770 BJØRN, in *Archiv for Statistik, Politik og Huusholdings-Videnskaber*, (Copenhagen) 2 (1796-97) & 3 (1797-98).

c.1780-1806

'UTHMAN b. MUHAMMAD FODIYE (USUMAN DAN FODIO)

- (1) *Bayan wujub al-hijra 'ala'l-'ibad*; Arabic text with Eng. trans. and notes by F. H. al-MASRI, Khartoum & Oxford, 1978.
- (2) Mervyn HISKETT, '*Kitab al-farq*; a work on the Habe kingdoms...', *BSQAS*, 23 (1960) 558-73.
- (3) A.D.H. BIVAR, '*The Wathiqat ahl al-Sudan*, a manifesto of the Fulani jihad', *JAH*, 2 (1961) 235-44.
- (4) H.R. PALMER, '*An early Fulani conception of Islam, the Tanbih al-ikhwan...*', *JASoc*, 13 (1913-14) 407-14 & 14 (1914-15) 53-9.
- (5) Ismail HAMET, '*Nour el-Eulbabe de Cheikh Otmane dan Foudiou*', *Rev. Africaine* (Algiers), 41 (1897) 297-320, & 42 (1898) 58-70.

[cont.]

These publications include translations from the Arabic of the initiator and leader of the great Fulani jihad.  
Cf. 1780 MUHAMMAD BELLO and 1780 <sup>c</sup>ABD ALLAH.

(1780)

VOYAGES: MOORE, John Hamilton

*A new and complete collection of voyages & travels*, 2 vols, London, n.d.(1780)

1781-88

RAPHAEL de CASTELLO de VIDE, *Fr*

'O Congo', in Vol.7 of *Fr* MARCELLINO da CIVEZZA, *Storia universale delle Missioni Francescane*, 9 vols, Rome, 1857-95.

*Fr.* trans. 4 vols, Paris, 1898.

These are translations, in Italian and in French from the Italian, of a Portuguese MS in the Library of the Academia das Ciências in Lisbon.

c.1782-92

BONAVENTURA REBAUDO da CERIAANA, *Fr*

Carlo TOZO, *Relazioni inedite di P. Bonaventura Rebaudo da Ceriana sulle missioni "ne' Regni di Congo, Angola e luoghi adiacenti"*, Rome, 1973.

(1782)

DOUÉ, *Dr*

*Fièvres observées à la côte occidentale d'Afrique*. Montpellier, 1782.

An early example of the French medical theses noted under 1822 STORMONT.

(1782)

SANCHO, Ignatius

*The letters of the late Ignatius Sancho, an African*, 2 vols, London, 1782,  
many later eds. facs. 1968 (of 5th ed., 1803)

Sancho was born on a slave ship and so had no first-hand knowledge of Africa.

1783-86

ISERT, *Dr* Paul Erdmann

*Reise nach Guinea und den Caribäischen Inseln...*, Copenhagen, 1788.

2nd ed., *Neue Reise nach Guinea...*, Berlin & Leipzig, 1790.

The 2nd edition omits the meteorological information contained in the first edition but adds an appendix on the slave trade.

Dutch trans. 1790 & 1797; Swedish trans., abbreviated, 1795.

Danish trans. 1790; modern Danish ed., abbreviated, by Ingeborg RAUNKIAER,

*Laegen Paul Iserts Breve fra Dansk Guinea, 1783-87*, Copenhagen, 1917.

*Fr.* trans.: *Voyages en Guinée...*, Paris, 1793;

modern ed., annotated, by Nicoué GAYIBOR, Paris 1989.

Annotated English trans. by Selena Axelrod WINSNES, *Letters on West Africa*

*and the slave trade...*, Oxford, 1992. [cont.]

Isert served as a surgeon in the service of the Danish Company on the Gold Coast. He later returned to start a plantation there but died in 1789; for his later activities, see 1780 THAARUP. See WINSNES op. cit. for fuller information.

1783-86

SAUGNIER, F.

*Relations de plusieurs voyages à la côte d'Afrique, à Maroc, au Sénégal, à Gorée, à Galam...*, Paris, 1791; other eds. 1792, 1799.  
Eng. trans. in 1783 SAUGNIER & BRISSON, pp.1-347.

1783-86

SAUGNIER, F., &amp; BRISSON, Pierre Raymond de

*Voyages to the coast of Africa, by Mess. Saugnier and Brisson, containing an account of their shipwreck... and subsequent slavery and interesting details of the manners of the Arabs of the desert and of the slave trade as carried on at Senegal and Galam*, London, 1792. facs. New York, 1969  
Cf. 1783 SAUGNIER and 1785 BRISSON; see also 1784 FOLLIE.

1784-85

FOLLIE, Louis-Guillaume

(1) *Mémoire d'un François qui sort de l'esclavage*, Amsterdam & Paris, 1785.  
(2) *Voyages dans le désert du Sahara*, Paris, 1792.  
Modern ed., Tours, 1886. Ger. trans. (by J.R.FORSTER) 1795.  
Follie, a colonial official, was one of those shipwrecked on *Les Deux Amis* on the Saharan coast in 1784 and then enslaved by the Moors; cf 1783 SAUGNIER, 1785 BRISSON.

1784-90 (but see note)

LABARTHE, Pierre

(1) *Voyage au Sénégal pendant les années 1784 et 1785, d'après les mémoires de Lajaille...*, Paris, 1802.  
Ger. trans. Hamburg & Mainz, 1802; Weimar, 1802; Vienna, 1804.  
1826 Walckenaer  
(2) *Voyage à la côte de Guinée, ou description des côtes d'Afrique, depuis le Cap Tagrin jusqu'au Cap de Lopez-Gonzalves...*, Paris, 1803.  
Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1803, and, abridged, Weimar 1803 and Vienna 1804.

Labarthe (1760-1824), of Bordeaux merchant stock, became in 1783 secretary to the *Intendant-Général des Colonies* in the *Ministère de la Marine*, and from 1794 to 1808 (when he retired with eye trouble), he was *Chef du Bureau des Colonies Orientales et des Côtes d'Afrique*. He went on a nine month voyage to West Africa in 1788-89, but a strength of his writings is the use he was able to make of reports from naval officers and traders which were accessible to him in his official capacities. Thus, for example, some of his material relating to Whydah and Dahomey in (2) comes from French traders active c.1776-77, while the Marquis de La Jaille was an officer in the French navy who in 1784-85 surveyed the coasts of West Africa with a view to the establishment of trading posts.

[cont.]

1784

MOREAU de SAINT-MÉRY

*Observations sur le Royaume de Ouairé à la Côte d'Or en Afrique*, Paris, 1785.  
Also printed in 1784 COLLECTION: ROUSSIER.

Moreau was a colonial expert who never went to Africa. His *Observations* were based on his acquaintance with 1779 LANDOLPHE and with the Warri prince, Boudakan, whom Landolphe had brought to France.

1784-87

COLLECTION: ROUSSIER, Paul

'Documents sur les relations entre la France et le Royaume de Ouairé à la côte d'Afrique (1784-1787)', *BCEHSAOF*, 11 (1928) 352-85.

During these years a French company was endeavouring to establish a factory at Warri. See also 1779 LANDOLPHE.

1785-86

BRISSON, Pierre Raymond de

*Histoire du naufrage et de la captivité de M. de Brisson avec la description des déserts d'Afrique depuis le Sénégal jusqu'au Maroc*, Paris, 1789.

Modern ed. by Attilio GAUDIO, Paris, 1984.

Eng. trans: *An account of the shipwreck and captivity...*, London, 1789;

also 'Narrative of the shipwreck and captivity of Mr de Brisson'

in 1783 SAUGNIER & BRISSON, pp.349-500.

A number of Ger. trans. 1790-99.

Brisson was an official who did three tours of duty in West Africa, extending in all from 1778 to 1789.  
Cf. 1784 FOLLIE.

1785

CAPELLIS, Hippolyte, Comte de

François GAULME, 'Un document sur le Ngoyo et ses voisins en 1784: 1'

"Observation sur la navigation et le commerce de la Côte d'Angola" du Comte de Capellis', *RFHOM*, 64, 236 (1977) 350-75.

1785-87

DUKE, Antera

C. Daryll FORDE, *Efik traders of Old Calabar...; the Diary of Antera Duke, an Efik slave-trading chief of the eighteenth century*, London, 1956.

The original diary, written in pidgin, was destroyed in the 1940s, but extracts had been copied before this, and these are printed together with an annotated English translation.

1785-86

DURAND, Jean-Baptiste-Léonard

*Voyage au Sénégal, fait dans les années 1785 et 1786...*, 2 or 3 vols, Paris, An X /1802; a second 3 vol. ed. in 1807 with the same sheets but with a new title page. [cont.]

Ger. trans. Weimar 1803, Vienna 1804; Eng. trans. 1806.

Durand was briefly in charge of the Senegal Company in Africa. There are two original French editions: in each case the final volume (of good maps and plates) is quarto, but the preceding text may be printed in either one quarto or two octavo vols. In the latter case, Vol.1 covers the coast to as far as Sierra Leone with appreciable borrowings from such as 1685 LABAT, 1764 DEMANET, 1783 SAUGNIER, and 1785 BRISSON, while Vol.2 deals with kingdoms in the interior and is based more on his own experience, e.g. in the gum trade. The English edition is in one volume and has a useful index.

1785

EINSIEDEL, Johann August von

*Nachricht von den innern Ländern von Afrika, auf einer 1785 nach Tunis unternommenen Reise, aus Berichten der Eingebornen gesammelt*, Leipzig, 1790.

This has some information relating to the western Sudan.

c. 1785

FALCONBRIDGE, Alexander

*An account of the slave trade on the coast of Africa*, London, 1788.

Prior to serving with the Sierra Leone Co. in 1791-94, Falconbridge had been a surgeon on slaving vessels. His book relates mainly to Bonny and its neighbourhood. A second edition, somewhat enlarged, is also dated 1788.

1785-88

[ GEOFFROY de VILLENEUVE, René-Claude ]

*L'Afrique, ou histoire, mœurs, usages et coutumes des Africains: le Sénégal*, 4 vols, Paris, 1814.

Only the initials 'R. G. V.' appear on the title page. The author was aide-de-camp to the Chevalier de Boufflers (see 1786 BOUFFLERS), governor of the Senegal colony; he includes a Wolof vocabulary. 1821 SHOBERL is in effect an Eng. ed. of this work.

1785-87

GOLBÉRY, Silvére-Meinrad-Xavier de

(1) *Lettres sur l'Afrique*, Paris, 1791.

(2) *Fragmens d'un voyage en Afrique fait pendant les années 1785, 1786 et 1787 dans les contrées occidentales de ce continent*, 2 vols, Paris, An X /1802.

There are two Eng. trans. of (2), both entitled *Travels in Africa...*, one by W. MUDFORD (2 vols, London, 1802, 1808) and the other by F. BLAGDEN (2 vols, London, 1802), and three Ger. trans. - Weimar 1803, Leipzig 1803, and Berlin & Hamburg, 1804.

Golbéry was a military engineer who was sent out to report on Goree and Senegal.

1785-87

MATTHEWS, John, Lt. R.N.

*A voyage to the River Sierra Leone... an account of the trade and productions ... & of the civil and religious customs and manners... With an additional letter on the subject of the slave trade...*, London, 1788; 2nd ed. 1791.  
fac. 1966

Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1789 (twice); Fr. trans. 1797; Sp. trans. 1921.

1826 Walckenaer

When an unemployed officer in the Royal Navy, Matthews went out to rebuild a trading factory. The 2nd edition has eight plates which were not in the first edition.

1785 onwards

PERON, Capt.

*Mémoires du Capitaine Péron sur ses voyages aux côtes d'Afrique...*, ed.

L.- Saturnin BRISSOT-THIVARS, 2 vols, Paris, 1824.

Péron was a slave-trader whose activities extended as far as Angola.

c. 1785

SALIH BILALI

'Salih Billali's recollections of Massina', in W.B.HODGSON, *Notes on northern Africa, the Sahara and the Soudan*, New York, 1844.

Modern annotated eds by Ivor WILKS in 1701 COLLECTION: CURTIN, pp.143-51, and together with other supporting documents - in 1701 COLLECTION: AUSTIN, pp. 309-408.

1786-1800

ADAMS, Capt. John

(1) *Sketches taken during ten voyages to Africa between the years 1786 and 1800, including observations on the country between Cape Palmas and the River Congo, and... remarks... on the inhabitants...*, London, n.d.(1822)

(2) *Remarks on the country extending from Cape Palmas to the River Congo...*, London, 1823.  
fac. 1966.

The second book is a substantially enlarged version of the first, and has an appendix on European trade with West Africa.

1786-87

BOUFFLERS, Chevalier Stanislas-Jean de

(1) Paul PRAT, *Lettres du Chevalier de Boufflers à la Comtesse de Sabran*, Paris, 1891.

(2) E. de MAGNIEU & Henri PRAT, *Correspondance inédite de la Comtesse de Sabran et du Chevalier de Boufflers, 1778-1788*. Paris, 1875.

Boufflers, a man of some achievement both as a soldier and as an author, was governor of the French colony of Senegal in 1786-87; he gave a depressing account of it in his letters and journals. The Comtesse de Sabran became his wife in 1797.



1786-87

GRANDPRÉ, Louis-Marie-Joseph Ohier, *Comte de*

*Voyage à la côte occidentale de l'Afrique fait dans les années 1786 et 1787, contenant la description des Etats du Congo...*, 2 vols, Paris, An IX/1801.  
Ger. trans: Weimar, 1801; Berlin & Hamburg, 1804.

Grandpré (1761-1846) was a naval officer who opposed the French Revolution.

1786-792

PALISOT-BEAUVOIS, A.M.F. (*Baron* PALISOT de BEAUVOIS)

- (1) *Flore d'Oware et de Benin en Afrique*, 2 vols, Paris, 1804-07.
- (2) *Insectes recueillis en Afrique...*, Paris, 1805.
- (3) 'Notice sur le peuple du Bénin', *Décades Philosophiques*, 12, année 9, 1801.

Palisot was a member of 1779 LANDOPHE's 1786 expedition to Warri and Benin.

(1786)

VOYAGES: HEDENDAAGSCHE HISTORIE

*Hedendaagsche historie...*, Vol.16, Amsterdam, 1786.

The series derives from 1745 VOYAGES: ASTLEY and 1746 VOYAGES: PRÉVOST, but Vol.16 contains some additional material relative to the Dutch connection with West Africa.

(1787-91)

CLARKSON, Thomas

- (1) *Essay on the impolicy of the African slave trade*, London, 1788.
- (2) *Essay on the efficiency of regulation or abolition...*, London, 1789.
- (3) *Letters on the slave-trade and the state of the natives in those parts of Africa which are contiguous to Fort St. Louis and Goree...*, London, 1791.

The abolitionist, Thomas Clarkson, never visited Africa (unlike his brother John, who served as Governor of the Colony of Sierra Leone). But he was commonly well informed about conditions there; for example, (2) contains evidence from first-hand observers of the slave trade. The works mentioned are only a selection of his published writings, which reached their summation in his *History of the rise, progress and accomplishment of the abolition of the African slave trade* (2 vols, London, 1808; facs. 1968).

(1787)

CUGOANO, Ottobah

*Thoughts and sentiments on the evil and wicked traffic of the slavery and commerce of the human species*, London, 1787. facs. 1969

many other U.K. & U.S. eds; Fr. trans. 1788.

Cugoano was a Fante who had been enslaved, then liberated after being brought to England.

1787-1813

HOARE, Prince

*Memoirs of Granville Sharp Esq. composed from... authentic documents in the possession of his family and of the African Institution...*, London, 1820; 2nd ed. 1828.

This contains letters written from Sierra Leone to the pioneer abolitionist.

c.1787-1800

JACKSON, James Grey

- (1) *An account of the Empire of Marocco... to which is added an accurate and interesting account of Timbuctoo...*, London, 1809; later, enlarged, eds 1811, 1814. facs. 1968 (2)
- (2) *An account of Timbuctoo and Housa, territories in the interior of Africa, by El Hage Abd Salaam Shabeeny... to which is added letters descriptive of trade through West and South Barbary*, London, 1820. facs. 1967

Jackson spent some years as British consul in Morocco. In (1) the Timbuctu material occupies Ch.13; it may have been derived from Shabayni, whose account, resulting from his interrogation in 1790 by Beaufoy and Lucas on behalf of the African Association (cf. 1790 AFRICAN ASSOCIATION), occupies pp. 1-54 of (2). On Shabayni (or Shabeni or Shabini), see the contribution by Ivor WILKS & Phyllis FERGUSON in Christopher ALLEN & R.W.JOHNSON, *African Perspectives* (Cambridge, 1970). Most of the correspondence in (2) is with James Willis, who in 1795-96 was expecting to go to Senegambia as British consul.

1787-90

PELLETAN, Jean-Gabriel

*Mémoire sur la colonie française du Sénégal, avec quelques considérations historiques et politiques sur la traite des nègres...*, Paris, An IX/1801.

Pelletan's management of the Senegal Company in Africa was terminated by the French Revolution; he was still in prison when he wrote his book - criticised by 1826 WALKENAER for its lack of accuracy.

1787-88

WADSTROM, Carl Bernhard

- (1) *Observations on the slave trade and a description of some part of the coast of Guinea during a voyage made in 1787 and 1788... with Dr A. Sparrman and Capt. Arrhenius*, London, 1789.  
Ger. trans. Hamburg, 1790; Fr. trans. 1790, for which see 1772 NORRIS (2).
- (2) *Plan for a free community at Sierra Leona*, London, 1789 & 1792.
- (3) *An essay on colonization... particularly applied to the western coast of Africa...*, 2 vols, London, 1794-5. facs.1968  
Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1796.

Wadstrom's experience of Africa was limited to his short visit with Anders Sparrman, a naturalist who had earlier travelled in South Africa, and K. A. Arrhenius, a geologist, to Goree and Cape Verde in 1787-88 on an abortive mission, supported by the King of Sweden, prospecting for a colony of settlement. Sparrman thought of returning across the Sahara, but was dissuaded by 1785 BRISSON. Wadstrom then settled in London, where he helped found a Swedenborgian church and busied himself with the anti-slave trade campaign and the affairs of the Sierra Leone Co. August NORDENSKIÖLD (d.1792) may have been the author or part-author of (2), which was first published anonymously, and Dr William DICKSON claimed authorship of (3). See also 1771 SMEATHMAN, 1772 NORRIS and 1776 NORDENSKIÖLD.

(1788)

HOLLINGSWORTH, S.

*A dissertation on the manners, governments and spirit of Africa, to which is added observations on the present applications to Parliament for abolishing Negro slavery in the British West Indies...*, Edinburgh, 1788. [cont.]

Ger. trans. 1789.

Hollingsworth is credited with another book (London, 1786; Fr. trans. 1787); the subject of this was Nova Scotia, which suggests a connection with the founders of the Colony of Sierra Leone.

(1788)

STANFIELD, James Field

*Observations on a Guinea voyage in a series of letters addressed to the Rev. Thomas Clarkson*, London, 1788.

Stanfield's ship went to Benin. Clarkson, of course, was collecting evidence on the slave trade (see 1787 CLARKSON). Stanfield also wrote *The Guinea voyage, a poem* (London, 1789).

(1789)

FROSSARD, Benjamin-Sigismond

*La cause des esclaves nègres et des habitants de la Guinée...*, 2 vols, Lyon, 1789.

A substantial abolitionist tract; Vol.1 makes use of many published sources descriptive of West Africa and the export slave trade.

1789-92

JOHNSTON, Capt. John

*The journal of an African slaver, 1789-1792*, with introduction by George A. PLIMPTON, Worcester, Mass., 1930.

This is not a diary (as it is described by Plimpton) but the accounts, reproduced in facsimile, of slaves bought and sold and of the trade goods given in exchange in one or more voyages to the Gold and Slave Coasts.

(1789-1850)

SLAVE TRADE

During 1789-1850, the United Kingdom Parliament printed many papers on the Atlantic slave trade containing evidence from western Africa including:

Session 1789: xxiv, 626-34; xv, 635-45; xxvi, 646, 646a

Session 1790: xxix, 698-9

Session 1790-1: xxxiv, 745-8

Session 1847-8: xxii, 272, 366, 536, 623

Session 1849: xix, 308, 410

Session 1850: ix, 53, 590

In all these cases, direct evidence was collected and reported on the conduct of the slave trade in the African coastlands. In the papers published in the 1850 session, for example, this evidence included reports on visits to Dahomey by 1834 CRUICKSHANK and 1847 WINNIETT. In the Irish Universities Press facsimile reprint of nineteenth century U.K. parliamentary papers, the papers on the slave trade are gathered together in 95 volumes. Concentrations of western African material may be found in Vols 1-9, 90 and 91. See *Catalogue of British Parliamentary Papers, 1801-1900* (Dublin, 1977).

1789-1807

COLLECTION: ALQUIER, P.

'St Louis du Sénégal pendant la Révolution et l'Empire', *BCEHSAOF*, 5 (1922)  
277-320, 411-63. This prints many documents.

(1790-1810)

AFRICAN ASSOCIATION, The

*Proceedings of the Association for Promoting the Discovery of the Interior Parts of Africa*, London, 1790-1810.

Volumes were published in 1790, 1792, 1793, 1797, 1798, 1802, 1804, 1805, & 1810. In 1810 there was a 2 vol. reprint of the whole series (facs. 1967). See Robin HALLETT, *Records of the African Association, 1788-1831*, London, 1964, especially Appendix D.

1790-1808

CROW, Capt. Hugh

*Memoirs of the late Captain Hugh Crow of Liverpool, comprising a narrative of his life together with descriptive sketches of the western coast of Africa, particularly of Bonny...*, London & Liverpool, 1830. facs. 1970

D.C.SIMMONS, *Grant's sketch of Calabar* (American Association for African Research, Calabar, 1958, 1962) reprints pp.270-86 of Crow's *Memoirs* with some annotation.

Crow was one of the last legal British slave-traders (as also was Grant).

c.1790

ALVARES de ANDRADE, Bernadino António

*Planta da praça de Bissau e suas adjacentes...*, ed Damião PERES, Lisbon, 1952.

See also António Alberto de ANDRADE, 'Bernadino Alvares de Andrade, um "guineense" esquecido...', *BCGP*, 25 (1970) 177-215.

1790-91

RICHARDSON, William

*A mariner of England... The career of William Richardson from cabin boy... to warrant officer... as told by himself*, ed. Col. Spencer CHILDERS, London, 1908.

This includes an account of a voyage to the Gold Coast and Bonny.

1791-94

FALCONBRIDGE, Mrs Anna Maria

*Narrative of two voyages to the River Sierra Leone during the years 1791-2-3...*, London, 1794; 2nd ed. 1802. facs. 1967

The author was the widow of 1785 FALCONBRIDGE (who died in 1794); she subsequently became Mrs Isaac DUBOIS.

1791

GOURG, Le Sieur

'Mémoire pour servir d'instructions au directeur qui me succédera au comptoir de Juda', *Mémorial de l'Artillerie de Marine* (Ministère de la Marine et des Colonies, Paris), 1892.

1791-98

RAIMONDO da DICOMANO, *Fr*

Carlo TOSO, '*L'informazione sul Regno del Congo*' di Raimondo da Dicomano, Rome, 1977.

Louis JADIN, 'Relations sur le Royaume du Congo du Père Raimondo da Dicomano, missionnaire de 1791 à 1798', *Bull. Séances ARSC*, 3, 2 (1957) 307-37.

António BRÁSIO, 'Informação do Reino do Congo de Frei Raimondo da Dicomano', *Studia*, 34 (1972) 19-42.

1791

COLLECTION: ESAGUY, Ernesto d'

*A abertura da Escola Medica...de Luanda, 1791 (Documentos)*, Lisbon, 1951.

(1791-99)

VOYAGES: EHRMANN, Theophil Friedrich

*Geschichte der merkwürdigsten Reisen...*, 22 vols, Frankfurt, 1791-99.

1792

BEAVER, Capt. Philip

*African memoranda relative to an attempt to establish a British settlement on the island of Bolama... in the year 1792, with a brief notice of the neighbouring tribes...*, London, 1805. facs. 1968

Cf. 1792 MONTEFIORE; and see William Henry SMYTH, *Life and services of Capt. Philip Beaver* (London, 1829).

1792-93

HORNE, Rev. Melvill

*Letters on missions, addressed to the Protestant ministers of the British churches*, Bristol, 1794. Horne had been chaplain in Sierra Leone.

1792

MONTEFIORE, Joshua

*An authentic account of the late expedition to Bulam on the coast of Africa; with a description of... Sierra Leone and the adjacent country*, London, 1794. See also 1792 BEAVER.

1792-96

WINTERBOTTOM, Dr Thomas Masterman

- (1) *An account of the native Africans in the neighbourhood of Sierra Leone; to which is added an account of the present state of medicine among them*, 2 vols, London, 1803. facs. 1969  
Ger. trans. *Nachrichten von der Sierra-Leone-Küste...*, 1 vol. Weimar, 1805.
- (2) *Medical directions for the use of navigators and settlers in hot climates*. 2nd ed., enlarged, London, 1803. [cont.]

*An Account* is a substantial work of ethnography and of medical research; the first ed. of *Medical directions* was a small book intended to be used on vessels without surgeons that called at Sierra Leone, where Winterbottom was the first medical officer.

1792-1800

COLLECTION: FYFE

'Our children free and happy': *Letters from Black Settlers in Africa in the 1790s*', ed. Christopher FYFE, Edinburgh, 1991.

The letters were written from Freetown, and mainly to Governor John Clarkson, especially after he had returned to England in December 1792.

1793-94

CHISHOLM, Dr Colin

*An essay on the malignant pestilential fever introduced into the West Indian Islands from Boullam, on the coast of Guinea, as it appeared in 1793 and 1794*, London, 1795.

On 'Bulam fever' (i.e. Yellow Fever), see also 1815 PYM and 1847 BRYSON, and the discussion in Philip D. CURTIN, *The Image of Africa* (Madison, 1964), pp.182 et seq.

1793-98

MACAULAY, Zachary

*A letter to H.R.H. the Duke of Gloucester*, London, 1815.

Zachary Macaulay was one of the pioneers of the Colony of Sierra Leone and during 1796-98 its Governor. He subsequently ran a company in London trading with the colony. Margaret Jean HOLLAND, Viscountess Knutsford, *Life and letters of Zachary Macaulay* (London, 1900) prints some useful material.

1793

OLIVEIRA MENDES, Luis António de

*Memória a respeito dos escravos e tráfico de escravatura entre a costa d' Africa e o Brasil*, Lisbon, 1812.

Modern ed. by José CAPELA, Porto, 1977.

(1793)

PRÉLONG, L.

'Mémoire sur les îles de Gorée et du Sénégal', *Annales de Chimie et de Physique*, 18 (1793) 241-303.

(1793)

RENNELL, Major James

*Elucidations of the African geography from the communications of Major Houghton and Mr Magra*, London, 1793.

Following his great Bengal Survey, Rennell retired to Britain and became an academic geographer, active in publishing 'elucidations' of what was reported by European explorers of Africa. This particular  
[cont.]

example is important because neither Houghton nor Magra published his own information. Houghton was commissioned by the African Association to try and reach the Niger from the Gambia and died in 1791 en route to Timbuktu; some of his letters were printed in the Association's *Proceedings* for 1792 and 1797 (see 1792 AFRICAN ASSOCIATION). Perkins Magra, an informant for the Association, was British consul at Tunis. There are French translations of some of Rennell's 'elucidations', including this one.

1793-1808

SIERRA LEONE COMPANY, The

*Substance of the Report of the Directors of the Sierra Leone Company to the General Court...*, London, 1794. This was also issued as:

An account of the Colony of Sierra Leone from its first establishment in 1793..., London, 1795.

Subsequent *Reports* were published until 1808, when the Colony was brought under the Colonial Office.

1794-95

PADENHEIM, D. W.

*Bref til en vän i Sverige, innehallande historisk och geographisk beskrifning öfver Colonien i Sierra Leone i Afrika...*, Stockholm, 1801.

Padenheim, an engineer and builder, was one of the Swedes employed by the Sierra Leone Company.

1795-96

AFZELIUS, Adam

*Sierra Leone journal*, ed. Alexander Peter KUP, *Studia Ethnographica Upsaliensia*, 27, Uppsala, 1967.

The notable Swedish botanist Afzelius worked in Sierra Leone for the Sierra Leone Company in 1792-93 and 1794-96. His journal touches on many matters other than botany, and includes an account of a journey to the Rio Nunez. During 1804-18, he published from Uppsala four works on the botany of Guinea and the herbal remedies of its inhabitants.

1795

HAWKINS, Joseph

*A history of a voyage to the coast of Africa and travels into the interior of that country... published for the benefit of the author, who had become blind*, Philadelphia, 1797; 2nd & 3rd eds, Troy, 1797.

facs. London, 1970

Hawkins claimed to have visited the Rio Pongas - Rio Nunez coast on an American slaver in 1795. This may have been so, but J.D.FAGE has argued (*HA*, 18 (1991) 83-91) that there is reason to doubt his account of a journey into the interior which occupies 130 of his 180 pages. What Hawkins says about the societies and lands of 'Ebo' and 'Galla' peoples does not square with the known ethnography or geography, and is apparently at least influenced by the account in 1668 DAPPER of the Kquoja kingdom some 250 miles down the coast. Cf. 1807 DRAKE.

1795-97

PARK, Mungo

*Travels in the interior districts of Africa in the years 1795, 1796 and 1797.*  
London, 1799. facs. New York, 1971

Many later eds, some with variant titles; one in 1815 includes 'an account of a subsequent mission...in 1805' and 'an account of the life of Mr Park' (cf. 1805 PARK).

Fr. trans. 1800 (facs.1980); Ger. trans. Berlin 1799, Hamburg, 1799.

Park, a Scottish physician, is renowned as the first European to reach the upper Niger. His later attempt to boat down the river to its mouth ended in disaster (see 1805 PARK).

1797

FERREIRA PIRES, Fr Vicente

Clado RIBEIRO de LESSA, *Viagem de Africa em o Reino de Dahomé, escrita pelo Padre Vicente Ferreira Pires no ano de 1800...*, Sao Paulo, 1957.

1797-99

HORNEMANN, Friedrich Conrad

*The journal of Frederick Horneman's travels from Cairo to Mourzouk... in the years 1797-98*, with introduction by Sir William YOUNG and other editorial matter, London, 1802.

Parallel ed. from Hornemann's original German, with same editorial matter, Weimar, 1802; another ed., Berlin & Hamburg, 1803.

Later Ger. ed. by Adolf PAHDE, *Der erster deutsche Afrikaforscher....*, Hamburg, 1895.

Fr. trans. (from Eng.): (1) *Voyage dans l'intérieur... par F.H.*, Paris, 1802; (2) *Voyage de F. Hornemann...*, Paris, 1803.

Modern annotated ed. by E.W.BOVILL, *Missions to the Niger*, I, Hak.Soc. 2nd series 123, London, 1962.

Hornemann's journal was first published in the *Proceedings of the African Association* for 1801 (repr. 1810); the 1802 publication includes 'A memoir containing various informations respecting the interior of Africa, transmitted from Mourzouk in 1799'. The publications were posthumous; after successfully crossing the Sahara on a second expedition, Hornemann died of dysentery in Nupe, probably early in 1801.

(1797)

KONGEN AF DAHOMET

*Kongen af Dahomet, en virkelig Tildragelse strax efter den amerikansk-engelske Krig*, Copenhagen, 1797.

1797-1802

MELLO, Miguel António de

'Angola no começo do século XIX' and 'Angola no fim do século XVIII', *BSGP*, 5 (1885) 548-64, & 6 (1886) 284-304.

Informative reports and other documents from Mello's governorship.



1798-1800

BRUNTON, Rev. Henry

*A grammar and vocabulary of the Susoo language, to which are added the names of some Susoo towns..., a small catalogue of Arabic books, and a list of names of some of the learned men of the Mandingo and Foulah countries...,* Edinburgh, 1802.

Brunton was sent to the Rio Pongas by the Edinburgh Missionary Society and then served as chaplain in Freetown.

(1798)

GEMÄHLDE ALLER NATIONEN

*Gemählde aller Nationen, 3: Afrikaner*, Frankfurt & Leipzig, 1798.

Adam JONES (*HA*, 13, 1986) says that this contains 'nine plates of Africans (Whydah, Kongo) and a short text, both apparently derivative'.

1798-1811

MEREDITH, Henry

*An account of the Gold Coast of Africa, with a brief history of the African Company*, London, 1812. facs. 1967

Meredith's service with the African Company culminated in his governorship of the fort at Winneba (where he was killed in the year of publication of his book).

(1799)

DALZEL, Archibald, &amp; NORRIS, Robert

*New sailing directions for the coast of Africa...*, London, 1799, 1804.

This work is a compilation: Dalzel heads the list of persons who supplied information and Norris is the second; the others are merchant or Royal Navy captains. Cf. 1763 DALZEL and 1772 NORRIS.

(1799)

LABARTHE, Pierre

*Annales maritimes et coloniales*, Paris, An 7/1799.

This contains a section 'Des relations de voyages en Asie, en Afrique et en Amérique qui n'ont jamais parues'. For a note on the author, see 1784 LABARTHE.

(1799 onwards)

LEYDEN, John *et al.*, & MURRAY, Hugh *et al.*

LEYDEN: *Historical and philosophical sketch of the discoveries and settlements of the Europeans in North and West Africa*, Edinburgh, 1799.

Fr. trans., 2 vols, 1804.

*Historical account of discoveries and travels in Africa... enlarged by Hugh Murray*, 2 vols, Edinburgh, 1817.

Fr. trans., 4 vols, 1821.

MURRAY: *Narrative of discovery and adventure in Africa from the earliest ages*, 6th ed. Edinburgh, 1845.

[cont.]

*The African continent: a narrative of discovery and adventure*, Edinburgh, 1853.

The above are examples of what is essentially the one, continuously evolving, work of compilation, begun by Leyden and continued by Murray, which became a classic and passed through many editions and guises.

(1799)

COLLECTION: AZEVEDO, José Pinto

*Ensaio sobre algumas enfermidades d'Angola*, Lisbon, 1799.

c.1800-05

ABU BAKR al-SIDDIQ, of Timbuktu

'The African travels of Abu Bakr al-Siddiq', ed. Ivor WILKS, in 1701

COLLECTION: CURTIN, pp.152-69; also 1701 COLLECTION: AUSTIN, pp.525-83.

The works cited give details of earlier publications.

1800-17

BICKERSTETH, Rev. Edward

*Memoir of Simeon Wilhelm, a native of the Susoo country in West Africa*.  
London, 1818.

Bickersteth went out to Sierra Leone in 1816 to inspect the C.M.S. mission there, and brought back Simeon Wilhelm with him to England to be trained as a missionary. The latter soon died, aged only 17.

(1800)

DAMBERGER, Christian Frederic

*Travels through the interior of Africa from the Cape of Good Hope to Morocco*.

'Damberger' was the invention of Zacharias TAURINIUS, a Wittenberg printer. His fraudulent compilation, drawing from many genuine works of travel, was very popular; there were a number of printings in German, French and English during 1800-01. See, for example, Robin HALLETT, *The penetration of Africa* (London, 1965), Vol.1, p.251.

c.1800

MACQUEEN (or M'QUEEN), James

*A geographical and commercial view of northern central Africa, containing a particular account of the course and termination of the great river Niger in the Atlantic Ocean*, Edinburgh, 1821.

When in charge of a West Indian plantation and inspired by his reading of 1796 PARK, MacQueen sought to establish the interior geography of West Africa by questioning slaves and slave-dealers, and thus concluded that the termination of the R.Niger could only be in the Oil Rivers. Following his return to Britain, he established himself as an authority on African geography, crowning his work with *Geographic Survey of Africa* (1840; facs. 1969). See 1808 MACAULAY and cf. 1793 RENNELL.

1800-03

THONNING, Peter

F.C.SCHUMACHER, *Beskrivelse af Guineske planter*, Copenhagen, 1827.

Schumacher's book is based on the surviving collections of Thonning, who was active at Christiansborg and in its immediate hinterland in 1800-03. But the bulk of Thonning's specimens and his descriptions of the environment were lost in the British bombardment of Copenhagen in 1807.

1800-21

COLLECTION: MOUSER, Bruce L.

*Guinea journals: journeys into Guinea-Conakry during the Sierra Leone phase, 1800-21*, Washington D.C., 1979.

See notice in *JAH*, 21 (1980) 133.

# 1801 - 1826

1801-02

LABARTHE, Pierre

*Mémoire pour servir de réponse à celui du Colonel Laserre, ex-Commandant en Chef du Sénégal, contenant quelques détails sur la situation intérieure*, Paris, 1805.

Laserre, the Governor of Senegal in 1801-02, tried to create a monopoly of the Senegal river gum trade, but he was seized by a group of St. Louis merchants and removed to Goree. For a note on the author of this *Mémoire*, see 1784 LABARTHE. See also 1801 LADURANTIE and 1801 LASERRE. Extracts from all three documents are printed in Léonce JORE, *Les établissements français sur la côte occidentale d'Afrique de 1758 à 1809*, Paris, 1965.

1801-02

LADURANTIE & DURÉCU, merchants of Bordeaux

*Réponse des SS Ladurantie et Durécu, negocians de Bordeaux, à l'écrit calomnieux publié sous le nom de Mémoire pour le Colonel Laserre, ex-Commandant du Sénégal*, Paris, 1805.

See also 1801 LABARTHE and 1801 LASERRE.

1801-02

LASERRE, Col. Louis-Henri-Pierre

*Mémoire pour le Colonel Laserre, ex-Commandant au Sénégal, deporté par suite de l'insurrection qui a éclaté dans la Colonie pendant la nuit du 4 au 5 Thermidor an X...*, Paris, 1805.

See also 1801 LABARTHE and 1801 LADURANTIE.

c. 1801-18

ROBERTSON, George A.

*Notes on Africa, particularly those parts which are situated between Cape Verde and the River Congo...*, London, 1819; 2nd ed. 1820.

Ger. trans. of Robinson's section on the Fanti, *Ethnographisches Archiv*, 10 (1820) 142-92.

1826 Walkenaer

Contemporaries regarded Robertson as a mine of information - mainly, but not exclusively, about commercial matters - on the coasts from Sierra Leone to the Congo on which he had been trading since the beginning of the century. 1820 DUPUIS appointed him acting consul to Asante upon his own departure from the Gold Coast. His book appears to be rather rare.

(1801 onwards)

SIERRA LEONE

From 1801 onwards, the United Kingdom Parliament printed a number of papers dealing with the affairs of the Sierra Leone colony, some of which contain first-hand evidence.

[cont.]

The following Reports of Select Committees etc may be particularly noted for the information on Sierra Leone which they contain:

Session 1801-2: ii, 100,

Session 1806-7: ii, 55,

Session 1820: xii, 90,

Session 1826-7: vii, 312, 552,

Session 1830: x, 66.

In the Irish Universities Press facsimile reprint of 19th century Parliamentary Papers, the papers relating specifically to Sierra Leone are to be found in the series 'Colonies: Africa' in Vols.1 and 52-55. See *Catalogue of British Parliamentary Papers 1801-1900*, Dublin, 1977.

From 1846 onwards, there are also *Annual Reports* from the Governors of the Colony.

#### 1802-04

BONNÉ, C. H.

*Søreiser paa Europas kyster og kysten af Guinea*. Thisted, 1833.

Bonné visited West Africa as a member of the crew of a slaveship.

#### 1802-16

MARRÉE, Johannes Adam de

*Reizen op en beschrijving van de Goudkust van Guinea*, 2 vols, The Hague and Amsterdam, 1817-18.

Marrée served twice in the Dutch administration on the Gold Coast, as Secretary and Fiscal in 1802-04 and then as General Secretary and Linguist in 1810-16; his account of the country merits comparison with 1688 BOSMAN. In 1822 he was appointed Commissioner in the Mixed Court at Sierra Leone (cf. 1822 FIGANIÈRE).

#### 1802-28

WALKER, Rev. Samuel Abraham

*Missions in western Africa among the Soosoos, Bulloms etc...*, Dublin, 1845.

Walker set out to write a history of the Church Missionary Society but completed only two volumes (for the second, see 1804 WALKER). He made lavish use of original material.

#### 1802-65

COLLECTION: BENNETT, Norman R., & BROOKS, George E.

*New England merchants in Africa: a history through documents, 1802 to 1865*, Boston, 1965.

Much of this collection relates to East Africa, but there is also some useful material for western Africa.

#### 1803

M'LEOD (or McLEOD), John, Surgeon, R.N.

*A voyage to Africa, with some account of the manners and customs of the Dahomian people*, London, 1820.

facs. 1971

Fr. trans. 1821; Dutch trans. 1822.

[cont.]

Contemporary bibliographies and catalogues also credit M'Leod as author of *Journal of a short captivity in Dahomy*, also dated 1820 and from the same publisher. But it would seem likely that this was an advance title for the book here listed.

(1804/05)

CANNECATTIM, Bernardo Maria de

- (1) *Diccionario da lingua Bunda ou Angolense, explicada na lingua Portuguesa e Latina*, Lisbon, 1804.
- (2) *Collecção de observações grammaticaes sobre a lingua Bunda ou Angolense e diccionario da lingua Congueza*, Lisbon, 1805; 2nd ed. 1854.

(1804)

LEDYARD, John, & LUCAS, Simon

*Voyages de MM. Ledyard et Lucas en Afrique... suivis d'extraits de voyages faits à la rivière de Gambie...*, Paris, 1804.

A translation of parts of the *Proceedings of the African Association*, 1790-1802 (see 1790 AFRICAN ASSOCIATION), followed by substantial extracts translated from 1730 MOORE. Ledyard died in Cairo in 1788 on his way to West Africa. In the following year, Lucas did not get much further than Tripoli, though he did obtain useful information about the Fezzan and about Bornu.

1804-35

MISSIONARY RECORDS

*Missionary Records: West Africa*, London, n.d. (?1836).

This was produced by the Religious Tract Society and includes extensive verbatim reports.

1804

POSTEL, Athanase

Alphonse LEFEBVRE, 'Notice sur l'Ile de Gorée et sa reprise par les Français en 1804', *Bull. Union Géog. du Nord de France*, 10 (1889).

1804-41

WALKER, Rev. Samuel Abraham

*The Church of England Mission in Sierra Leone...*, London, 1847.

Walker's second volume; cf. 1802 WALKER.

1805-06

CORRY, Joseph

*Observations upon the Windward Coast of Africa, the religion, character, customs etc. of the Natives...*, London, 1807. facs. 1968

Corry deals principally with Sierra Leone, Goree and the Rio Pongo (or Pongas); he argues for the development of 'legitimate trade'.

1805-09

MONRAD, Rev. Hans Christian

*Bidrag til en skildring af Guinea-kysten og dens Indbyggere...*, Copenhagen, 1822.

Ger. trans. Weimar, 1824.

1826 Walckenaer.

Monrad served as chaplain in the Danish settlements on the Gold Coast.

1805

NICHOLLS, Henry

'Letters from Old Calabar', *Proceedings of the African Association*, London, 1810, Vol.2, 187-203, 406-14. The two longer letters are also in Robin HALLETT, *Records of the African Association...*, London, 1964, pp. 197-210.  
See 1790 AFRICAN ASSOCIATION

1805

PARK, Mungo

*The journal of a mission to the interior of Africa... to which is prefixed an account of the life of Mr Park*, London, 1815; 2nd ed. revised & corrected, with additions, also 1815; many other eds.

The *Life* is by E. WISHAW of the African Institution. The narrative of Park's Mandingo guide, ISAACO, is included with the documents that are printed in the book.

Fr. trans. *Second voyage de Mungo Park... avec des additions tirées de la narration de Robert Adams en Afrique en 1810*, Paris, 1820.

Ger. trans. *Zweite Reise im Innern von Afrika...*, Sondershausen, 1821.

See also 1795 PARK, 1810 ADAMS.

1805

SPILSBURY, Francis B., Surgeon, R.N.

*Account of the voyage to the western coast of Africa by H.M.Sloop Favourite in the year 1805*, London, 1807.

Goree and Sierra Leone; good illustrations.

1806-10

BAPTISTA, Pedro Joam, &amp; JOSE, Amaro

'Journey of the pombeiros P.J.Baptista and A.José across Africa', in R.F.BURTON (ed. & trans.), *The Lands of Cazembe*, London, 1873.

The two *pombeiros* began their journey in Angola, but little is said about it in this account. The original Portuguese text was published in various issues of *Annaes Maritimos e Coloniaes* (Lisbon) for 1843.

1806-14

NYLÄNDER, Rev. Gustavus R.

(1) *Grammar and vocabulary of the Bulom language*, London, 1814.

(2) *A spelling book of the Bulom language*, London, 1814.

[cont.]

Nyländer was the first missionary linguist to work with the Church Missionary Society in Sierra Leone, where he served between 1806 and 1824. P.E.H.HAIR has published a bibliography of the writings of Nyländer and other early missionary linguists in Sierra Leone (*Sierra Leone Studies*, 19 (1966) 146-50).

(1807-24)

AFRICAN INSTITUTION, The

*Reports of the Committee [Directors] of the African Institution*, London, 1807-24.

After 1824 the series continues as: *The Anti-Slavery [Monthly] Reporter*.

1807-57

DRAKE, Capt. Richard

*Revelations of a slave smuggler, being the autobiography of Captain Richard Drake, an African trader for fifty years - from 1807 to 1857...*, with a preface by his executor, Rev. Henry Byrd West of the Protestant Home Mission, New York, 1860. facs. Northbrook, Ill., 1972

T.C.McCASKIE argues, in *HA*, 11 (1984), that Drake's account of a visit to Asante in 1839 is certainly spurious, but accepts that he may well have visited the West African coasts. Cf. 1795 HAWKINS.

1807-1957

COLLECTION: METCALFE, George Edgar

*Great Britain and Ghana: documents of Ghana history, 1807-1957*, Legon & London, 1964.

c.1808-18

ALI EISAMI GAZIRMAE, of Bornu

'Narrative of the travels of Ali Eisami', printed in Kanuri and in Eng. trans. in S.W.KOELLE, *African Native Literature*, London, 1854, pp.115-21 & 248-56. Modern annotated ed. of Eng. trans. by H.F.C.SMITH, D.M.LAST & GAMBA GUBIO in Philip D. CURTIN, *Africa remembered* (Madison, 1967), pp.199-216.

Ali Eisami was a Kanuri of Bornu born c.1787. He was captured and enslaved by Fulani c.1818 and sold by Hausa traders to Old Oyo. In 1817 he was sold from Porto Novo into the Atlantic slave trade, but his ship was intercepted by the Royal Navy and he was liberated in Sierra Leone, where he became known as William Harding.

1808-26

MACAULAY, Kenneth

*The Colony of Sierra Leone vindicated from the misrepresentations of Mr Macqueen of Glasgow*, London, 1827. facs. 1968

After a short and chequered period of government service, Kenneth Macaulay, a cousin of 1793 MACAULAY, became a prominent Freetown merchant. For a note on Macqueen, see 1800 MACQUEEN.



1808-10 &amp; 1817-27

*The SIERRA LEONE ROYAL GAZETTE*

This officially sponsored periodical is known to have been produced at Freetown for the years given.

(1808-14)

VOYAGES: PINKERTON, John

*A general collection of the best and most interesting voyages and travels in all parts of the world*, 17 vols, London, 1808-14.

Vols. 15 & 16 deal with Africa and include, for example, 1666 DIONIGI CARLI, 1682 GIROLAMO MEROLLA, 1688 BOSMAN, 1749 ADANSON, and 1766 PROYART.

1810-13

ADAMS, Robert

*Narrative of Robert Adams... who was wrecked on the western coast of Africa in the year 1810. was detained three years in slavery by the Arabs of the Great Desert, and resided several months in the city of Tombuctoo*, ed. Simon COCK, London, 1816; New York, 1817.

Fr. trans. 1817, 1820 (see 1805 PARK); Dutch trans. 1818, 1826.

Doubts have always existed about the authenticity of Adams's *Narrative*, and especially about the part that relates to Timbuktu. Cock explains in his Introduction how Adams was interrogated by members of the African Association, and he prints a letter from Joseph DUPUIS (see 1820), who had met Adams in 1813 when he was consul at Mogador, and who believed his story to be genuine. See also the Concluding Remarks to the volume at p.196. Dupuis's evidence appears to have been decisive, and it was he who contributed many of the notes to the *Narrative* and also Appendix II. On the question of authenticity, see e.g. *The Quarterly Review*, 14 (1816) 453-73, and 16 (1817) 309-13, and the hostile conclusions of E. JOMBARD in the 'Remarques et recherches géographiques' appended to 1824 CAILLIE, Vol.3, 164-67. Also cf. 1815 RILEY.

c. 1810-20

AVEZAC-MACAYA, Marie-Armand-Pascal d'

'Notice sur le pays et le peuple des Yébous en Afrique', *Mém. Soc. Ethnol.* (Paris), 2, 2, 1845.

Modern ed. in Eng. trans., annotated, by P. C. LLOYD in Philip D. CURTIN, *Africa remembered*, Madison, 1967, pp.217-88; this omits the original's 90-page appendix, 'Esquisse grammaticale de la langue Yébous'.

Avezac-Maya was Vice-President of the Société Ethnologique in Paris. His information about the Ijebu came from questioning a slave, OSIFEKUNDE, who had been brought to Paris by his Brazilian master. For other work on Africa by Avezac, see 1837, 1844 & 1845.

1810-11

CUFFEE, Capt. Paul

*Memoir of Captain Paul Cuffee, a man of color*, various eds: London, York, Liverpool, Dublin etc from c.1811.

In 1810-11 and 1816-17, Cuffee, an Afro-American Quaker, sought to develop businesses in Sierra Leone to support Afro-American settlers. In early editions, the *Memoir* may follow *The History of Prince Lee Boo*. A text was edited by 1848 ARMISTEAD (London, 1840).

1810

GRANT, John

*An account of some recent transactions in the Colony of Sierra Leone*. London, 1810.

Christopher FYFE (*A history of Sierra Leone*, London, 1962, p.111) says that this book is almost entirely taken up with Grant's own affairs.

1810

SAMPSON, Capt. Abel

*Voyages and travels of Capt. Abel Sampson in Europe, Asia and Africa... related by himself; written by Edmund Hale Kendall*, Boston, 1852.

This includes a slaving voyage to Loango. There is an earlier publication with the same pagination, *The wonderful adventures of Abel Sampson* (Lawrence City, Mass. 1847).

c. 1810

SWAN, Capt. Samuel

'Memorandum on the African trade', appendix to George R. BROOKS Jr., *Yankee traders, old coasters, and African middlemen*, Boston, 1970.

An informative document of 30 pages.

1811-13

THORPE, Robert

Robert Thorpe was dismissed from the office of Chief Justice of Sierra Leone in 1813. Thereafter he became an energetic pamphleteer, responsible for the following (all London):

- (1) *A letter to William Wilberforce*, 1815 and other eds.
- (2) *A reply... to the Special Report of the Directors of the African Institution*, 1815.
- (3) *Postscript to the reply*, 1815.
- (4) *A view of the present increase of the slave trade*, 1818.
- (5) *A commentary of the Treaties...*, 1819.

(1811-24)

VOYAGES: KERR, Robert, F.R.S.E.

*General history and collection of voyages and travels...*, 18 vols, Edinburgh & London, 1811-24.

There is little African material in this collection outside Vol.7.

(1814)

DESCRIPTION NAUTIQUE

*Description nautique de la côte de l'Afrique depuis Cap Blanc jusqu'à Cap Formose*, Imprimerie Royale, Paris, 1814.

Cf. 1828 DESCRIPTION DE LA CÔTE.

1814

SALDANHA da GAMA, António de

*Memórias sobre as colónias de Portugal situadas na costa ocidental d'Africa ... em 1814*, Paris, 1839.

1815-17

DAENDELS, Herman Willem

*Journal and correspondence of H.W.Daendels, Governor-General of the Netherlands settlements on the coast of Guinea*, Legon, 1964.

Eng. trans. from the transcripts made by J.T.FURLEY from the General State Archives at The Hague and now in the Balme Library of the University of Ghana, Legon.

1815-20

DAVIES, Rev. William

(1) *Extracts from the Journal of the Rev. William Davies*, Llanidloes, 1835.

(2) What would seem to be the complete diary was published in Welsh from Abertawe (Swansea) in 1829.

Davies was a Methodist missionary in Sierra Leone.

1815-46

FERGUSON, Dr William

*A letter to Thomas Fowell Buxton Esq.*, London, 1839.

Ferguson was an Edinburgh-trained West Indian surgeon active in Sierra Leone from 1815 until his death in 1846, and governor of the colony in 1844-46. Much of his letter is also in T.F.BUXTON, *The African slave trade and the remedy* (London, 1840), pp.367-84.

(1815)

IJZENDOORN, P. van

*De Goudkust*, The Hague, 1815.

(1815)

LABARTHE, Pierre

*Harmonies maritimes, contenant un précis des établissements français en Amérique, en Afrique et en Asie*, Paris, 1815.

See 1784 LABARTHE for a note on the author.

(1815)

PYM, Sir William

*Observations on the Bulam Fever...*, London, 1815.

In 1848 there was a second and enlarged ed. of Pym's book which also contained 'A review of a Report... by Sir William Burnett and Dr Bryson...' (Cf. 1847 BRYSON). On 'Bulam Fever', see 1793 CHISHOLM and the reference there cited. Pym became the army's Superintendent of Quarantine.

1815 RILEY, James

*An authentic account of the loss of the American brig Commerce... with an account of Tombuctoo etc.* Hartford, 1817; New York, 1817; London, 1817; & many later eds.

Fr. trans. with additional material, 2 vols, 1818.

Modern ed., G.H.EVANS, *Sufferings in Africa; Capt. Riley's narrative*, New York, 1968.

Unlike 1810 ADAMS, Riley was a person of education and substance. He was both master and supercargo of the *Commerce*, a member of the New York Historical Society and, for a time, a member of the Ohio State Legislature. He did not himself claim to have been to Timbuktu, but his book includes - among other collected material - a narrative of a trans-Saharan journey to and from that city by one SIDI HAMET, who was his master during his enslavement. See also 1815 ROBBINS and - for Sidi Hamet - 1819 COCHELET.

1815 ROBBINS, Archibald

*A journal comprising an account of the brig Commerce of Hartford... [wrecked] upon the western coast of Africa, August 28th 1815; also of the slavery and suffering of the author and the rest of the crew.* Hartford, 1817; Rochester, N.Y. 1818; New York, 1819; & many later eds.  
Cf. 1815 RILEY.

1816 DARD, Charlotte-Adélaïde

*La chaumière africaine. ou histoire d'une famille française jetée sur la côte occidentale de l'Afrique à la suite du naufrage de la Méduse*, Dijon, 1824.  
Eng. trans.: *History of the sufferings and misfortunes of the Picard family after the shipwreck of the Medusa in the year 1816*, trans. P. MAXWELL and printed in Constable's Miscellany, Vol.11, *Perils and Captivity*, London, 1827; A. W. LAWRENCE ed. an abridged version as *The wreck of the Medusa*, London, 1931.

See also 1816 SAVIGNY and 1818 MOLLIEN. The wreck of the *Méduse* became a celebrated subject in French art and literature. Charlotte-Adélaïde Dard (née Picard) became the wife of the Jean DARD of the next entry.

1816-25/26 DARD, Jean

- (1) *Dictionnaire Français-Wolof et Français-Bambara*, Paris, 1826.
- (2) *Grammaire Wolofe...*, Paris, 1826.

Jean Dard was the first schoolteacher at St Louis, going out in 1816 with the French re-occupation. See also 1816 DARD, C.-A.

1816-20 HUTTON, William

*A voyage to Africa, including a narrative of an embassy to one of the interior kingdoms*, London, 1821. [cont.]

Fr. trans. 1823. 2nd ed. 1832.

Hutton accompanied 1820 DUPUIS on the British mission to Asante in 1820 and, after Dupuis had left, stayed on in Kumasi for some months as 'acting consul'.

1816-17

HUYDECOPER, Willem

*Huydecoper's diary: journey from Elmina to Kumasi. 28th April 1816 to 18th May 1817*, trans. G. W. IRWIN, Legon, 1962.

1816-23

JOHNSON, Rev. William Augustine Bernard

*A memoir of the Rev. W.A.B. Johnson, missionary of the Church Missionary Society in Regent's Town, Sierra Leone*, with a preface by Rev. William Jowett, M.A., London, 1832.

There is also a popular short account based on the above: Marie Louise CHARLESWORTH, *Africa's mountain valley, or the Church in Regent's Town, West Africa*, (London, 1856).

1816-18

LEE, Mrs Sarah

*Stories of strange lands and fragments from the notes of a traveller*, London, 1835.

Sarah Lee (*née* Wallis) was the widow of 1817 BOWDICH, who died in 1824. She went out to join him on the Gold Coast in 1816 and she returned with him to England via Gabon in 1818. This book contains annotated stories of Gold Coast Africans and accounts of her voyages to and from the Gold Coast and of a short excursion she made while she was there. She later made use of her experience in two adventure stories (see 1847 LEE and 1856 LEE). She also contributed to 1823 BOWDICH.

1816-21

LEE, William

'Narrative of two expeditions into the interior of Africa...', in Charles HULBERT, *African Fragments*...., Shrewsbury, 1826.

While serving in the army as a sergeant-major, Lee was a member of the abortive mission to the Niger led by Major Peddie in 1816-17 and of the somewhat more successful one led by 1818 GRAY. (See also 1826 HULBERT).

1816-18

REIJNHOUT (or REYNHOUT), Dr Martinus Johannes

- (1) *Beschrijving van de Natuur der Koorts, welke de Aankomelingen uit Europa aan de Kust van Afrika aantast*...., Amsterdam, 1819.
- (2) *Redevoering... over den natuurkundigen, zedelijken en verstandelijken toestand der Goudkust en hare Bewoners*, Amsterdam, 1824.

Reijnhout was doctor and botanist on the Gold Coast under 1815 DAENDELS. The first work is a treatise on the fevers which attack new arrivals in Africa from Europe; the second is an address on the physical, moral and intellectual condition of the Gold Coast and its inhabitants.

1816-27

RICHARD, Claude

'Catalogue des plantes cultivées au Sénégal dans le jardin du gouvernement à Richard-Roc'. *Annales Maritimes et Coloniales* (1828/1) 2nd pt, 435-56.

During 1816-27 Richard managed the government garden in Senegal where exotic plants were tried out; his catalogue is dated 26 July 1827 and lists more than 600 plants. An earlier list (1824) of 544 species was published by Théodore Monod in *BIFAN* 13 B (1951) 1281-98. Richard-Roc was later called Richard-Toll.

1816

SAVIGNY, Jean-Baptiste-Henri, & CORRÉARD, Alexandre

*Naufrage de la frégate la Méduse, faisant partie de l'expédition au Sénégal en 1816*. Paris, 1817. facs. 1979

2nd ed. 'augmentée des notes de M. Brétif, Ingénieur des Mines'. Paris, 1818.

Eng. trans. of 2nd ed., *Narrative of a voyage to Senegal in 1816*... London, 1818. facs. 1968

Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1818.

See also 1816 DARD, C.- A. (and the reference there to A.W.LAWRENCE, *The wreck of the Medusa*), and 1818 MOLLIER.

1816

TUCKEY, James Kingston, Capt. R.N.

*Narrative to explore the River Zaire... in 1816... to which is added the journal of Professor Smith; some general observations of the country and its inhabitants*. London, 1818. facs. 1967

This official British exploration of the lower Congo did not penetrate beyond the rapids above Matadi and many of its members, including Tuckey, died from fever. Chetien SMITH was a Norwegian botanist trained at the University of Copenhagen. His journal was published in Danish from Christiana (Oslo) in 1819. The Br. Lib. indicates out that Tuckey's second Christian name was really Hingston, not Kingston.

(1816)

WEST AFRICAN COMMITTEE

*West Africa: Report from the Select Committee on the settlements and forts*,

London, Parl. Pap. 1816 iv 470 & vii 506; 1817 vi 431; facs. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 1.

1817-18

BOWDICH, Thomas Edward

*Mission from Cape Coast Castle to Ashantee, with a statistical account of that kingdom and geographical notices of other parts of the interior of Africa*. London, 1819. facs. 1966

This includes the diary of William HUTCHISON, who in September 1817 remained in Kumasi as the British representative when the mission departed, and stayed there until February 1818. It also includes 'A sketch of Gaboon', which Bowdich (and his wife) visited on the voyage back to Britain.

[ cont. ]

Fr. trans. 1819; Ger. trans. 1819, 1820, & 1826; Dutch trans. 1820.  
Another ed. of the English text, London, 1873. This has an introductory memoir by Bowdich's daughter, Mrs Hale, but omits Hutchison's diary and most of the appendices.

This first in-depth study of Asante also contains some information on neighbouring territories. Bowdich was a young writer in the African Company's service when he went on the mission to Asante in 1817, and he succeeded to its leadership in Kumasi in July of that year. He subsequently made himself more widely an authority on Africa (see 1821 and 1823 BOWDICH) and died in the Gambia at the early age of 32. His widow subsequently made some use of his knowledge and experience (see 1816 LEE, Sarah; also 1847 and 1856).

c. 1817-55

CARRÈRE, Frédéric, &amp; HOLLE, Paul

*De la Sénégambie française*, Paris, 1855.

Carrère was in the French judiciary in Senegal; Holle, a mulatto *évolué*, held administrative and military appointments on the frontier with the Tukolor empire. Their book is a critique of French policy in Senegal since c.1817. See Robert JULY, *The origins of modern African thought* (London, 1968), pp.167-76. Carrère was a contributor to *Revue Coloniale*; other writings by him will be found in the *Guide* under the dates 1854 and 1857.

1817-18

ROUSSIN, Albin-Reine, Baron

*Mémoire sur la navigation aux côtes occidentales d'Afrique depuis le Cap Bojador jusqu'au Mont Souzos*, Paris, 1819.

Eng. trans. 1827.

1826 Walckenaer

Following the wreck of the *Méduse* (see 1816 DARD, 1816 SAVIGNY), Roussin, a naval officer of some distinction, was employed in a hydrographic survey of the West African coast.

1817-c. 1845

SA'ID, al-Hajj

C. E. J. WHITTING (trans.), *History of Sokoto*, Kano, 1949.

*Al-Hajj* Sa'id was a Koran reader for the last of the three Sultans whose reigns are here chronicled; a French translation of his chronicle may be found in Houdas's 1750 TEDZKIRET. On this chronicle and its translations, see Murray LAST, *The Sokoto Caliphate* (London, 1967), pp.xxxix-xlii.

c. 1817-21

WARGEE of Astrakhan

Wargee was a Tatar who crossed the Sahara and travelled through Hausaland, northern Yorubaland, Timbuktu, Kong, Dagomba and Asante to the Gold Coast. The account of his travels was first pub. in the *Royal Gold Coast Gazette*, 31.12.1822 & 7.1.1823. It was subsequently pub. elsewhere, e.g. 1826 HULBERT.

Modern ed., annotated, by Ivor WILKS, in Philip D. CURTIN, *Africa remembered*. Madison, 1967, pp.170-89.

1818-21 GRAY, Major William, & DOCHARD, Staff-Surgeon

*Travels in western Africa in the years 1818, 19, 20 and 21 from the River Gambia... to the River Niger*, London, 1825.

Fr. trans. 1826

Although after many vicissitudes this large expedition did reach the upper Niger, it produced little new information. Cf. 1816 LEE, William, 1818 MOLLIEN and 1819 CAILLIE.

1818-20 LYON, George Francis, Capt. R.N.

*A narrative of travels in northern Africa... in the years 1818, 19 & 20, accompanied by geographical notices of the Soudan and of the course of the Niger...*, London, 1821. facs. 1966

Fr. trans. 1822.

Lyon spent some months in the Fezzan. The greater part of the substantial information about the western Sudan and the Niger which he collected there is in his Chapter 3.

1818 MILLS, Rev. Samuel J.

Gardiner SRING, D.D., *Memoirs of the Rev. Samuel J. Mills, late missionary...*, New York & London, 1820; later eds from Boston & New York.

Mills undertook a missionary reconnaissance of Sierra Leone and Sherbro in 1818; Dr Spring was a prolific writer on Christian affairs.

1818 MOLLIEN, Gaspard-Théodore

*Voyage dans l'intérieur de l'Afrique aux sources du Sénégal et de la Gambie, fait en 1818...*, 2 vols, Paris, 1820; 2nd ed. 1822.

Eng. ed. by T.E.BOWDICH, London, 1820; facs. 1967.

Ger. trans. Weimar, 1820; Berlin, 1820.

Ital. trans. in *Raccolta de' Viaggi*, 40 & 41, Milan, 1820.

1819 Phillips, 1826 Walckenaer

Modern eds: (1) *Découverte des sources du Sénégal et de la Gambie en 1818, précédée d'un récit... du naufrage de la Méduse*, Paris, 1889.

(2) *L'Afrique occidentale en 1818...*, abridged, but with useful annotation by Hubert DESCHAMPS, Paris, 1967.

Mollien, a lone traveller, wrote one of the classic accounts of 19th century European travel in West Africa.

1818-19 MORENAS, Joseph-Elzéar

(1) *Pétition contre la traite des noirs qui se fait au Sénégal*, Paris, 1820.

(2) *Seconde pétition...*, Paris, 1821.

(3) *Précis historique de la traite des noirs et de l'esclavage colonial*, Paris, 1828.

(4) G. DEBIEN, 'J.-E. Morenas à Saint-Louis...', *BIFAN*, 30 (1968) 691-726.

[cont.]



Morenas went to the Senegal, when the official policy was to turn it into an agricultural colony, as 'an agricultural botanist or gardiner'. Debien's piece is an edition of the letters Morenas sent home, for the most part to his sister.

1819-28

CAILLIÉ, René (and see comment)

*Journal d'un voyage à Temboctou et à Jenné, ... précédé d'observations faites chez les Maures Braknas, les Nalous et d'autres peuples... Avec une carte ... et des remarques géographiques par M. Jomard, Membre de l'Institut,*  
3 vols, Paris, 1830. facs. 1965

another ed., in 2 vols, Brussels, 1830; many later eds.

Eng. trans. *Travels through central Africa to Timbuctoo...* 2 vols, London, 1830. facs. 1968

Prior to his great solo journey in 1827-28 from the Rio Nunez to Jenne and Timbuktu and then across the Sahara to Tafilalt and Morocco, Caillié had spent some time with Major Gray's expedition (see 1818 GRAY) and in 1824-25 he had lived for a period among the Brakna Moors. These early adventures occupy the first 250 pp. of Vol.1 of the original French ed., while the last 250 pp. of Vol.3 are occupied by Jomard's commentary, and the vocabularies collected by Caillié etc. In some reference works, the spelling 'Caillé' may be found.

1819

COCHELET, Charles

*Naufrage du brick français La Sophie, perdu le 30 mai 1819 sur la côte occidentale d'Afrique, et captivité d'une partie des naufragés dans le desert de Sahara; avec des nouveaux renseignements sur la ville de Timectou...* Paris, 1821.

Eng. trans. 1822; 1819 Phillips.

The captives came into the hands of the same Sidy (or Sidi) Hamet that had possessed 1815 RILEY. They were ultimately ransomed by the English consul at Mogador.

1819-39

MONSERAT, Le Sieur

Boubacar BARRY, 'Un mémoire inédit de Monserat sur l'histoire du nord du Sénégal de 1819 à 1839', *BIFAN*, B, 32, 1 (1970) 1-43.

Monserat was a French official in Senegal who served as the commandant of the post at Richard-Toll in Wallo.

(1819-23)

VOYAGES: PHILLIPS, Sir Richard

*New voyages and travels...* 11 vols, London, 1819-23.

The major western African item is 1818 MOLLIEN in Vol.3.

1820-21

BACON, Rev. Samuel, & Rev. Ephraim

- (1) Jehudi ASHMUN, *Memoir of... the Rev. Samuel Bacon, principal agent of the American government for persons liberated on the coast of Africa, where he terminated his life in... May 1820*, Washington, D.C., 1822.
- (2) *Abstract of a journal of E. Bacon, assistant agent of the United States to Africa*, Philadelphia, 1821; later eds 1822 & 1824 (twice).

Samuel and Ephraim Bacon were brothers who both served as U.S. government agents in the first attempts to settle black Americans in Africa, Ephraim being appointed after Samuel's death. See also 1821 ASHMUN and 1820 COKER.

(1820)

BOWDICH, Thomas Edward

*A reply to the Quarterly Review*, Paris, 1820.

The reply is to 'The mission from Cape Coast Castle to Ashantee' in the issue for January 1820. This was critical both of Bowdich's book (1817 BOWDICH) and of the administration on the Gold Coast of the African Company in which he had served. See also 1820 DUPUIS.

1820

COKER, Rev. Daniel

*Journal of Daniel Coker... on a voyage to Sherbro... in company with three agents and about ninety persons of color*, Baltimore, 1820.

Coker was an African-American pastor who was a member of the first party of black settlers sent out by the American Colonization Society; see also 1820 BACON and 1821 ASHMUN.

c.1820-50

CONNEAU, Théophilus (*nom de plume* : CANOT, Theodore)

*Captain Canot, or twenty years of an African slaver...*, Written out and edited from the Captain's journals, memoranda and conversations by Brantz Mayer, New York, 1854.

Eng. ed. *Revelations of a slave trader*, London, 1855.

Fr. trans. (1) *Vingt ans de la vie d'un négrier*, 2 vols, Paris, n.d. (1855).

(2) *Les aventures d'un négrier*, Paris, 1931.

Modern eds:

(1) Malcolm COWLEY, *Adventures of an African slaver*, New York, 1928;  
Dutch trans. 1929.

(2) A. W. LAWRENCE (abridged), *Memoirs of a slave trader by Theodore Canot*, London, 1929.

Publication of Conneau's original MS memorandum:

Theophilus CONNEAU, *A slaver's log book, or twenty years' residence in Africa*, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1976.

There is a considerable literature on Conneau and his career and on Brantz Mayer's transformation of his original reminiscences into the 'Captain Canot' book. There is a handy listing of this literature in fn.3 of an article by Adam JONES in *HA*, 8 (1981).

1820

DUPUIS, Joseph

*Journal of a residence in Ashantee... comprising notes and researches relative to the Gold Coast and the interior of western Africa, chiefly collected from Arabic MSS...*, London, 1824. facs. 1966

In the treaty which 1817 BOWDICH had secured from the Asantehene, the latter had agreed to receive a British consul. The British government, which was already being urged to take over responsibility for British affairs on the Gold Coast from the African Company, decided to send out its own envoy. Its choice was Joseph Dupuis, who had developed an interest in the trans-Saharan trade with West Africa from his experience in Morocco (see e.g. 1810 ADAMS). Dupuis tried hard to outdo Bowdich, not least in the production of a major book. See also 1816 HUTTON.

1820-21

FIGANIERE e MORÃO, Joaquim Cesar

*Descrição de Serra Leôa e seus contornos...*, Lisbon, 1822.

Figaniere was the Portuguese nominee on the Court of Mixed Commission that was set up at Freetown to adjudicate on slaveships captured by the Royal Navy which were not British.

c. 1820-45

MAHOMMAH BARDU BAQUAQUA

Samuel [Downing] MOORE, *Biography of Mahommah G. Baquaqua, a native of Zougou in the interior of Africa, with a description of that part of the world*, Detroit, 1854.

Modern ed. with additional material in 1701 COLLECTION: AUSTIN, pp.585-654.

'Zougou' is Djougou in the modern Republic of Bénin.

1821-25

ASHMUN, Rev. Jehudi

(1) *History of the American colony of Liberia... 1821 to 1823*, Washington, D.C., 1826.

(2) *The territory of Liberia according to a survey completed in 1825*, Washington, D.C., 1826.

(3) Ralph Randolph GURLEY, *Life of Jehudi Ashmun... with... extracts from his journal and other writings...*, Washington, D.C., 1835; 2nd ed. New York, 1839.

Ashmun, a white American, was the first effective governor of Liberia. He was also the author of the *Memoir* of Rev. Samuel Bacon, the first U.S. government agent for the settlement in Africa of free persons of colour (see 1820 BACON and 1820 COKER), and of a short farmer's guide for Liberian settlers (Philadelphia, 1825).

1821-26

BOTELER, Thomas, Capt. R.N.

*Narrative of a voyage of discovery to Africa and Arabia performed by H.M.S. Leven and Barracouta from 1821 to 1826 under the command of Capt. W.F. Owen, R.N.*, 2 vols, London, 1835.

[cont.]

An account of the first comprehensive modern survey of the whole of the Indian Ocean and Atlantic coasts of Africa. Another was provided by Owen himself; see 1821 OWEN. Only the latter part of Boteler's second volume deals with western Africa. Boteler was also responsible for an eight page booklet of sailing directions:

*The west coast of Africa from the Isles de Los to Sierra Leone*, London, 1830.

(1821-24)

BOWDICH, Thomas Edward

- (1) *An essay on the geography of North-West Africa*, Paris, 1821.
- (2) *An essay on the superstitions, customs and arts common to the ancient Egyptians, Abyssinians and Ashantees*, Paris, 1821.
- (3) *The British and French expeditions to Teembo, with remarks on civilization in Africa*, Paris, 1821.
- (4) *An account of the discoveries of the Portuguese in the interior of Angola and Mozambique*, London, 1824.

See note to 1817 BOWDICH. To gain training in geology and natural history etc, Bowdich spent the years 1820-22 in Paris, studying with such well known men of science as Baron Cuvier, Alexander von Humboldt and Baron Denon and meeting with 1818 MOLLIEN, and in 1822 he spent some time in Lisbon before proceeding to the Gambia (see 1823 BOWDICH).

1821-22

CROWTHER, Bp Samuel Adjai

'Letter of Mr Samuel Crowther to the... Secretary of the Church Missionary Society detailing the circumstances connected with his being sold as a slave', first pub. in *Church Missionary Record*, 8 (1837) 217-23, and then as an appendix to 1841 SCHÖN & CROWTHER.  
Modern ed., annotated, by J.F.Ade AJAYI in Philip D. CURTIN, *Africa remembered* (Madison, 1967), pp. 289-316.

The future bishop's recollections of his two years' slavery as a young man in his native Yorubaland. (Cf. *Adjai, ou le jeune esclave africain; récit authentique destiné à la jeunesse* (Toulouse, 1837).) Crowther's subsequent remarkable career is summarised in Professor Ajayi's introduction - and see entries in the *Guide* at 1841, 1854, 1857, 1862 and 1871 (which last notices his linguistic publications).

(1821)

McLACHLAN, Peter

*Travels into the Baga and Soosoo countries*, Freetown, 1821.

Christopher FYFE (*A history of Sierra Leone*, London, 1962, p.145) records this as the first book published at Freetown; the author was a surgeon on the medical staff there.

1821-25

MORGAN, Rev. John

*Reminiscences of the founding of a Christian Mission on the Gambia*, London, 1864. Morgan had been a Wesleyan missionary.

1821-26

OWEN, William FitzWilliam, *Capt. R.N.*

*Narrative of voyages to explore the shores of Africa, Arabia and Madagascar, performed in H.M. Ships Leven and Barracouta*, 2 vols, London, 1833; 2 vols, New York, 1833.

Only the last part concerns western Africa. See note to 1821 BOTELER. 1827 HOLMAN and 1830 LEONARD also touch on Owen's activities in western African waters.

1821-24

ROGER, Jacques-François, *Baron*

- (1) *Fables sénégalaises recueillies de l'Ouolof...avec des notes destinées à faire connaître la Sénégambie...et les mœurs des habitants*, Paris, 1828.
- (2) *Kélédor; histoire africaine*, Paris, 1828; 2nd ed. 1829.
- (3) *Recherches philosophiques sur la langue Ouolof, suivies d'un vocabulaire*, Paris, 1829.

Roger, by training a lawyer, was Governor of Senegal in 1821-24. His novel *Kélédor* is based on his ethnographic and historical research to the extent that Philip D. CURTIN has written that 'some of the dialogue... [is] lifted straight from Wolof oral tradition' (*Africa remembered*, Madison, 1967, p.6). Some of Roger's researches were published in *BSGP*.

1821

SINGLETON, William

*Report of the Committee... managing a fund for the purpose of promoting African instruction; with an account of a visit to the Gold Coast and Sierra Leone*, London, 1822.

Singleton was the visitor.

(1821)

SHOBERL, Frederic

*The world in miniature: Africa, containing a description of the manners and customs, with some historical particulars, of the Moors of the Zahara and of the Negro nations*, 4 vols, London, 1821.

These exquisitely produced and illustrated 32mo volumes form part of a series which ultimately had 43 volumes. Shoberl was a prolific writer and editor employed by Ackermann. In this instance he did little more than adapt, or arrange for the adaptation of, 1785 GEOFFROY de VILLENEUVE.

(1821)

SOME REMARKABLE PARTICULARS

*Some remarkable particulars concerning the rapid civilization of the Negroes in the Colony of Sierra Leone*, Retford, 1821.

(1822)

BOLD, Edward, *Lt. R.N.*

*The merchants' and mariners' African guide, containing an accurate description of the coasts, bays, harbours and adjacent islands of West Africa... to which is added a minute explanation of the various systems of traffic adopted on the Windward and Gold Coasts...*, London, 1822.

An invaluable source for early 19th century coastal trade.

1822-24

DENHAM, Major Dixon; CLAPPERTON, Hugh, *Cdr. R.N.*;  
& OUDNEY, Dr Walter

*Narrative of travels and discoveries in northern and central Africa in the years 1822, 1823 and 1824...*, 1st ed. in 1 vol., London, 1826; 2nd. ed.

in 2 vols, London, also 1826; later Eng. eds 1828, 1831.

2 vols, Boston & Philadelphia, 1826.

Fr. trans. 3 vols, Paris, 1826.

Ger. trans. Jena, 1826; Weimar, 1827.

Modern ed. by E.W. BOVILL, *Missions to the Niger*, Vols 2-4, Hak.Soc. 2nd ser., 126, 129, 130, London, 1965-66.

Bovill provides substantial supporting documentation for this major exploration of the central Sudan. See also 1825 CLAPPERTON.

1822-26

LAING, Major Alexander Gordon

*Travels in the Timanee, Kooranko and Soolima countries in western Africa*,  
London, 1825.

Fr. trans. 1826.

1826 Walckenaer; 1833 Montémont

Laing was serving as an army officer in Sierra Leone when he went on this mission. In 1826 he was killed near Timbuktu after having crossed the Sahara from Tripoli. The surviving material relating to this second expedition is printed in:

E.W. BOVILL, *Missions to the Niger*, Vol.1, Hak.Soc. 2nd ser. 123, London, 1962.

Théodore MONOD, *De Tripoli à Tombouctou: le dernier voyage de Laing, 1825-26* (Paris, 1977) usefully supplements, and provides some corrections to, the work by Bovill.

c.1822-23

PIERCE, Capt. J. Thursfield

'A sketch of Whydah, customs of the Gold Coast, and other articles,' in  
Charles HULBERT, *African fragments...*, Shrewsbury, 1826.

See 1826 HULBERT.

1822-29

RICKETTS, Major Henry John

*Narrative of the Ashantee War, with a view of the present state of the Colony of Sierra Leone*, London, 1831.

[cont.]

Ricketts was a regular army officer who served as chief of staff to Governor Macarthy and to subsequent British governors and commandants in West Africa, and who was himself in charge of British affairs on the Gold Coast for twelve months in 1826-27.

(1822-24)

ROYAL GOLD COAST GAZETTE, *The*

*The Royal Gold Coast Gazette and Commercial Intelligencer, Cape Coast, 1822-24.*

This short-lived officially sponsored periodical includes some interesting pieces; for example, 1817 WARGEE.

(1822)

STORMONT, Charles, M.D.

*Essai sur la topographie médicale de la côte occidentale d'Afrique, et particulièrement sur celle de la Colonie de Sierra Leone, Paris, 1822.*

This is one of a substantial number of medical theses bearing on West Africa that were presented to the Universities of Paris (indicated by P.) or Montpellier (M.) in the 19th century; it is unusual only in that it refers to a British sphere. Others include:

MARTEL, F.A.M., *Considérations sur le climat de nos établissements d'Afrique, et sur les fièvres qui y règnent*, M. 1828;

TAYEAU, D., *Topographie médicale... de Gorée*, M. 1828;

BAX, J.B., *Considérations hygiéniques et médicales sur la colonie du Sénégal*, P. 1830;

BANCAL, E.P., *Les fièvres de Sénégal*, M. 1834;

HERVÉ, - , *Topographie médicale du Sénégal*, P. 1845;

MARTINEAU, J.B., *Topographie médicale et maladies de la côte occidentale d'Afrique*, M. 1849;

FONSSAGRIVES, J., *Histoire médicale de la frégate... L'Eldorado... côtes occidentales d'Afrique*, P. 1852 (see also 1850 FONSSAGRIVES);

CASTEL, F., *Essai d'un guide sanitaire de l'Européen au Sénégal*, M. 1850;

SIMONOT, F.P., *Dysenterie observée au Sénégal*, M. 1850

PIPY, F., *Coliques sèches... le brick L'Entrepreneur*, M. 1858;

BÉAL, B.A., *Quelques considérations sur les maladies... observées au Sénégal*, P. 1862;

MAHÉ, J.H., *Étude sur les maladies endémiques au Sénégal et à la côte occidentale d'Afrique*, M. 1865.

See the appendix 'Sciences médicales et vétérinaires' in E. JOUCLA, *Bibliographie de l'Afrique Occidentale Française* (Paris, 1937). See also the *Guide* entries 1782 DOUÉ and 1855 RICARD.

1823-24

BOWDICH, Thomas Edward

*Excursions in Madeira and Porto Santo during the autumn of 1823...; to which is added, by Mrs Bowdich, I. A narrative of the continuance of the voyage to its completion..., the subsequent occurrences from Mr Bowdich's arrival in Africa to... his death; II. A description of the English settlements on the River Gambia*, London, 1825.  
Fr. trans. 1826.

See also 1817 and 1821 BOWDICH; also 1816 LEE, Sarah, 1847 LEE and 1856 LEE.

1824-25

FORSBERG, A. C.

*Røst fra Kysten Guinea, eller beretning om den i Aaret 1822 dertil sendte expedition under Major von Richelieu...*, Copenhagen, 1827.

Forsberg set out for the Gold Coast, to take a Danish official post, in the company of the newly appointed Governor Richelieu. But they got no further than England, where they quarrelled; Forsberg did not get to the Gold Coast until later.

1824-25

GROUT de BEAUFORT, *Ensign*

'Expédition dans l'intérieur de l'Afrique par la voie du Sénégal', *Journal des Voyages*, 24 (1824).

See also Claude FAURE, 'Le voyage d'exploration de Grout de Beaufort au Sénégal en 1824 et 1825', *BSGP*, (1919) 146-201.

Beaufort died at Bakel in September 1825.

1824-32

KILHAM, Mrs Hannah

- (1) *Report on a recent visit to the Colony of Sierra Leone*, London, 1828.
- (2) *Present state of the Colony of Sierra Leone...; extracts from a recent letter from Mrs Hannah Kilham*, Lindfield, 1832.
- (3) *Memoir of the late Hannah Kilham, chiefly compiled from her journal, and edited by her daughter-in-law, Sarah Biller, of St. Petersburg*, London, 1837.

The Quaker educationalist visited Sierra Leone in 1824 and 1827, and she resided there in 1830-32. In 1827 she published *African school texts*, and in 1830 *The claims of West Africa to Christian instruction through the native languages*. See Mora DICKSON, *The powerful bond: Hannah Kilham, 1774-1832* (London, 1980).

(1824)

WEST AFRICAN SKETCHES

*West African sketches, compiled from the reports of Sir G.R. Collier, Sir Charles MacCarthy and other official sources*, London, 1824.

Commodore Sir George Collier was in command of the West African squadron of the Royal Navy during 1818-21; Sir Charles MacCarthy was Governor of the Colony of Sierra Leone from 1814 until his death on the Gold Coast in battle against the Asante in 1824.

1825-28

CLAPPERTON, Hugh, *Capt. R.N.*, & LANDER, Richard Lemon

*Journal of a second expedition into the interior of Africa from the Bight of Benin to Soccatoo... to which is added the journal of Richard Lander from Kano to the sea...*, London & Philadelphia, 1829. facs. London, 1966

Fr. trans. 2 vols, 1829.

Ger. trans. Jena, 1829; Weimar, 1830.

Dutch trans. 2 vols, Rotterdam, 1830-31

Sp. trans. N.F. CUESTA, *Nuevo Viajero Universal*, Madrid, 1859, Vol. 1.

[ cont. ]



For Clapperton's first expedition, see 1822 DENHAM. Clapperton died at Sokoto in April 1827 and his journal was brought back by his servant and companion, Richard Lander. Lander was subsequently solely responsible for a more finished account:

*Records of Captain Clapperton's last expedition to Africa... with the subsequent adventures of the author*, 2 vols, London, 1830.

facs. 1967

1825-30

FAWKNER, Capt. James

*Narrative of Captain James Fawcner's travels on the coast of Benin... edited by a friend of the Captain*, London, 1837.

Published by subscription to raise funds for Fawcner, who had become penniless.

1825-31

PERROTTET, G. - Samuel

*Florae Senegambiae tentamen, seu historia plantarum in diversis Senegambiae regionibus a peregrinatoribus Perrottet et Leprieur detectorum, auctoribus J.- A. Guillemain, S. Perrottet et A. Richard*, Paris, 1830-33.

After a round the world botanical collecting expedition, Perrottet was in 1825 commissioned to undertake the botanical exploration of Senegambia and was active there until 1831. Among the places he visited were Podor, Cape Verde, Goree, Albreda and Casamance. He published accounts of his Senegambian travels in:

*Nouvelles Annales des Voyages*, 57, 28-89; 58, 170-216; 59, 137-86; 60, 5-54. A collection of these articles was apparently republished in Paris in 1933.

See also *Annales Maritimes*, 1831, where may be found Perrottet's criticism of L.- B. HAUTEFEUILLE, *Plan de colonisation des possessions françaises dans l'Afrique occidentale*.

1825-37

RABAN, Rev. John

*A vocabulary of the Eyo, or Aku, a dialect of western Africa*, 3 vols, London, 1830-32.

The second and third parts of this work are also titled *The Eyo Vocabulary*. Raban was a CMS missionary in Sierra Leone, where he worked among the Aku, Liberated Africans of Yoruba origin.

c. 1825

WRIGHT, Joseph

'The life of Joseph Wright, a native of Ackoo', first pub. as pp. 349-58 of John BEECHAM, *Ashantee and the Gold Coast*, London, 1841.

Modern ed., annotated, by Philip D. CURTIN, *Africa remembered*, Madison, 1967, pp. 317-33.

'Ackoo' would today be rendered *Aku*, i.e. 'Yoruba'.

# 1826 - 1850

(1826)

HULBERT, Charles

*African fragments, comprising Mr Wm. Lee's narrative of two expeditions into the interior of Africa; the travels of a Tartar to Timbuctoo; a sketch of Whydah, customs of the Gold Coast and other articles by Capt. Pierce of Cape Coast. Africa, Shrewsbury, 1826.*

This miscellany of original material was an appendix to Hulbert's *Museum Africanum* (London, ?1825), which itself was part of a four volume work, *The Select Museum of the World* (?Shrewsbury, 1822-25). Hulbert (1778-1857) was a printer and antiquarian of Shrewsbury, which was also the home of William Lee, who had been sergeant-major on the Niger expeditions led by Majors Peddie and Gray (see 1818 GRAY). Capt. J. Thursfield Pierce had also served in the army in West Africa and was responsible for collecting the 'Tartar' piece from *The Royal Gold Coast Gazette* (see 1817 WARGEE). Hulbert was also responsible for *The African Traveller* (Shrewsbury, 1817), which is an account of the travels of Bruce, Park, Robert Adams etc. See also 1816 LEE, William, and 1822 PIERCE.

(1826)

[ LA FEUILLADE d'AUBUSSON ]

*Mémoire sur les moyens d'exploitation par le Sénégal des mines d'or de Bambouc...*, Paris, 1826. This memoir was published anonymously.

1826-27

LE PRÉDOUR, Fortuné-Joseph-Hyacinthe, *Admiral*

- (1) *Résumé des opérations des hydrographes faites sur la côte occidentale d'Afrique dans les années 1826 et 1827...*, Paris, 1828.
- (2) *Description de la côte occidentale d'Afrique depuis le cap Naze jusqu'au cap Roxo*, Paris, 1828.

1826

ASA-ASA

*The history of Mary Prince, a West Indian slave, related by herself... to which is added the narrative of Asa-Asa, a captured African*, ed. Thomas PRINGLE, London & Edinburgh, 1831. Asa-Asa, a Kru, was captured and enslaved in 1826.

(1826-31)

VOYAGES: WALCKENAER, Charles-Athanase, *Baron*

*Histoire générale des voyages, ou nouvelle collection des relations de voyages ... Pt. 1, Voyages en Afrique*, 21 vols, Paris, 1826-31.  
Reissued as: *Collection des relations de voyages... en différentes parties de l'Afrique depuis 1400*, Paris, 1842.

This collection was one of the last of the great collections of voyages and travels - certainly so far as concerns Africa, publication ceasing after the African volumes had appeared. These are remarkably comprehensive, but it must be appreciated that virtually all the accounts of voyages and travels are in the form of summaries which concentrate on narrative and give little space to descriptive material.

1827-28

HOLMAN, James

*Travels in Madeira, Sierra Leone, Teneriffe, St. Jago, Cape Coast, Fernando Po, Princes' Island etc.* London, 1840.

This is a reprint of Vol.1 of Holman's *Voyage round the world* (4 vols, 1834). Once a R.N. lieutenant, Holman had become blind. After earlier travels in Europe, he began his world journey by taking passage on the R.N. vessel that was taking Capt. W.F.Owen (1821 OWEN) to command the British establishment at Fernando Po. Holman's account, ed. D.C.SIMMONS, of his visit to Old Calabar in 1828 has been published by the American Association for African Research (Calabar, 1959). Another contemporary account by a blind man of his world travels is Jacques ARAGO, *Souvenirs d'un aveugle: voyage autour du monde 1839-40* (Paris, 1852 etc), but Arago had already engaged in world travel while still sighted - see *Promenade autour du monde...* (Paris, 1822 etc).

1827-28

LIND, Lt Henrik Gerhard

'Undersøgelser, foretagne op ad Floden Volta i 1827 og 1828', *Archiv for Søvaesenet*, 6, (1834).

Lind was in command of a naval expedition up the R. Volta; he was subsequently (1828-31, 1833) governor of the Danish possessions on the Gold Coast.

(1828)

AFRIQUE: NOTICE SUR LE SÉNÉGAL

'Afrique: notice sur le Sénégal, la colonie française, ses dépendances, les pays et les peuples environnants', *Journal des Voyages*, 27 (1828) 5-27.

(1828)

DESCRIPTION DE LA CÔTE

*Description de la côte occidentale d'Afrique depuis le Cap Naze jusqu'au Cap Roxo*, Imprimerie Royale, Paris, 1828.

Cf. 1814 DESCRIPTION NAUTIQUE.

1828-30

DOUVILLE, Jean-Baptiste

(1) *Voyage au Congo et dans l'intérieur de l'Afrique équinoxiale, fait dans les années 1828, 1829 et 1830*, 3 vols, Paris, 1832.

(2) *Atlas du voyage au Congo et dans l'intérieur*, Paris, 1832.

The authenticity of Douville's account was immediately challenged by, among others, 1841 COOLEY (*Foreign Quarterly Review*, August 1832) and by Th. LACORDAIRE (*Revue des Deux Mondes*, November, 1832). Cooley, with some reservations, was prepared to accept Douville's account of his first 12 months of travel, but argued impressively that his account of later travels to as far as the Mwata Yamvo's capital had been made up from the reports of pombeiros and slave-traders. Lacordaire stated that Douville was in business in Buenos Aires during at least some of the time he claimed to have been in Africa. Douville defended himself in publications of 1822 and 1823. Modern assessments of Douville may be found in CEA, 10 (1970) by A. STAMM and 13 (1973) by Joseph C. MILLER: the former tends to rehabilitate Douville, the latter remains critical.

1828-31

KISSLING, Rev. Georg Adam

*Ein Missionsleben in Afrika und Neuseeland*, Basel, 1871.

Kissling's African experience was in Liberia.

1828?-31

MARCHAL de LUNÉVILLE, Charles-Léopold-Jean-Baptiste

*Voyage au Sénégal... suivi d'un appendix sur les langues de la Sénégambie par L.-Léon de Roisny*, Paris, 1854.

In 1831 Marchal was dismissed from his judicial post at St Louis for objecting to official interference in the trial of two administrative officials charged with corruption. He subsequently became a writer of works of information for the general public.

(1828)

RASK, Professor Rasmus

*Veiledning til Akra-Sproget paa Kysten Guinea, med ed tillæg om Akvambuisk*, Copenhagen, 1828.

Rask was a notable linguistic scholar. He never visited Africa, but his principal informant for his work on the Ga and Akwamu languages was the son of an Osu chief who had been baptised as Frederick Dowunna (Dowuona).

1829-31

[ CHRISTENSEN, Balthazar Mathias ]

Articles published in the journal *Valkyrien* (Copenhagen) in 1831 & 1832:

'Correspondents-efterretninger fra Christiansborg...'

'Breve fra og om Guinea',

'Om slavehandel',

'Nogle bemaerkinger om fremmede kolonier paa Vestkysten af Afrika',

'Om Colonien Princes-Island'.

The articles were published anonymously, but they are generally attributed to Christensen, an assistant to the Danish governor on the Gold Coast, who took sides against him and was sent back to Denmark.

1829-30

[ RAMSAY, Thomas Wharton ]

*Costumes on the western coast of Africa*, by an Officer of the Commissariat, London, 1833.

Six coloured lithographs portraying 'Liberated Africans', 'a Kruman', 'Fulas' (2 plates), 'African minstrels' and 'Jolofs', together with five printed pages of commentary.

1830

HUIISH, Robert

*The travels of Richard and John Lander into the interior of Africa... from unpublished documents in the possession of the late Capt. John William Barber Fullerton...*, London, 1836.

[ cont. ]

Pp. 429-757 deal with the Lander brothers' 1830 journey very much as they do themselves in 1830 LANDER. The first part is taken up with accounts of the explorations of Park, Denham and Clapperton and others. There is also an abridged pocket edition.

1830-37

HUNTLEY, Sir Henry Veel (or Vere) Lt. R.N.

*Seven years' service on the Slave Coast of West Africa*, 2 vols, London, 1850.

Huntley's service with the West African squadron culminated in helping to negotiate the 1837 treaty with Bonny; in 1839-41 he was Lieutenant-Governor of the Gambia.

1830

LANDER, Richard Lemon, &amp; LANDER, John

*Journal of an expedition to explore the course and termination of the Niger...*

3 vols, London, 1832; 3 vols, New York, 1844.

Fr. trans. 3 vols, 1832.

Modern ed., abridged and annotated: Robin HALLETT, *The Niger Journal...*, London, 1965.

Richard Lander and his brother completed the work of 1805 PARK and 1825 CLAPPERTON by travelling overland from Badagry to Bussa and canoeing down the Niger to the sea. See also 1830 HUIH.

1830-32

LEONARD, Peter, Surgeon, R.N.

*Records of a voyage to the western coast of Africa... and of the service on that station for the suppression of the slave trade...*, Edinburgh, 1833.

facs. Nendeln/Liechtenstein, 1973.

U.S. ed: *The western coast of Africa: journal of an officer under Capt. Owen: records of a voyage in the ship Dryad in 1830, 1831 & 1832*, Philadelphia, 1833.

(1831)

BOYLE, James, Surgeon, R.N.

*A practical medico-historical account of the western coast of Africa...*

London, 1831.

This has short descriptions of various parts of the coast and detailed discussions of particular maladies to be found on it. It is most valuable for Sierra Leone (where Boyle was based) and lands adjacent to it, and for the yellow fever epidemic of 1829.

?1831-?34

'CHURCH, Mary'

*Sierra Leone, or the Liberated Africans*, London, 1835.

Christopher FYFE has suggested (*A History of Sierra Leone*, London, 1962, p.264) that 'Mary Church' was the *nom de plume* of Catherine Temple, daughter of Major Octavius Temple, Lt-Governor of the Colony of Sierra Leone, 1831-34.

(1831)

IMMERZEEL, J.

*Proeve over de Kust van Guinea...*, The Hague, 1831.

A polemic arguing that it is the export of slaves that is harmful to Africa and that, following the abolition of the export slave trade, the Dutch should employ slaves as wage labourers on plantations on the Gold Coast. Texts of two 18th cent. letters are included.

(1831)

INNES, William

*Liberia: the early history... of the American colony of Free Negroes... compiled from American documents provided by a gentleman of Virginia*, Edinburgh, 1831; 2nd ed. with additional material, 1833.

Innes was a prolific writer on matters of religion. facs. Freeport, N.Y., 1971

c.1831-50

MOHAMMED ALI BEN SAID

ANON., 'A native of Bornoo', *Atlantic Monthly*, 20 (Oct. 1867) 485-95.  
Modern ed. in 1701 COLLECTION: AUSTIN, pp.655-89.

Little of this bears on Bornu and Hausaland since Mohammed was captured and taken across the Sahara while still a boy; much of it deals with his later life in the Near East, Europe and the Americas.

1831-33

MOISTER, Rev. William

- (1) *Memorials of missionary labours in western Africa and the West Indies...*, London, 1850; New York, 1851; 3rd ed., rev. & enlarged, London, 1866.
- (2) *Africa past and present; a concise history of the country, its... customs and Christian missions*, London, 1878; New York, 1879; also later eds.
- (3) *The story of my life and missionary labours in Europe, Africa, America and the West Indies*, London, 1886.

Moister was on the Gambia in 1831-33 (and later in South Africa). See also 1845 WHARTON.

1832-33

ALLEN, William, Cdr. R.N.

*Picturesque views of the River Niger sketched during Lander's last visit in 1832-33*, London, 1840.

Allen was an accomplished artist who for many years exhibited at the Royal Academy. He was also a Fellow of the Royal Society, a good musician, and retired in the rank of Rear Admiral. He was in no way responsible for the great loss of life experienced on the two Niger expeditions in which he participated. See also 1832 LAIRD and 1841 ALLEN.

(1832)

CAREY, Mathew

*Letters on the Colonization Society... situation of the colonists at Monrovia... soil, climate, production and commerce of Liberia... character of the natives...*, Philadelphia & Hartford, 2nd. ed. enlarged, 1832. [cont.]

Carey's book went through many editions (the 13th in 1838) but no date or place of publication for the first ed. is given by the *National Union Catalog*.

1832-34

LAIRD, Macgregor, &amp; OLDFIELD, R. A. K.

*Narrative of an expedition into the interior of Africa by the River Niger... in 1832-33-34*, 2 vols, London, 1837. facs. 1971

Laird (1808-61) was a pioneer in the use of steamships; this was his first attempt to exploit the demonstration by 1830 LANDER & LANDER that the Oil Rivers were the mouths of the Niger by using steam navigation to develop relations with the interior. Richard Lander was guide to the expedition and one of its casualties. Cf. 1832 ALLEN.

1833

COX, Rev. Melville B.

*Remains of Melville B. Cox, late missionary to Liberia, with a memoir*, Boston, 1835.

1832-42

FOX, Rev. William

(1) *A brief history of the Wesleyan Mission on the western coast of Africa...*, London, 1851.

(2) *The western coast of Africa, comprising suggestions as to the best means of exterminating the slave-trade and some account of the success of the Gospel*, London, 1851.

Fox served as a missionary on the Gambia and also visited Bondu; his *A brief history* contains substantial personal observations.

1833-69

COLLECTION: WILEY, Bell I.

*Slaves no more: letters from Liberia, 1833-1869*, Lexington, 1980.

239 letters from former U.S. slaves settled in Liberia. Cf. 1840 COLLECTION: MILLER.

(1833-47)

VOYAGES: MONTÉMONT, Albert

(1) *Bibliothèque/Histoire universelle des voyages effectués par mer et par terre...*, 46 vols, Paris, 1833-37.

(2) *Voyages nouveaux par mer et par terre effectués ou publiés de 1837 à 1847...*, 5 vols, Paris, 1847.

Montémont's collections of voyages have a number of editions and titles.

1834-52

CRUICKSHANK, Brodie

*Eighteen years on the Gold Coast of Africa, including an account of the native tribes...*, 2 vols, London, 1853. facs. 1966

[cont.]

Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1855

Dutch trans. & ed. by D.P.H. WEYTINGH, Amsterdam, 1855, containing additional information from a Dutch point of view.

Cruikshank served on the Gold Coast both as an official and as a trader.

1834-36 HAY, *Vice-Admiral Sir John Charles Dalrymple, Bt.*

(1) *Ashanti and the Gold Coast and what we know of it; a sketch*, London, 1874 [1873].

(2) *Lines from my logbook*, London, 1898.

As a young officer, Hay had served in the West African squadron of the Royal Navy.

1834-50 HENING, Mrs E. F.

*History of the African Mission of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States, with memoirs of deceased missionaries and notes of native customs*, New York, 1850; another ed., New York, 1853.

The Mission was active at Cape Palmas; the author was a missionary wife.

1834 RANKIN, Francis Harrison

*The white man's grave; a visit to Sierra Leone in 1834*, 2 vols, London, 1836.

Rankin was briefly in the colonial administration. Christopher FYFE (*A history of Sierra Leone*, London, 1962, p.264) says of his book: 'a piece of superior journalism... written primarily to amuse; his statements must sometimes be received with caution'.

1834-53 WILSON, Rev. John Leighton

(1) *The British squadron on the coast of Africa... with notes by Capt. H.D. Trotter, R.N.*, London, 1851.

(2) *Western Africa: its history, condition and prospects*, London and New York, 1856.

Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1862.

Wilson was an American Presbyterian missionary, first in Liberia and then, from 1842, in Gabon, where he became the patron of 1856 DU CHAILLU. The two books listed make use of published sources as well as of his own experience. He also published *Comparative vocabularies of some of the principal Negro dialects of Africa* (Boston, 1849); works on the Grebo and Mpongwe languages; and a considerable number of pamphlets, often polemical. H. Dundas Trotter was a notable commander in the West African squadron (cf. 1841 ALLEN).

1835 ALEXANDER, Capt. (later General Sir) James Edward

*Narrative of a voyage of observation among the colonies of western Africa...*, 2 vols, London, 1837.

Alexander was en route to the Sixth Kaffir War; he later wrote other travel books, including *Excursions in western Africa and narrative of a campaign in Kaffirland* (2 vols, London, 1840).



1835-42

BEECROFT, John

- (1) 'On Benin and the upper course of the River Quorra or Niger', *JRGS*, 11, (1841) 184-92.
- (2) (with Dr. J. B. KING) 'Details of the exploration of the Old Calabar River in 1841 and 1842', *JRGS*, 14 (1844) 260-83.

Beecroft was based in Fernando Po from 1829 to 1854; at various times he held British and Spanish official appointments. During 1835-44 he was active as a trader to, and as an explorer of, the Niger delta and adjacent rivers and lands, often in the employ of Robert JAMIESON (see 1838 and 1845). It was the latter who communicated these two brief reports to the Royal Geographical Society in London; it would seem that they represent the sum of Beecroft's published work. See K.O.DIKE in *JHSN*, 1, 1 (1956).

1835-36

MACBRAIR, Rev. Robert Maxwell

*Sketches of a missionary's travels in Egypt, Syria, western Africa...*, London, 1839.

Macbrair served on the Gambia as a Wesleyan missionary; he published grammars of Mandingo and Fula. In later life he wrote *The Africans at home, being a popular description condensed from the accounts of African travellers...* (London, 1864).

1835-45

OMBONI, Tito

*Viaggi nell' Africa occidentale*, Milan, 1845.

Omboni was a doctor in Angola; his book also touches on other parts of western Africa.

1835-89 (1596-1889)

COLLECTION: BRÁSIO, Fr António

*Spiritana Monumenta Historica, Series Africana: Angola*, 3 vols, Pittsburgh, 1966-69.

Documents relevant to the Holy Ghost Fathers mission in Angola. This began in 1866, but Vol. 1 of the collection includes six documents for 1596-1726 and quite a few for 1835-66.

1836-54

BOUËT-WILLAUMEZ, Vice-Admiral Louis-Édouard, Comte

- (1) *Description nautique des côtes de l'Afrique occidentale comprises entre le Sénégal et l'Equateur*, Paris, 1846; 2nd ed. 1849 with additional material by Charles-Phillipe de KERHALLET.
- (2) *Commerce et traite des Noirs aux côtes occidentales d'Afrique*, Paris, 1848.
- (3) *Campagne aux côtes occidentales d'Afrique*, Paris, 1850.

As a young naval officer in 1836-44, Bouët-Willaumez (simply Bouët until 1844), pioneered steam navigation on the R.Senegal and then actively promoted French interests along the coast to as far as Gabon. Associated with him in the latter enterprise were 1838 BROQUANT, 1840 KERHALLET and 1865 FLEURIOT de LANGLE (who contributed to (1) a substantial descriptive appendix on the coast south of the Equator). Bouët acted as Governor of the Senegal in 1843-44. After helping to negotiate

[cont.]

an anti-slave trade treaty with Britain, in 1848-54 he commanded the French navy's West African squadron. He wrote articles for *Nouv. Ann. Marine* (1850) and *Rev. Deux Mondes* (1852). A brother, Auguste, was also a naval officer with West African experience; see 1851 BOUËT.

1836-57

SCHLENKER, Rev. Christian Frederick

*A collection of Temne traditions, fables and proverbs*, London, 1861.

Schlenker was a C.M.S. missionary in Sierra Leone, and also the author of an English-Temne dictionary (1880).

1836-76

TOWNSEND, Rev. Henry

*Memoir of the Rev. Henry Townsend, compiled from his journals by his brother, Mr George Townsend of Exeter, also containing copies of letters and extracts from periodicals*, London & Exeter, 1887.

Townsend's long service as a missionary was for the most part in Yorubaland, but initially he served in Sierra Leone.

1836-42

WULFF, Wulff Josef

*Da Guinea var Dansk; W.J.Wulffs breve og dagbogsoptegnelser fra Guldkysten, 1836-42*, ed. Carl BEHRENS, Copenhagen, 1917.

The letters of a clerk in the Danish service on the Gold Coast to his family in Denmark.

(1837)

AVEZAC-MACAYA, Marie-Armand-Pascal d'

*Esquisse générale de l'Afrique*, Paris, 1837.

A work of synthesis; see 1810 AVEZAC-MACAYA for a note on his connection with Africa.

1837-56

BERTRAND-BOCANDE, Emmanuel

(1) 'Notes sur la Guinée portugaise ou Sénégal méridionale', *BSGP*, 11 (1849) 265-350 & 12 (1849) 57-93.

(2) *Rapport...sur les ressources que présentent les comptoirs de la Casamance*, Paris, 1856.

Emmanuel Bertrand-Bocandé (sometimes simply Emmanuel Bertrand) earned his living in various ways in Casamance and Portuguese Guinea from 1837 to 1866; see J. BERTRAND-BOCANDE, G. DEBIEN, & Y. ST-MARTIN, *BIFAN*, B, 31 (1969) 279-308 (which also prints a document). Item (2) was originally pub. in *Revue Coloniale*, October 1856.

1838-39

BROQUANT, Ch.

*Esquisse commerciale de la côte occidentale d'Afrique*, ?Paris, 1839.

[cont.]

Broquant, a merchant navy captain, sailed with 1836 BOUËT on his 1838-39 mission of commercial exploration. Both wrote reports with the above title; but it is uncertain whether Broquant's long and informative report, though circulated for comment by French chambers of commerce, was printed (as was Bouet's much shorter report).

1838

BRUNNER, Dr Samuel

*Reise nach Senegambien und den Inseln des Grünen Vorgebirges im Jahre 1838*,  
Bern, 1840.

1838

DOUCHEZ, F.

*Causeries sur la Côte de Guinée à propos de l'expédition du Général-Major  
Verveer pendant l'été de 1838*, Amsterdam & The Hague, 1839.

The expedition was that against Ahanta; cf. 1838 TENGBERGEN.

c. 1838-48

JAMIESON, Robert

*Commerce with Africa; the inefficiency of treaties for the suppression of  
the African slave trade... With suggestions for the development of the  
commercial resources of western central Africa*, London, 1859.

Jamieson was a merchant and philanthropist whose active interest in West Africa dates from c.1838 when his schooner *Warree* went to the Niger delta. In 1839 he financed and equipped the *Ethiopia* in which 1835 BEECROFT explored the Delta under his direction (1845 KING was another of his agents in the region). His experience led him roundly to condemn the 1840 NIGER EXPEDITION in three pamphlets published in London and Liverpool in 1840-42.

1838

TENGBERGEN, H. F.

*Verhaal van den reistogt en expeditie naar de Nederlandsche Bezittingen ter  
Westkust van Afrika*, The Hague, 1839.

This is mainly about the Dutch expedition against Ahanta in 1838; cf. 1838 DOUCHEZ.

(1839)

ABREU de LIMA, Luis António, Visconde da Carreira de

*Memória sobre as colonias de Portugal situadas na costa ocidental de Africa*,  
Paris, 1839.

(1839)

AFRICAN CAPTIVES, The

*The African captives: trial of the prisoners of the Amistad...*, New York, 1839.

The cargo of slaves aboard the *Amistad* rose against their Spanish owners and were tried for murder in the United States. They were acquitted and repatriated to their Mende homeland. See also 1840 BARBER and 1848 THOMPSON.

1839-42

BACON, Dr Francis

'Cape Palmas and the Mena, or Kroomen', *JRGS*, 12 (1842) 196-206.

1839-43

FREEMAN, Rev. Thomas Birch

- (1) *Journal of two visits to the Kingdom of Ashanti in western Africa*, London, 1843.
- (2) *Journal of various visits to the kingdoms of Ashanti, Aku and Dahomi in western Africa*, London, 1844. facs. 1968
- (3) *Missionary enterprise no fiction; a tale founded on facts*, London, 1871.

The second of these works includes the contents of the first; both are called 'second editions' because they repeat what had previously been published as articles in *The Wesleyan Missionary Notices* in January 1840, November 1842 and October 1843. The third work has been described by Harrison M. Wright, in his introduction to the facsimile of (2), as 'a romantic narrative of missionaries in the tropics'. Freeman arrived in the Gold Coast in 1838 and was to die there in 1890. There is a French account of Freeman's activities by F. FARJAT (Paris, Lausanne et Nîmes, 1843).

1839-40 RIIS, Rev. Andreas

Riis's account of his visit to Kumasi, the capital of Asante, in 1839-40 is to be found in *Die Magazin für die neueste Geschichte der evangelischen Missions- und Bibelgesellschaften* (Basel) for 1840.

Riis was a missionary in Guinea from 1831 to 1845; other accounts of journeys by him will be found in the same journal. There is a biography by C.H. RIIS (Copenhagen, 1932).

(1839)

WILKESON, Samuel

*An account of the commencement, progress and present condition of the American colonies in Liberia*, Washington, 1839.

Wilkeson says that he wrote his pamphlet because so much of the original material about the activities of the U.S. Colonization Societies was not available to the public.

(1840)

BARBER, John Warner

*A history of the Amistad captives... with biographical sketches of each of the surviving Africans...*, New Haven, 1840. See also 1839 AFRICAN CAPTIVES.

c. 1840

CARNES, Joshua A.

*A journal of a voyage from Boston to the coast of Africa, with a full description of the manner of trading with the natives on the coast*, Boston & Cleveland, 1852; London, 1853.

No date is given for this voyage, which touched at various points on the coast from Cape Verde to Principe; the fullest description is of the Gold Coast.

c. 1840-50

KERHALLET, Charles-Phillipe de  
(or PHILLIPE(S) de KERHALLET)

- (1) *Description nautique de la côte occidentale d'Afrique*, Paris, 1849.
- (2) *Manuel de la navigation à la côte occidentale d'Afrique...*, 3 vols., Paris, 1851-52 & 1857-58.
- (3) *Instructions nautiques sur la côte occidentale d'Afrique*, 3 vols., Paris, 1867-78; also later eds.

In the 1840s, Kerhallet served with 1836 BOUET and 1865 FLEURIOT in the French navy in West African waters and was active in hydrographic work. He later produced navigation manuals for many waters of the world. These are his principal West African items.

1840-45

[ MELVILLE, Mrs Elizabeth Helen ]

*A residence at Sierra Leone...*, by a Lady, ed. Mrs C.E.S. NORTON, London, 1849.  
facs. 1968

Mrs Melville was the wife of a Freetown judge.

(1840-43)

NIGER EXPEDITION, The (1841)

The U.K. House of Commons published papers concerning this expedition as follows:

Session 1840: xxx, 179; xxxiii, 57;

Session 1842: xxvi, 494;

Session 1843: xxxi, 83; xlviii, C.472.

In the Irish Universities Press facsimile reprint of 19th century Parliamentary papers, the Niger Expedition papers are to be found in Colonies: Africa, Vol.63.

1840

PEL, H. J.

'Aanteekeningen gehouden op eene reis van S. George d'Elmina naar Coomassie',  
*Bijdragen voor Land- en Volkenkunde van Nederlandsch Indië*, 1842.

Pel went to Kumasi to recruit for service in the Dutch East Indies.

c. 1840-c. 1853

REICHARDT, Rev. Charles Augustus Ludwig

- (1) *Three original Fulah pieces, in Arabic letters, in Latin transcription and in English translation*, Berlin, 1859.
- (2) *Grammar of the Fulde language, with an appendix of some original traditions*, London, 1876.

Reichardt was a C.M.S. missionary at Fourah Bay from 1852 to 1880. In the appendix to his *Grammar*, he prints in Fulfulde and in English translation a text of the earliest chronicle of the life and jihad of al-Hajj 'Umar, which David ROBINSON (*The Holy War of Umar Tal*, Oxford, 1985) says provides 'a wealth of detail' for 'Umar's community during c.1840-53.

1840-46

SHREEVE, William Whitaker

*Sierra Leone, the principal British colony on the western coast of Africa...*, London, 1847.

Shreeve was on the staff of the British anti-slave trade commission at Freetown. Christopher FYFE (*A history of Sierra Leone*, London, 1962, p.265) calls this 'a malicious book by a disgruntled official, attacking [ Governor ] Fergusson'. See 1815 FERGUSSON.

(1840)

THEVÉNOT, Dr Jean-Pierre-Ferdinand

*Traité des maladies des Européens dans les pays chauds et spécialement au Sénégal...*, Paris, 1840.

An important and pioneer study in the epidemiology of tropical climates. Cf.1847 BRYSON.

1840-43

[ ZULUETA, Pedro de, Jun. ]

*Trial of Pedro de Zulueta, Jun., on a charge of slave trading...1843...at the Central Criminal Court...*, London, 1844.

Zulueta was a London-based merchant trading to West Africa. In addition to a verbatim account of the court proceedings, this publication prints documents, correspondence between Zulueta and Zulueta & Co. and H.W.MACAULAY, Capt. H.W.HILL R.N., Capt. Joseph DENMAN R.N. (cf. 1848 SMITH) and others. A shorter account of this trial with a similar title was pub. by the Anti-Slavery Society (1884).

1840-1920

COLLECTION: DAVIES, Peter N.

*Trading in West Africa, 1840-1920*, New York, 1976.

A collection of reminiscences by merchants trading to West Africa.

1840s

COLLECTION: MILLER, Randall M.

*Dear Master: letters of a slave family*, Ithaca, 1978.

Letters from freed slaves who went to Liberia. Cf. 1833 COLLECTION: WILEY.

1841

ALLEN, William, Capt. R. N. & THOMSON, Dr T. R. H.

*A narrative of the expedition sent by Her Majesty's Government to the River Niger in 1841 under the command of Capt. H.D.Trotter*, 2 vols, London, 1848.  
facs. 1968

Allen also wrote a piece about the Cameroon River which was published in *JRGS*, 1843. See also 1832 ALLEN, 1847 LEE and, re Trotter, 1834 WILSON.

(1841)

BEECHAM, John

*Ashantee and the Gold Coast, being a sketch of the history, social state and superstitions of the inhabitants*, London, 1841. facs. 1968 [cont.

Beecham never visited Africa but, as Secretary of the Methodist Missionary Society in London, he was in a good position to collect original material. Thus his Gold Coast informants included 1839 FREEMAN, and Joseph SMITH and William de GRAFT. Not all his book relates solely to Asante and the Gold Coast - see. e.g. 1825 WRIGHT.

(1841)

CHRISTIAN TRAVELLER, *The*

*The Christian Traveller: Western Africa, being an account of the country and its products, of the people and their condition, and of the measures taken for their religious and social benefit*, London, 1841.

A compilation, under missionary auspices, from many sources. It has chapters on the Fula, Futa Toro, Bondu, Futa Jallon, and the Wolof and the Mandingo and their kingdoms.

1841-47

CLARKE, Rev. John

- (1) *Specimens of dialects: short vocabularies of language and notes of countries and customs in Africa*, Berwick-on-Tweed, 1848.  
facs., ed. Edwin & Shirley ARDENER, Farnborough, 1972.
- (2) *Introduction to the Fernandian tongue*, Berwick-on-Tweed, 1848.  
While serving as a Baptist missionary on Fernando Po, Clarke collected linguistic material from the indigenes and from the freed slaves on the island.

1841-45

CLARKE, Robert, *MRCS Edin.*

- (1) *Sierra Leone:... with observations... of the native tribes*, London, 1846.
- (2) *Sketches of the Colony of Sierra Leone and its inhabitants*, London, 1863.  
Clarke was a surgeon in the Sierra Leone government service.

(1841)

COOLEY, William Desborough

*The Negroland of the Arabs...; an enquiry into the early history and geography of central Africa*, London, 1841.

facs. 1966

An outstanding work of synthesis and interpretation of its time. See also 1828 DOUVILLE.

1841-77

CROWTHER, Bp Samuel Adjai

*The River Niger, a paper read before the Royal Geographical Society, June 11th 1877*, London, 1877.

Originally pub. as 'Notes on the River Niger' in *Proc.RGS*, 21 (1877) 481-96; see also 1841 SCHÖN & CROWTHER.

c. 1841-53

DANIELL, Dr William Freeman

- (1) *On the natives of Old Calabar*, ed. with notes by D.C.SIMMONS, Calabar, American Ass. for African research, 1964. [cont.]

(2) *Sketches of the medical topography and native diseases of the Gulf of Guinea...*, London, 1849.

(3) 'On the ethnography of Akkrah and Adampe, Gold Coast, western Africa', *J.Ethn.Soc.* 4 (1856) 1-32.

Daniell was an army surgeon who, shortly after gaining his F.R.C.S. (1841), was posted to West Africa (where - as later in the West Indies and China - he did major botanical work). The Calabar piece was originally pub. in *Edinburgh New Philos. J.* 40 (1846) 313-27.

1841-62

GOLLMER, Rev. Charles Andrew

*Charles Andrew Gollmer, his life and missionary labours in West Africa*, compiled from his journals... by his eldest son, London, 1889.

Gollmer served with the Church Missionary Society in Badagri, Lagos and Abeokuta; his eldest son was Charles Henry Vidal GOLLMER, who himself served in Lagos.

1841-42

McWILLIAM (or M'WILLIAM), Dr James Ormiston

*Medical history of the expedition to the Niger during the years 1841-42...*, London, 1843.

1841

MADDEN, Dr Richard Robert

(1) *Report of Her Majesty's Commissioner of Inquiry on the state of the British forts on the Gold Coast*, London, Parl.Pap. 1842 xii 551-II.

facs. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 3.

(2) *The slave trade and slavery; the influence of British settlements on the west coast of Africa...*, London, 1843.

(3) *The memoirs... 1798-1886 of Richard Robert Madden, edited by his son, T.M. Madden*, London, 1891.

Madden, a fervent abolitionist with West Indian experience, was on the Gold Coast little longer than a month. His *Report* covers rather more than might be thought from its title. It led to a Parliamentary Select Committee, which took evidence reported in 1842 WEST AFRICAN COMMITTEE.

1841 SCHÖN, Rev. James Frederick, & CROWTHER, Rev. Samuel Adjai

*Journals of the Rev. James Frederick Schön and Mr Crowther who... accompanied the expedition up the Niger in 1841...*, London, 1842. facs. 1970

Other writings by CROWTHER alone are entered under the years 1821, 1841, 1854, 1857, 1862, & 1871; by SCHÖN alone under 1862.

1841-42

SIMPSON, William

*A private journal kept during the Niger expedition from... May 1841... to June 1842*, London, 1843.

Simpson, who had experience of slavery in the West Indies, volunteered from Christian motives to join the expedition.



1841 - 42

THOMSON, William Cooper

'Narrative of Mr William Cooper Thomson's journey from Sierra Leone to Timbo, capital of Fulah Jallo...', communicated by Lord STANLEY, *JRGS*, 16 (1846) 106-38.

Thomson, linguist of the Church Missionary Society at Sierra Leone, died at Timbo in 1843. His papers were brought back to Freetown by his son, then only about 14 years old.

1841

VOGEL, Dr Julius Rudolf Theodor

Sir William Jackson HOOKER, *Niger Flora, or an enumeration of the plants of western tropical Africa collected by the late Dr Theodore Vogel...*, London, 1849.

The famous botanist also prints the journal and a sketch of the life of Theodor VOGEL, the botanist of the 1841 Niger expedition (who also visited the Gold Coast).

1842 - 50

CARSTENSEN, Edward James Arnold

*Guvernør Edward Carstensen's indberetninger fra Guinea, 1842-50*, ed. Georg NØRREGÅRD, Copenhagen, 1964.

Carstensen was the last governor of the Danish possessions on the Gold Coast.

1842 - 43

FOOTE, Mrs Henry Grant

*Recollections of Central America and the west coast of Africa*, London, 1869.

The author was the widow of Capt. H.R.Foote, R.N., who served in the anti-slave trade squadron in West African waters.

(1842)

MOREIRA, José Joaquim

'Memória sobre as molestias endemicas da costa ocidental d'Africa', *J. Soc. Cienc. Med. de Lisboa*, 15, 1 (1842) 121-52.

1842 - 90

SILVA PORTO, António Francisco Ferreira da

*Viagens e apontamentos de um Portuense em Africa*, Lisbon, 1942.

Silva Porto settled in Bié in Angola in the 1840s and engaged in extensive trading journeys which reached as far as Luba, Katanga and the Zambesi. The above publication is of excerpts from his extensive diaries, but publication of the complete diaries, under the same title and under the excellent editorship of Maria Emília MADEIRA SANTOS, has begun from the Biblioteca Geral da Universidade de Coimbra (Vol.1, 1986).

(1842)

WEST AFRICAN COMMITTEE

*Report from the Select Committee of the House of Commons on West Africa.*

London: Parl.Pap. 1842 xi 551, xii 551-II.

facs. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 2 & 3.

This prints the evidence of witnesses and also the *Report* of 1841 MADDEN.

1843 - 53

BOILAT, Abbé P. - David

*Esquisses sénégalaises*, Paris, 1853.

facs. 1973, 1984.

See Robert W. JULY, *Origins of modern African thought* (London, 1968), pp.155-67. Boilat was also the author of a grammar of Wolof which was published at Paris in 1858.

1843 - 44

BRIDGE, Horatio, U.S.N.

*The journal of an African cruiser, comprising sketches of the Canaries, the Cape Verde Islands, Liberia, Madeira, Sierra Leone and other places of interest on the west coast of Africa...*, ed. Nathaniel HAWTHORNE, New York & London, 1845; Aberdeen, 1848; New York, 1853. facs. London, 1968

Prior to the 1853 ed., no name is given to the author; he is simply 'an officer of the U.S. Navy'.

c. 1843 - 50

DARRICAU, Rodolphe-Augustin, Baron

*Le Sénégal, sera-t-il une colonie ou un simple comptoir?*, Paris, 1850.

The author of this 15 page pamphlet was a French naval officer (ultimately a Rear-Admiral) who had a number of tours of duty in West African waters, and who had experience of the Ivory Coast and Gabon as well as of Senegal.

(1843 - 44)

HODGSON, William Brown

(1) *The Foulahs of central Africa and the African slave trade*, New York, 1843.

(2) *Notes on northern Africa, the Sahara and the Soudan...*, New York, 1844.

Hodgson's information on West Africa was derived from sources available to him when he was U.S. Consul at Algiers; see e.g. 1785 SALIH BILALI.

(1843)

KENNEDY, John Pendleton

*African colonization: slave trade: commerce*, Report No.283, House of

Representatives, Feb.28 1843, Washington D.C. facs. Freeport, N.Y., 1971.

A report from the Committee of Commerce of the House of representatives on an 1842 memorial from the Friends of African Colonization. Appended to it are numerous papers on African colonization and the commerce of western Africa, and of diplomatic correspondence on the slave trade with the U. K. In all, there are 1100 pages.

1843 ORLÉANS, François-Ferdinand-Philippe-Louis-Marie d',  
*Prince de Joinville*

*Vieux souvenirs, 1818-1848*, Paris, 1894.

Modern ed. by Daniel MEYER, Paris, 1970.

Eng. trans. by Lady Mary LLOYD, *Memoirs, vieux souvenirs of the Prince de Joinville*, London, 1895.

While an officer in the French navy, in 1843 the Prince visited Senegal and other French establishments in western Africa.

(1843) PEREIRA BARRETO, H.

*Memória do estado actual da Senegambia portuguesa. causas de sua decadencia e meios de a fazer próspera*, Lisbon, 1843.

Modern ed., Bissao, 1947.

1843-44

RAFFENEL, Anne [Jean-Baptiste]

(1) *Rapport sur le pays de Galam, le Bondou et le Bambouk, adressé le 17 mars 1844 au Gouverneur du Sénégal*, Paris, 1844.

(2) *Voyage dans l'Afrique occidentale exécuté en 1843 et 1844 comprenant l'exploration du Sénégal jusqu'à la Falémé*, Paris, 1846.

Ger. trans. Stuttgart, 1846.

Raffenel went on an official mission of political and commercial exploration. See also 1846 RAFFENEL.

c. 1843-55

VERNEUIL, Victor

(1) *Deux années au désert*, Paris, 1845.

(2) *Mes aventures au Sénégal; souvenirs de voyage*, Paris, 1858.

The first includes 'Notices sur la Sénégambie, météorologie, botanique, zoologie'; the second is a piece of sensational writing for a popular market.

(1844-50) AVEZAC-MACAYA, Marie-Armand-Pascal d'

*Univers: histoire et description de tous les peuples*, Paris, 1844-50.

A work of synthesis in many volumes. Vols 1-5 deal with Africa as follows: 1. Africa general & ancient; 2. Senegambia and Guinea; 3. the offshore islands; 4. southern, central and eastern Africa; 4. North Africa. 1810 AVEZAC was the general editor.

1844-47; 1862-71

DOS SANTOS, José Francisco

A letter book containing copies of 112 letters by J.F. Dos Santos of Whydah, written in 1844-47 when he was engaged in the slave trade, and in 1862-71 when

[cont.]

dos Santos was an exporter of palm oil and kola, is published in French translation with supporting material in pp.53-100 of

Pierre VERGER, *Les Afro-Américains*, Dakar, *Mém. de l'IFAN*, 27, 1952.

(1844)

EAST, David Jonathan

*Western Africa; its condition, and Christianity the means of its recovery.*  
London, 1844.

A compilation, with eight chapters describing society and beliefs and five on the merits of Christianity and its missions.

(1844-46)

LOPES de LIMA, José Joaquim

*Ensaio sobre a statistica des possessões portuguezas...* Lisbon, 1844-46.

Contents: Vol.1, the Cape Verde Islands & Portuguese Guinea; Vol.2, S.Thomé & Principe; Vol.3, Angola. (There are other vols for other colonies.) Cf. 1575 CATALOGO.

1844

TAMS, Georg

*Die portugiesischen Besitzungen in Süd-West Afrika*, Hamburg, 1845.

Eng. trans. by H.E.LLOYD, *Visit to the Portuguese possessions in south-western Africa*, 2 vols, London n.d. (1845). facs. New York, 1969

(1844)

TRACY, Joseph

*Colonization and missions: a historical examination of the state of society in western Africa, as formed by Paganism and Muhammadanism, slavery, the slave trade and piracy, and of the remedial influence of colonization and missions*, Boston, 1844.

Tracy was Secretary of the Massachusetts Colonization Society. His book contains some original material, e.g. a letter of 1844 from Commodore Perry, commanding the U.S. Navy anti-slave trade squadron and writing from Monrovia.

(1845)

[ AVEZAC-MACAYA, Marie-Armand-Pascal d' ]

'Vocabulaires Guiolof, Mandingue, Foule, Saracole, Bagnon et Floupe, recueillis à la côte d'Afrique pour le service de l'ancienne Compagnie Royale du Sénégal', *Mém. Soc. Ethnol.* (Paris) 2 (1845).

Avezac was responsible for the publication of these vocabularies; the spelling of the Wolof words suggests that they were compiled in the time of 1675 MOREAU. There was also apparently a publication of them in book form from Paris in 1873 (presumably because they were thought to be useful to those working in the new French empire). For a note on Avezac and his interest in Africa, see 1810 AVEZAC.

1845

BOUDYCK BASTIAANSE, *Capt.* J.H. van

*Voyage à la côte de Guinée, dans le Golfe de Biafra, à l'Ile de Fernando-Po, l'Ile de Ste Hélène...* The Hague, 1853.

The author was in command of *Le Lancier*, a brig in the Netherlands Navy.

c. 1845

DOREN, Jan Baptiste Jozef

*Reis naar Nederlands Oost-Indië of land- en zeetochten gedurende de twee eerste jaren mijns verblijfs op Java*, 2 vols, The Hague, 1851.

Doren called in at Elmina on his way to the East Indies, and in the first volume of his book he provides a substantial body of information on the Dutch possessions on the Gold Coast.

1845-46

DUNCAN, John

*Travels in western Africa in 1845 & 1846, comprising a journey from Whydah through... Dahomey to Adofoodia in the interior*, 2 vols, London, 1847.  
fac. 1967, 1968.

Ger. trans. Dresden & Leipzig, 1848.

On the authenticity of this work, see Marion JOHNSON in *HA*, 1 (1974). She concludes that pp.75-190 of the second volume, which deal with Duncan's journey to Adofoodia, are probably an invention. Duncan, originally a soldier, had served on the 1841 Niger expedition and had secured support from the Royal Geographical Society for his 1845-46 journey.

1845-87

GAMBIA, The

United Kingdom Parliamentary papers relating to the Gambia are usefully grouped together in Vol.56 of the series *Colonies: Africa* of the Irish Universities Press facsimile reprint of 19th century Parliamentary Papers.

1845-46

KING, Dr J. B.

Robert JAMIESON, *To the subscribers to the fund in support of an experimental trial in open commerce with central Africa*, Liverpool, 1847.

This publication contains King's substantial narrative of the ascent of the Rivers Niger and Gabon in Jamieson's steamer *Ethiope* in 1845 and 1846. See also 1835 BEECROFT and 1838 JAMIESON.

1845-48

JARDIN, Edélan

Jean ROUSSET de PINA, 'Le voyage inédit d'Edélan Jardin sur la côte occidentale d'Afrique, 1845-1848', Univ. de Dakar, *Annales Fac. Let. et Sc. Hum.*, 2, (1972) 235-65. [cont.]

Jardin was a French official who in 1845-48 travelled the length of the West African coast. While the whole of his MS is described in the article, only that part which deals with Senegambia and the Cape Verde Is. is printed in full.

1845-49

POOLE, Rev. Dr Thomas Eyre

*Life, scenery and customs in Sierra Leone and the Gambia*, 2 vols, London, 1850.

Poole had been Colonial Chaplain at Sierra Leone. Christopher Fyfe (*A history of Sierra Leone*, London, 1962, p.265) says that his book 'shows a small official society torn apart by petty jealousies'.

1845-46

RICHARDSON, James

*Travels in the Great Desert of Sahara in the years 1845 and 1846...* 2 vols, London, 1848. facs. 1970

It was Richardson's hostility to the slave trade that led him to undertake his first travels in the Sahara, during which he visited Murzuk, Ghadames and Ghat, all places involved in the trans-Saharan trade to West Africa. (See, e.g. A. Adu BOAHEN, *Britain, the Sahara, and the western Sudan. 1788-1861* (Oxford, 1964) especially pp.174-90.) On the eve of departing for his second and fatal expedition (see 1850 RICHARDSON), he published:

*The Cruisers. being a letter to the Marquis of Lansdowne in defence of armed coercion for the extinction of the slave trade*, London, 1849.

1845-73

WHARTON, Rev. Henry

William MOISTER, *Henry Wharton, the story of his life and missionary labours in the West Indies, on the Gold Coast and in Ashanti. With a brief account of the Wesleyan Mission in western Africa*, London, 1875.

Moister's West African experience was on the Gambia (see 1831 MOISTER), but later he wrote very widely on missionary matters. Here use is made of Wharton's letters and journal.

1845-69

COLLECTION: CHARPY, Jacques

*La fondation de Dakar (1845-1857-1869); documents recueillis et publiés*, Paris, 1958.

(1846)

ALEXANDER, Rev. Dr Archibald

*A history of colonization on the western coast of Africa*, Philadelphia, 1846; 2nd ed. 1849.

Alexander was a prolific writer on a wide range of religious and related topics.

(1846-67)

GOLD COAST &amp; ASANTE (ASHANTI)

The United Kingdom Parliament published collections of papers concerning the Gold Coast and/or Asante as follows:

Session 1849: xxxiv, 399; Session 1852-3: lxxv, 703;  
 Session 1854-5: xxxvi, 456; Session 1864: xli, C.3364, C.3364-I, 385, 393;  
 Session 1865: xxxii, 171; xxxvii, 70; Session 1867: xlix, 198.

In the Irish Universities Press facsimile reprint of 19th century Parliamentary Papers, papers relating specifically to the Gold Coast and/or Asante are to be found in the series Colonies: Africa, Vols. 57-62. See *Catalogue of British Parliamentary papers 1801-1900*, Dublin, 1977.

1846-48

RAFFENEL, Anne [Jean-Baptiste]

*Nouveau voyage dans le pays des Nègres; suivi d'études sur la Colonie du Sénégal*, 2 vols, Paris, 1856.

Raffenel's second official mission up the Senegal valley (see 1843 for the first); the supporting studies are very informative. There are also a preliminary account (1847) and a book of itineraries (1849). He also wrote a general study of Senegal (Paris, 1850).

1846-58

WADDELL, Rev. Hope Masterton

*Twenty-nine years in the West Indies and central Africa; a review of missionary work and adventure, 1829-1858*. London, 1863. facs. 1970

Hope Waddell was the pioneer of the Baptist Mission at Old Calabar.

(1847/49), but see comment.

BRYSON, Dr Alexander

(1) *Report on the climate and principal diseases of the Africa Station, compiled from documents in the office of the Director-General of the Medical Department [of the Admiralty] and from other sources... under the immediate direction of Sir William Burnett*. London, 1847.

(2) *An account of the origin, spread and decline of the epidemic fever of Sierra Leone, with observations on Sir William Pym's review of the Report on the climate and principal diseases...* London, 1849.

From a study of naval records for the years 1825-45, Bryson established the epidemiology of malaria (much as 1840 THEVENOT had done). Cf. 1815 PYM. For a general background study, see Philip D. CURTIN, *The Image of Africa...* (Madison, 1964), Ch.14.

1847-68

CHRISTALLER, Rev. Johannes Gottlieb

(1) *A grammar of the Asante and Fante language*. Basel, 1875.

(2) *Dictionary of the Asante and Fante language called Tshi*. Basel; 1881, rev. ed. 1933.

Christaller served on the Gold Coast with the Basel mission. He also published a collection of 3600 Twi proverbs (Basel, 1879) some 800 of which were translated into English by R.S.Rattray in his *Ashanti Proverbs* (Oxford, 1916).

1847-48

GORDON, Dr Charles Alexander

*Life on the Gold Coast*. London, 1874.

Adam Jones has noted that this book is very similar to the anonymous 'Reminiscences of the Gold Coast; being extracts from notes taken during a term of service in 1847-8' published in *Colburn's United Service Magazine*, 1850, Pt.3, 67-84, 400-18, 573-88, and 1851, Pt.1, 93-103, but each contains some information that is not in the other.

1847-53

KOELLE, Rev. Sigismund Wilhelm

- (1) *Narrative of an expedition into the Vy country of West Africa*, London, 1849.
- (2) *Outlines of a grammar of the Vei language...*, London, 1853; rev. ed. 1854: facs. Farnborough, 1968
- (3) *Grammar of the Bornu or Kanuri language*, London, 1854.
- (4) *African native literature... in the Kanuri or Bornu language... with translations*, London, 1854. facs. Graz, 1963
- (5) *Polyglotta Africana*, London, 1854. facs. Graz, 1963

Koelle followed J.F.Schön (see 1841 & 1855) as the Church Missionary Society's linguist at Fourah Bay College. He stayed there during the whole of his time in Africa save for his relatively brief Vai excursion, but he made excellent use of the wide range of linguistic material available from the Liberated Africans settled in Sierra Leone. His linguistic publications often convey other information; see, e.g., 1808 ALI EISAMI, or the 'Remarks concerning informants' at the front of his *magnum opus*, the *Polyglotta*. The facsimile eds of his works have valuable introductions, and there is a series of articles in *Sierra Leone/African Language Review* in which the languages of the *Polyglotta* are discussed. See also P.E.H.HAIR, *The early study of Nigerian languages* (London, 1967); this has important bibliographies relating to Koelle and other Sierra Leone missionary linguists. Cf. also 1848 FORBES.

(1847)

LEE, Mrs Sarah

*The African wanderers...*, London, 1847; later eds, 4th 1867; New York, n.d.  
Boston ed. (1847), *The African Crusoes...*, with later eds, 4th ed. 1876.

*The African Wanderers* is an adventure story for children, derived partly from Sarah Lee's own and her husband's experiences, but also from material provided by William Allen and by T.B.Freeman (see 1841 ALLEN and 1839 FREEMAN). The story's wanderers are ship-wrecked in Gabon and make their way overland through Nigeria to Dagomba, Asante and the Gold Coast. For a note on the author, see 1816 LEE.

1847

RIDGWAY, Archibald R.

'Journal of a visit to Dahomey, or the Snake Country, in the months of March and April 1847', *New Monthly Magazine*, 81 (1847) 187-98, 299-309, 406-14.

Ridgway was a member of a mission to Abomey, the capital of Dahomey, which was led by 1847 WINNIETT.



1847-50

WINNIETT, Sir William

- (1) 'Journal of a visit to Kumasi, 1847', in *Parl. Pap.*, 1849 xxxiv 399.  
 facs. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 50.
- (2) 'Journal of a visit to the former Danish possessions on the Gold Coast, 1850', in *Parl. Pap.*, 1850 xxxviii 572. facs. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 57.  
 Winniett, a captain in the Royal Navy, was an unusually energetic governor of the Gold Coast Colony (1846-50). He also visited Dahomey (see 1847 RIDGWAY).

(1848)

ARMISTEAD, Wilson

- (1) *A tribute for the Negro, being a vindication of... the African race, illustrated by numerous biographical sketches...*, Manchester & New York, 1848.
- (2) *Calumny refuted by facts from Liberia, with extracts from the inaugural address of the coloured President Roberts...*, London & New York, 1848.  
 Armistead was a Quaker who wrote on matters relating to religion and slavery; he was also responsible for editing memoirs of 1762 BENEZET and 1810 CUFFEE. It is doubtful whether the brief biographies in (1) contain original material that was not published elsewhere. See also 1854 ADAMS.

(1848)

BARTHÉLEMY, Édouard

*Notice historique sur les établissements français des côtes occidentales d'Afrique*, Paris, 1848.

This appears to be essentially derivative.

1848

CRUICKSHANK, Brodie

'Report by B. Cruickshank of his mission to the King of Dahomey, 1848', in *Parl. Pap.*, 1849, xxxiv, 399. facs. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 50.  
 See also 1834 CRUICKSHANK.

(1848)

DAUMAS, Melchior Joseph Eugène, &amp; CHANCEL, Ausone de

*Le Grand Désert, ou itinéraire d'une caravane du Sahara au pays des Nègres (Royaume de Haoussa)*, Paris, 1848; other eds. 1856, 1883.

Daumas was an army officer (rising to the rank of General) who, serving in the Algerian Bureaux Arabes from their inception, became a notable authority on Algeria; Chancel was a civil administrator in Algeria, and also a poet and novelist.

1848

FORBES, Frederick Edwyn, Lt R.N.

- (1) *Six months' service in the African blockade, from April to October 1848, in command of H.M.S. Bonetta*, London, 1849.

[cont.]

- (2) 'Despatch communicating the discovery of a Native written character at Bolmar on the western coast of Africa, near Liberia, accompanied by a vocabulary of the Vahie or Vei tongue..., with notes on the Vei language and alphabet by E. Norris', *JRGS*, 20 (1851) 89-113.  
Forbes's report on the existence of a Vai script led 1847 KOELLE to make his journey to the Vai country. See also 1849 FORBES.

1848-57

MAGYAR, Ladislaus

- (1) 'Die Reisen von Ladislaus Magyar in Süd-Afrika...', *Petermanns Mittheilungen*, 1857, 181-99.  
(2a) J. HUNFALVY, *Magyar László délafrikai utazásai az 1849-57*, Pest, 1859.  
(2b) *Reisen in Süd-Afrika in den Jahren 1849 bis 1857*, Pest & Leipzig, 1859, reprinted, New York, 1973.

Magyar is chiefly known for his travels in Angola in 1849-57, which are chronicled in (2a) and (2b), the Hungarian and German eds of the same book (though the Hungarian ed. includes a wordlist which is omitted from the German ed.). But earlier, in 1848, Magyar had travelled briefly in the lower Congo; the scanty surviving documentation was used by Petermann for the 1857 piece. A little information derived from Magyar also appeared in *JRGS*, 24 (1854) 271-75. For Magyar's life and his work in central Angola, see N. de KUN in *Bull. ARSOM*, 6, 4 (1960), 605-36, and István FODOR, *Introduction to the history of Umbundu: L. Magyar's records and the later sources* (Hamburg, 1983). On the value of his for demographic research, see Linda HEYWOOD and John THORNTON in *JAH*, 29 (1988) 213-28.

(1848)

SMITH, G.

*The case of our West African cruisers*, London, 1848.

A Capt. George Smith, a gunnery specialist, was serving in the Royal Navy in 1848. This is one of a number of works, often no more than pamphlets, occasioned by the controversy aroused by the attempts of (Sir) William Hutt, M.P., to secure abolition of the Royal Navy's West African squadron. Others include:

- MATSON, Cdr Henry James, *Remarks on the slave trade and the African squadron*, London, 1848. (at least 4 eds)  
DENMAN, Admiral the Hon. Joseph, (1) *West India interest, African emigration and the slave trade*, London & Worcester, 1848.  
(2) *The African squadron and Mr Hutt's committee*, London, 1850 (at least 2 eds).  
YULE, Sir Henry, *The African squadron vindicated*, London, 1850 (4 or more eds).  
MANSFIELD, J.S., *Remarks on the African squadron*, London, 1851.  
A BARRISTER, *Extracts from the evidence taken before Committees of both Houses of Parliament relative to the slave trade*, London, 1851.  
See also under 1834 WILSON, 1845 RICHARDSON, 1862 WILMOT.

1848-56

THOMPSON, Rev. George

- (1) *Thompson in Africa, or an account of the missionary labours... of George Thompson in western Africa at the Mendi station*. Cleveland & New York, 1852; other eds. Dayton, Ohio, 1857 & 1859. [cont.]

- (2) *The palm land, or West Africa illustrated...*, London, 1858; Cincinatti, 1858, 2nd & 3rd eds, 1859. facs. London, 1969.

Thompson (who had earlier been sent to prison in Missouri for helping slaves to escape), was a practical man and a good observer who became leader of the American Missionary Association activities in Mende country that followed upon the repatriation of the *Amistad* captives (see 1839 AFRICAN CAPTIVES and 1840 BARBER).

## 1849-55

BARTH, Dr Heinrich (or Henry)

- (1) There are two original versions of Barth's major work:

*Reisen und Entdeckungen in Nord- und Central-Afrika in den Jahren 1849 bis 1855*, 5 vols, Gotha, 1857-58. facs. 1963

*Travels and discoveries in North and Central Africa in the years 1849-1855*, 5 vols, London, 1857-58.

English language version also in 3 vols, New York, 1857-59; facs. London, 1965.

Fr. trans.: 4 vols, Paris, 1860-61 (abridged; translation indifferent).

Dutch trans.: 5 vols, Amsterdam, 1861.

Danish trans.: 2 vols, Copenhagen, 1860 (abridged).

Abridged Ger. ed.: 2 vols, Gotha, 1859 and 1860.

Abridged Eng. ed., lacking appendices: 2 vols, London, 1890.

The author of what is unquestionably one of the greatest works of scientific discovery to have come out of Africa, Barth was the sole survivor of a major expedition sent out by the British government in 1849. But note that a narrative by its original leader was also published (see 1850 RICHARDSON), and there are some surviving remains from the reinforcements sent out in 1853 (see 1853 VOGEL).

The various editions or translations of the *Reisen/Travels* are by no means identical in their contents. Though the original German and English eds are equally authentic, the English sometimes omits material which may be found in the German, while the French version, albeit abridged, sometimes has material which is not in the other two, but which comes from elsewhere, e.g. from Barth's letters and maps in *Petermanns Mittheilungen*.

- (2) *Sammlung und Bearbeitung Central-Afrikanischer Vocabularien*, 3 vols, Gotha, 1862-86. facs. London, 1971

The languages are Kanuri, Teda, Hausa, Fulfulde, Songhai, Logone, Mandara, Bagirmi and Maba.

## 1849-56

BOWEN, Rev. Thomas Jefferson

- (1) *Central Africa: adventures and missionary labours in several countries in the interior of Africa...*, Charleston, 1857. facs. London, 1968.

- (2) *Grammar and dictionary of the Yoruba language; with an introduction descriptive of the country and people*, Washington, D.C., 1858.

Bowen, an American Baptist missionary in Sierra Leone, Liberia and Yorubaland, also edited *Meroke, or missionary life in Africa...* (Philadelphia, c.1858). On his life and writings, see Lysle E. MEYER, *IJAHs*, 15 (1982) 247-60. Cf. 1854 CLARKE.

1849-50

FORBES, Frederick Edwyn, *Cdr R.N.*

*Dahomey and the Dahomans, being the journals of two missions to the King of Dahomey and residence at his capital in the years 1849 and 1850*, 2 vols, London, 1851. facs. 1966

Fr. trans., 1 vol. 1851. See also 1848 FORBES.

1849-65

FOX, Rev. George Townsend

*A memoir of the Rev. C. Colden Hoffam, missionary to Cape Palmas...*, London, 1868.

1849-51

HECQUARD, Lt. Hyacinthe

(1) *Rapport sur un voyage dans la Casamance*, Paris, 1852.

(2) *Coup d'oeil sur l'organisation politique, l'histoire et les moeurs des Peuples du Fouta-Djallon*, Paris, 1852.

(3) *Voyage sur la côte et dans l'intérieur de l'Afrique occidentale*, Paris, 1853.

Ger. trans. Leipzig, 1854 & 1856.

The coastal sections of (3) deal mainly with Gabon and the Ivory Coast; these are followed by a detailed account of Hecquard's journey inland to Fouta Jalon; (2) first appeared in *Revue Coloniale* (1852) 319-49.

1849-75

HINDERER, Mrs Anna

*Seventeen years in the Yoruba country: memorials of Anna Hinderer... gathered from her journals and letters*, London, 1872.

Anna Hinderer was with her husband, David, in the C.M.S. Yoruba Mission; their lives form the subject of a novel by Ellen THORP, *Swelling of Jordan* (London, 1950).

1849-69

KOBÈS, Mgr Aloyse

Kobès was a notable missionary at Dakar from 1849 until his death in 1872. In 1855-56 the Mission at Dakar published his *Principes de la langue Wolofe* and his *Dictionnaire Français-Wolofe*, and in 1869 his *Grammaire de la langue Wolofe* was published.

1850 onwards

BLYDEN, Dr Edward Wilmot

There are three modern selections of Blyden's considerable literary output:

(1) ed. Hollis R. LYNCH, *Black spokesman: selected published writings of Edward Wilmot Blyden*, London, 1971.

(2) ed. Willie A. GIVENS, *Selected works of Dr Edward Blyden*, Robertsport, 1976.

(3) ed. Hollis R. LYNCH, *Selected letters of Edward Wilmot Blyden*, Millwood, N.Y., 1978.

[cont.]

See Hollis R. LYNCH, *Edward Wilmot Blyden: Pan-Negro Patriot, 1832-1912* (London, 1967), for a discussion of Blyden's writings (pp.54-83) and a list of his publications (pp.255-57).

Blyden, a West Indian of pure African descent, emigrated to Liberia in 1850. He occupied journalistic, educational and political posts there during 1856-71 and again in 1875-85. In 1872-73 and 1901-06 he held government appointments in Sierra Leone and in 1896-97 in Lagos.

Throughout his career, Blyden stressed the importance of developing African society free from European and Christian influence. He undertook missions to the interior from the coastal settlements of both Liberia and Sierra Leone; he also sponsored the journey to Musardu by 1868 ANDERSON. During the period of this *Guide*, written expression of his views is to be found only in pamphlets and articles in periodicals; some of these were reprinted in his book *Christianity, Islam and the Negro race* (London, 1888).

1850-51

FONSSAGRIVES, *Prof. Jean-Baptiste*.

'La répression de la traite sur mer dans le Golfe de Bénin (1850-1851); mémoires de M. le Professeur Fonssagrives', *L'Afrique Libre*, 31.12.1912 et seq.

For Dr Fonssagrives's medical treatise written immediately after his service on the steam frigate *L'Eldorado*, see 1822 STORMONT. He died in 1884, and it is interesting to find another Jean-Baptiste Fonssagrives active in the 1890s in the colonial administration in Dahomey.

1850-51

FOOTE, Andrew Hull, *Cdr U.S.N.*

*Africa and the American Flag*, New York, 1854; 2nd ed. 1862.

facs. London, 1970

Foote had commanded the U.S. Navy's anti-slave trade squadron in West African waters. See also 1853 LYNCH.

1850s

GRAMBERG, Jan Simon Gerhardus

*Schetsen van Afrikas Westkust*, Amsterdam, 1861.

Gramberg went to the Gold Coast in the Dutch government service and later tried to establish a plantation on the River Pra. He also wrote articles for the periodical *De Gids* which in 1868 were reprinted as *De Goudkust*.

(1850)

LIBERIA...

*Liberia: Report of the Naval Committee to the U.S. House of Representatives*, Washington D.C., 1850.

The report recommended the establishment of a steamship service to help promote the emigration of free persons of colour; an appendix from the American Colonization Society is added.

1850-61

HUTCHINSON, Dr Thomas Joseph

- (1) *Narrative of the Niger, Tshadda and Binue exploration...*, London, 1855.  
facs. 1966
- (2) *Impressions of West Africa...*, London, 1858. facs. 1970
- (3) *Ten years' wandering among the Ethiopians, with sketches of the manners of the civilised and uncivilised tribes, from Senegal to Gaboon*, London, 1861.  
facs. 1967

The Irish Dr Hutchinson first went to West Africa as a ship's surgeon (and served in this capacity on the 1854 Niger expedition; see 1854 BAIKIE). He held extreme views on race and was once described (by 1863 BURTON!) as 'knowledgable but eccentric'. In 1855 he was appointed British consul for the Bights of Benin and Biafra, but was dismissed in 1861 on the ground that he was too partial to the interests of the Liverpool traders.

1850

NEVES, António Rodrigues

*Memória da expedição a Cassange commandada pelo Major Graduado Francisco de Salles Ferreira em 1850*, Lisbon, 1854.

1850

PANET, Léopold

*Première exploration du Sahara occidental: relation d'un voyage du Sénégal au Maroc, 1850*. Paris, 1968.

A reprint, with an introduction by Robert CORNEVIN, of a piece which was first published in 1850 in *Revue Coloniale*.

c.1850-71

RAINY, William

*The censor censured, or the calumnies of Capt. Burton on the Africans of Sierra Leone refuted...*, London, 1865.

Rainy was a West Indian practising law in Sierra Leone. The calumnies were those in 1861 BURTON's *Wanderings in West Africa* (but note also the chapter on 'The Negro's place in Nature' in 1863 BURTON).

1850-51

RICHARDSON, James

*Narrative of a mission to central Africa performed in the years 1850 and 1851...*, ed. B. St. JOHN, 2 vols, London, 1853. facs. 1970

Until his death in Bornu in March 1851, Richardson was the official leader of the great expedition across the Sahara and through the central Sudan of which eventually 1849 BARTH was the only survivor. See also 1845 RICHARDSON.

# 1851 - 1865

c.1851-53

BARBER, Mary Ann Serrett

*Oshielle, or village life in the Yoruba country, from the journals and letters of a catechist there...*, London, 1857.

The author secured her material via the missionaries 1836 TOWNSEND and 1841 GOLLMER. She wrote many other missionary and evangelical works, some of them tales for children. Cf. 1853 TUCKER.

1851

BOUËT, Auguste, *Lieut. de Vaisseau*

- (1) 'Le royaume de Dahomey: relation du voyage de M. le Lieutenant de Vaisseau Auguste Bouët...', *L'Illustration*, Nos. 490-92, juillet, 1852.
- (2) Jean-Claude NARDIN, 'La reprise des relations franco-dahoméennes au XIX<sup>e</sup> siècle: la Mission d'Auguste Bouët...', *CEA*, 7 (1967) 59-126.

In May 1851, Auguste Bouët, the brother of 1838 BOUËT-WILLAUMEZ, was sent to Abomey by the French government to improve its relations with Ghezo. His articles in *L'Illustration* were aimed at a popular audience, but NARDIN has printed his official report, together with the treaty that Bouët concluded with Ghezo an agreement regulating the Régis factory at Whydah.

(1851)

CASTELNAU, Francis de la Porte de

*Renseignements sur l'Afrique centrale et sur une nation d'hommes à queue qui s'y trouveraient, d'après les rapports des Nègres du Sudan, esclaves à Bahia*. Paris, 1851.

Castelnau, who had done major work as a naturalist in South America, was subsequently French consul at Bahia.

(1851)

ELLIOTT, John Bucknor

*The Lady Huntingdon's Connexion in Sierra Leone*, London, 1851.

Elliott was the son of a Nova Scotian, a notable Huntingdonian, and the father-in-law of 1859 HORTON.

1851

LAGOS

Papers relating to the British attack on Lagos in 1851 were printed by the U.K.Parliament as Parl.Pap. 1852 liv 1455. facs. IUP, Slave Trade, 90.

1851-57

SCOTT, Mrs Anna M.

- (1) *Glimpses of life in Africa*, New York, n.d. (1857).
- (2) *Day dawn in Africa, or progress of the Protestant Episcopal Mission at Cape Palmas, West Africa...*, New York, 1858. Mrs Scott was a missionary wife.

(1851)

SMITH, John

*Trade and travel in the Gulph of Guinea, with an account of the manners, habits, customs and religions of the inhabitants*, London, 1851.

Smith says that he had been surgeon or captain on a number of trading voyages. An identical book appeared in 1860 from another London publisher with the title:

*Adventures on the western coast of Africa, with an account of the manners...*

1851-58

ZIMMERMANN, Rev. Johannes

*A grammatical sketch of the Akra or Ga language... a vocabulary of the same, with an appendix on the Adanne dialect*, Stuttgart, 1858.

Zimmermann was a member of the Basel Mission. Cf. 1853 RIIS.

1852-65

FAIDHERBE, General Louis-Léon-César

- (1) *Notices sur la Colonie du Sénégal et sur les pays qui sont en relation avec elle*, Paris, 1859.
- (2) *L'avenir du Sahara et du Soudan*, Paris, 1863.
- (3) *Chapitres de géographie sur le nord-ouest de l'Afrique... à l'usage des écoles de la Sénégambie*, Saint-Louis, 1864.
- (4) *Le Sénégal: la France dans l'Afrique occidentale*, Paris, 1889.

facs. Liechtenstein, 1974

Following earlier service in Senegal, Faidherbe was governor of the colony in 1854-61 and 1863-65. He subsequently published works on Pular and other West African languages.

1852-57

TRAVASSOS VALDEZ, Francisco

- (1) *Six years of a traveller's life in western Africa*, 2 vols, London, 1861.
  - (2) *Africa ocidental: notícias e considerações*, Lisbon, 1864.
- Vol.1 of (1) deals with the coastlands from Senegal to Dahomey; Vol.2 begins with the islands of the Gulf of Guinea, but is mainly about Angola.

(1853-72)

CRUMMELL, Rev. Alexander

- (1) *The future of Africa, being addresses, sermons etc delivered in the Republic of Liberia*, New York, 1862.
- (2) *Africa and America*, Springfield, Mass. 1891.

Crummell, an African American with a Cambridge B.A., worked in Liberia for twenty years.



(1853)

LYNCH, William Francis, *Cdr U.S.N.*

*Report of Commander W.F. Lynch in relation to his mission to the coast of Africa*, Washington, n.d. (1853). Cf. 1850 FOOTE.

(1853-54)

RIIS, Hans Nicolaus

*Elemente des Akwapim-Dialects der Odschi-Sprache enthaltend grammatische Grundzüge und Wörterammlung nebst einer Sammlung von Sprächwörte der Eingebornen*, Basel, 1853.

Eng. trans.: *Grammatical outline and vocabulary of the Oji-language...*, Basel, 1854.

A pioneer linguistic work by a Basel missionary which includes a number of Twi proverbs with appropriate translations. Cf. 1847 CHRISTALLER and 1851 ZIMMERMAN.

1853-59

STEINHAUSER, Rev. August

Johannes MÜLLER, *August Steinhauser; ein Bild aus der westafrikanischer Mission*, Basel, 1874.

Steinhauser served with the Basel Mission on the Gold Coast during 1853-59; Müller went out to the Gold Coast in 1865.

(1853)

TUCKER, Miss (Sarah)

*Abbeokuta, or sunrise within the tropics; an outline of the origin and progress of the Yoruba mission*, London, 5 eds, 1853-56; New York, 5 eds, 1853-59.

Ger. ed. with additional material, by W. HOFFMAN, Berlin, 1859.

Fr. trans. 1854; Dutch trans. 1860.

Another missionary work by an author who had never been to Africa (cf. 1851 BARBER), but it is vividly written, is based closely on original material, and was deservedly popular. This Miss Tucker (d. c.1859) should not be confused (as in *National Union Catalog*) with Miss Charlotte Maria Tucker - 'A L[ady] O[f] E[ngland]': 1821-93 - who during c.1851-c.1875 wrote many books for children and then spent the last 18 years of her life as a missionary in India.

1853-62

UMAR al-FUTI, al-Hajj

*Voilà ce qui est arrivé: Bayan Ma Waqa'a...*, ed. & tr. Sidi MOHAMED MAHIBOU & Jean-Louis TRIAUD, C.N.R.S., Paris, 1983.

A good edition of Umar's explanation of events previous to, and his justification of, his conquest of the Hamdullahi regime in Masina.

1853-75

WHITFORD, John

*Trading life in western and central Africa*, Liverpool, 1877.

facs. London, 1967 [cont.]

In his introduction to the facsimile, A.G.HOPKINS says that Whitford was active in West Africa from 1853 to 1875, but that his book relates essentially to the period 1865-75.

1853-55

VOGEL, Dr Eduard

Vogel was sent out in 1853 at the head of a small party to support 1849 BARTH and then to explore the upper Benue. He joined Barth in 1854 and in the following year set out on his own mission on which he met his death. His journal did not survive, but there are attempts to reconstruct his travels from his surviving letters and other papers, e.g.

- (1) H. KLETKE, *Eduard Vogels Reise in Centralafrika; eine Darstellung seiner Forschungen und Erlebnisse nach den hinterlassenen Papieren*, Berlin, 1858.
- (2) V.-A. MALTE-BRUN, *Resumé historique de l'exploration faite dans l'Afrique centrale de 1853 à 1856 par le Dr Edouard Vogel*, Paris, [1858].
- (3) Hermann WAGNER, *Schilderung der Reisen und Entdeckungen des Dr Eduard Vogel...*, Leipzig, 1860.

See also some letters from Vogel and his companions in *JRGS*, 24 (1854) 276-88 and 25 (1855) 237-45, and Eduard SCHAUENBURG, *Reisen in Central-Afrika von Mungo Park bis auf Dr H.Barth und Dr Ed. Vogel*, Lahr, 1859.

(1854)

ADAMS, Henry Gardiner

*God's image in ivory, being a series of biographical sketches...demonstrative of the mental powers and intellectual capacities of the Negro race*; edited by H.G.Adams...[with] a concluding chapter... by Wilson Armistead, London, 1854.

Adams was the author of many works of natural history and also wrote two books on 1854 LIVINGSTONE. See also 1848 ARMISTEAD.

1854

BAIKIE, Dr William Balfour

*Narrative of an exploring voyage up the Rivers Kwo'ra and Bi'nue... in 1854*, London, 1856. facs. 1966

See also *JRGS*, 25 (1855). Baikie began his career as a Royal Navy surgeon but, after the death of 1835 BEECROFT, he took command of the 1854 official British Niger expedition (cf. 1850 HUTCHINSON). He commanded another Niger expedition in 1857 and founded the consulate at Lokoja. In *JRGS*, 37 (1867) there is an account of an overland journey he made in 1862 from Bida to Kano.

1854-69

CARRÈRE, Frédéric

*Le Sénégal et son avenir...*, Bordeaux, 1870. See also 1817 CARRÈRE and 1857 CARRÈRE.

1854-58

CLARKE, Rev. William H.

*Travels and explorations in Yorubaland, 1854-1858*, ed. J.A.ATANDA, Ibadan, 1972.

Clarke was an American Baptist missionary. Cf. 1849 BOWEN.

1854

CROWTHER, Bp Samuel Adjai

*Journal of an expedition up the Niger and Tshadda Rivers, undertaken by Macgregor Laird... in 1854*, London, 1855. facs. 1970

See 1821 CROWTHER; also 1841 SCHOEN & CROWTHER and 1832 LAIRD.

1854-55

LIVINGSTONE, David

*Missionary travels and researches in South Africa*, London, 1857; many subsequent eds. and trans.

Livingstone spent about eighteen months during his great trans-continental journey in what is today Angolan territory (this includes four months spent at Luanda).

1854

PEUCHGARIE, N. (l'aîné)

(1) *Côte de Guinée: exploration d'une partie de la côte de Gabon sous le rapport commercial*, Paris, 1855.

(2) *Côte occidentale d'Afrique: Côte d'Or - géographie, commerce, mœurs*, Paris, 1857.

Peuchgarie was a master mariner. (1) was originally published in *Revue de l'Orient*.

1855-1900

BARROW, Alfred Henry

*Fifty years in western Africa, being a record of the work of the West Indian Church on the banks of the Rio Pongo...*, London, 1900.

This mission on the Rio Pongas began in December 1855. See also 1855 LEACOCK.

1855

DORUGU

The life and travels of Dorugu, trans. & ed. Paul NEWMAN, pp.27-130 in A.H.M. KIRK-GREENE, *West African travels and adventures*, New Haven & London, 1971 (Original Hausa text in J.F.SCHÖN, *Magana Hausa*, London, 1886.)

Dorugu was a Hausa boy brought to England by 1849 BARTH. See also 1862 SCHÖN.

1855 onwards

FLICKINGER, Rev. Daniel Kumler

(1) *Offhand sketches of men and things in western Africa*, Dayton, Ohio, 1857 & 1860.

(2) *Ethiopia; or thirty years of missionary life in western Africa*, Dayton, Ohio, 1885 etc.

Flickinger was a minister (later Bishop) of the Church of the United Brethren in Christ who pioneered its work in Sierra Leone, which thereafter he constantly visited. He was a voluminous author; he also wrote *Our missionary work from 1852 to 1889* (Dayton, 1889), and there are eds of *Ethiopia...* dated from 1877 to 1907! See also Robert Elliott FLICKINGER, *The Flickinger Family History* (Des Moines, Indiana, 1927).

1855-57

HEWETT, John Frederick Napier

*European settlements on the west coast of Africa, with remarks on the slave trade and the supply of cotton*, London & New York, 1862. facs. 1969

Hewett had served in West Africa with the 1st West India Regiment. Christopher FYFE (*A history of Sierra Leone*, London, 1962, p.334) says of his book, 'a garrulous, superficial account in the Rankin tradition' (cf. 1834 RANKIN). Hewett also published a short account of the Wolof in *Proc. RGS*, 1 (1857).

1855-56

LEACOCK, Rev. Hamble James

Rev. Henry CASWALL, D.D., *Leacock, the martyr of the Pongas; being a memoir of the Rev. Hamble James Leacock, leader of the West Indian Mission to West Africa*, London, 1857.

See also 1855 BARROW, 1858 NEVILLE.

(1855)

NESBITT, William

*Four months in Liberia, or African Colonization exposed*, Pittsburg, 1855.

facs. New York, 1969

The author was an African-American; his book provoked a rejoinder from 1857 WILLIAMS.

c.1855-65

RICARD, Dr François-Pierre

(1) *Hygiène des entreprises à la partie intertropicale de la côte occidentale d'Afrique*, Paris, 1855.

(2) 'Note sur les boeufs porters au Sénégal', *Revue Coloniale*, 15 (1855).

(3) *Le Sénégal: étude intime*, Paris, 1865.

Ricard was a naval surgeon whose knowledge of Senegal extended back to at least the mid 1850s and who had earlier been based in Gabon, where he acquired the experience that occasioned *Hygiène des entreprises*. . . This title suggests that he might have been connected with the trading house of Ricard.

1855-57

SCHLEGEL, Rev. Johannes Bernhard

(1) *Schlüssel zur Ewe-Sprache... mit Wörtersammlung... Sprüchwörtern... und einigen Fabeln der Eingeborenen*, Bremen & Stuttgart, 1856-57.

(2) Heinrich KNECHT, *Erinnerungen an meinen selig entschlafenen Freund... Bernhard Schlegel*, Bremen, 1869.

While with the Bremen Mission at Keta, Schlegel was a pioneer in the study of Ewe.

1855-57

THOMAS, Rev. Charles W.

*Adventures and observations on the west coast of Africa*, Mobile, 1860.

Thomas served as chaplain in the anti-slave trade squadron of the U.S.Navy; his book describes cruising between Morocco and Angola.

1856-65

DU CHAILLU, Paul Belloni

- (1) *Exploration and adventures in equatorial Africa, 1856-59...*, New York & London, 1861; Fr. ed. 1863. facs. London, 1945
- (2) *A journey to Ashangoland and further penetration into equatorial Africa*, New York & London, 1867; Fr. ed. 1868.

Du Chaillu, born c.1831, would seem to have been the illegitimate son of a French trader in Réunion by a mulatto woman. By c.1848 he had followed his father to Gabon, where he became the protégé of the American missionaries John and Jane Wilson (see 1834 WILSON). In 1852, on the Wilsons' recommendation, Du Chaillu became a teacher of French in a girls' school in the U.S.A. The interest attracted by his stories of Africa and by some natural history specimens he had brought with him to America apparently inspired him to write his first book, which became famous for its vivid account of gorillas and their life. But the authenticity of the book and, indeed, the extent to which its author had penetrated beyond the coastlands, were immediately questioned (see, e.g., issues of *The Times* and *The Athenaeum* for 1861; 1862 READE). One critic wrote that Du Chaillu's book was 'no more than a cheap popular book of travels, written to meet the taste of the American public'. It is now apparent that much of it had been indiscriminately put together from borrowings from a variety of sources (including 1834 WILSON). In an attempt to silence his critics, Du Chaillu returned to Gabon and in 1862-63, despite some disasters, he did travel in unmapped territory and report on forest people of small stature.

Following his second book, Du Chaillu wrote many others, including *The country of the Dwarfs* (New York, 1871; London, 1872) and a number of explicitly popular or abbreviated accounts of his adventures, some of which were intended for children.

See Harry J. BUCHER, Jr, 'Canonization by repetition: Paul Du Chaillu in historiography', *RFHOM*, 66 (1979) 15-32.

(1856)

LEE, Mrs Sarah

*Sir Thomas, or the adventures of a Cornish baronet in north-western Africa*, London, 1856; later entitled *Adventures in Fanti-land*, London n.d. (1886); New York, 1887.

Like *The African wanderers* (1847), this is an adventure story for children which draws on the author's own experience, in this case of the Gold Coast. See 1816 LEE and 1847 LEE.

1856

RÉPIN, Dr A.

'Voyage au Dahomey, par M. le Docteur Répin, ex-chirurgien de la Marine Impériale, textes et dessins inédits', *Le Tour du Monde, nouveau journal des voyages* (Paris), Nos. 161, 162 & 163, (1863).

1856-59

SCALA, Giambattista

*Memorie di Giambattista Scala, Sampierdarena, 1862.*

Scala was a Genoese trader at Lagos, and became consul there for the Kingdom of Savoy.

1856-58

VALLON, A., *Lieut. de Vaisseau*

'Le Royaume de Dahomey', *Rev. Maritime et Coloniale*, (1861) 2, 332-63, & 3, 329-58.

Vallon was a French naval officer based at Whydah who twice visited Abomey: his article is especially informative on the Dahomey court and political and military organisation.

1856-57

WEST, Rev. Daniel

Thomas WEST, *Life and journal of the Rev. Daniel West... deputation to the Wesleyan mission stations on the Gold Coast...*, London, 1857.

Daniel West was sent on a visitation to the Wesleyan mission stations in western Africa; after visiting Sierra Leone, Bathurst, the Gold Coast, Lagos and Abeokuta, he died on the homeward voyage.

1857/73

BASTIAN, Adolf

(1) *Ein Besuch in San Salvador, der Hauptstadt des Königsreichs Congo*. Bremen, 1859.

(2) *Die deutsche Expedition an der Loango-Küste*, 2 vols, Jena, 1874-75.

In the 1880s and 1890s, Bastian published books on fetish, mythology and psychology in the Guinea coastlands.

1857-59

BOWEN, Bishop John

*Memorials of John Bowen D.D.*, London, 1862. Bowen had been Bishop in Sierra Leone.

1857

CARRÈRE, Frédéric [ & HOLLE, Paul ]

*Le siège par Al Alghi du fort de Médine au pays de Kasson*, Paris, 1858.

Carrère was the author of this contemporary account (first printed in *Revue Coloniale* for 1857) of the siege of Medine by al-Hajj 'Umar, but his information came mainly from his friend Paul Holle, the commander of the French defence. In addition to the other works entered under 1817 and 1854, Carrère was also the author of a number of legal works which were published from Saint-Louis.

1857-59

CROWTHER, Bp Samuel Adjai, & TAYLOR, Rev. J. C.

*The Gospel on the banks of the Niger; journals and notices of the native missionaries accompanying the Niger expedition of 1857-59*, London, 1859.  
facs. 1968

See also 1862 CROWTHER & TAYLOR.

1857

GLOVER, Sir John Hawley

A.C.G. HASTINGS, *The voyage of the Dayspring, being the journal of the late Sir John Glover...*, London, 1926.

Hastings prints Glover's journal of 1854 BAIKIE's second voyage up the Niger.

1857-58

KERDIJK, Lodewijk P.

*West Afrika 1857/1858: Reisjournaal van Lodewijk Kerdijk*, ed. A. F. SCHEPEL, Schiedam, 1978.

Kerdijk was sent to western Africa on behalf of the Rotterdam trading company Kerdijk & Pincoff; he visited Bathurst, Freetown, Monrovia, Lagos, Fernando Po, Cabinda and Luanda before ending up at Elmina, where he spent some time.

1857-58

SIMON, Capt. Théodore

(1) *Rapport du Cap. Simon, autorisé à recruter des émigrans sur les Côtes... d'Afrique...*, Commandant du Trois-Mats Regina Coeli, Nantes, n.d. (1858); another ed. Nantes, n.d. (1859).

(2) *Quelques mots sur la réclamation... par le Capitaine Simon... à l'occasion des pertes éprouvées par lui lors du conflit survenu à Monrovia en avril 1858*, Nantes, n.d. (1861).

Simon had argued in a pamphlet published at Nantes in 1855 that the development of the French colonies of Reunion and in the West Indies could be improved if labour were recruited for them in Africa. In 1857 the French authorities authorised him to recruit from both the east and the west coasts.

(1857)

WILLIAMS, Rev. Samuel

*Four years in Liberia; a sketch of the life of the Rev. Samuel Williams, with remarks on the missions, manners and customs of the natives of western Africa, together with an answer to Nesbitt's book*, Philadelphia, 1857.

Cf. 1855 NESBITT.

facs. New York, 1969.

1858

COWAN, Rev. Alexander M.

*Liberia, as I found it in 1858*, Frankfort (Kentucky), 1858.

After twelve years as Agent for the Kentucky Colonization Society, Cowan thought that published reports presented an inadequate account of the condition of Liberia, and went out to see things for himself.

1858?

GUILLEVIN, Lt M.

*Voyage dans l'intérieur du Royaume de Dahomey*, Paris, 1862.

This was originally published in *Nouvelles Annales des Voyages*, June 1862. Guillevin gives no date for his journey to Abomey, but Gezo was still king, so it cannot have been later than 1858.

1858

MAY, Daniel J., *Master, R.N.*

'Journey to the Yoruba and Nupe countries in 1858', *JRGS*, 30 (1860) 212-33.

May was chosen by 1854 BAIKIE as his righthand man. On Baikie's second expedition (1857-59), May was sent overland from Rabba to the coast and back with mails, but was later dismissed from the expedition.

1858-73

MONTEIRO, Joachim John

*Angola and the River Congo*, London, 1875; New York, 1876. facs. 1968

Monteiro was in Angola as a mining engineer; his informative book just touches the Congo.

(1858)

NEVILLE, Rev. William Latimer

*Journal of a voyage from Plymouth to Sierra Leone, with notices of Madeira, Teneriffe, Bathurst...*, London, 1858.

Neville went to West Africa as an agent of the West Indian Church Association for the furtherance of the Gospel in western Africa. There is a *Life* by Frank W. JONES (1965). See also 1855 LEACOCK.

(1858)

ROY, Cécil-Jean-Noël-Élie

[ *Notice sur ] les colonies françaises en 1858*, Paris, 1858.

There appear to be two editions of this, one with the words *Notice sur* in the title and one without. Roy is described as 'agent central des banques coloniales'.

1858-61

COLLECTION: BA, Oumar

*La pénétration française au Cayor*, New York, 1976.

Documents from the Senegal archives.

1859-60

CAMPBELL, Robert

(1) *A pilgrimage to my motherland; an account of a journey among the Egbas and Yorubas of Central Africa in 1859-60*. New York & Philadelphia, 1861; London, 1861 (with slightly different title).

(2) *A few facts relating to Lagos, Abbeokuta and other sections of Central Africa*, Philadelphia, 1860.

See note to 1859 DELANY.

1859-60

COLE, William

*Life in the Niger, or the journal of an African trader*, London, 1862.

This describes a visit to Abo.



1859-60

DELANY, Martin Robison

*Official report of the Niger Valley exploring party...*, New York & London, 1861.

Campbell and Delany, two African Americans, went to Yorubaland to investigate the possibilities for their people to settle there. Cf. 1859 CAMPBELL.

1859-74

HORTON, Dr James Africanus Beale

It is not an easy matter to decide where to place Horton's writings in this *Guide*. He was born in Sierra Leone in 1835 and, after qualifying in medicine in London (MRCS 1858) and Edinburgh (MD 1859), he served as an army surgeon in most of the parts of West Africa in which British troops were stationed. He died in 1882. Most of his publications appeared in the 1860s and 1870s, but they clearly draw on his earlier experience. They are therefore all placed together from the date of his first publication.

- (1) *The medical topography of the west coast of Africa, with sketches of its botany*, London, 1859.  
Horton's Edinburgh MD thesis, but not solely concerned with medical matters.
- (2) *Political economy of West Africa... (the African view of the Negro's place in Nature). Being an address to the African Aid Society*, London, 1865.  
Cf. 1863 BURTON. This work was later expanded into (4) below.
- (3) *Physical and medical climate and meteorology of the west coast of Africa*, London, 1867.
- (4) *West African countries and peoples... and a vindication of the African race*. London, 1868; modern ed., with introduction by George SHEPPERSON, Edinburgh, 1969.
- (5) *Guinea worm, or Dracunculus...*, London, 1868.
- (6) *Letters on the political condition of the Gold Coast...*, London, 1870.  
facs. 1970
- (7) *The diseases of tropical climate and their treatment*, London, 1874.

c.1860 onwards

JOHNSON, Rev. Samuel

*The history of the Yorubas...*, London, 1921; many later printings.

A classic account by a Yoruba author with an Oyo perspective. The text was completed in 1897 and its considerable ethnographic section (pp.26-140) could therefore relate to as far back as c.1860. On Johnson, see J.F.A.AJAYI in *Nigeria Magazine*, 81 (1964).

1860

MANNING, Edward

*Six months on a slaver; a true narrative*, New York, 1879.

c.1860

DYÂO, Yoro

R. ROUSSEAU, 'Le Sénégal d'autrefois: étude sur le Oualo: cahiers de Yoro Dyâo', *BCEHSAOF*, 12, 1-2 (1929); 16, 2 (1933) 237-98.

[cont.]

In 1860, Yoro Dyão was one of the earliest graduates of Governor Faidherbe's Ecole des Otages, and he served as a chief from 1861 to 1914. In his notebooks, he set out to write down all that he knew about the Wolof and their history. His 'Histoire des Damels de Cayor' was published in *Moniteur du Sénégal* (1864) Nos. 448-453. See the bibliographical references in C.BECKER & V.MARTIN, *BIFAN*, B, 36 (1974) 96-97.

1861-65

BORGHERO, Abbé François

Fr Borghero, a missionary on the Slave Coast from 1861 (and for a time held captive in Abomey), wrote a number of informative pieces on the Slave Coast, Dahomey and Yorubaland which were published in *Annales de la Propagation de la Foi* (Lyon) during 1862-67. He collaborated with 1863 BURTON on the making of a map of the Slave Coast which has often been reproduced (e.g. by 1861 LAFFITTE; and see letter to 1810 AVEZAC in *BSGP* July 1866). See also Dr E. CHARPET's account of him, 'Quatre années au Dahomey', *Bull. Soc. Géog. Lyon*, 4 (1881) (which would seem also to have been published from Paris as a separate volume). See also 1861 LAFFITTE.

1861-773

COURDIOUX, Abbé Ph.-E.

*Afrique Occidentale: Dictionnaire abrégé de la langue fôgbe ou dahoméenne*, Paris, 1879.

Courdioux lived on the Slave Coast as a missionary for many years. Only the French-Fôgbe part of the dictionary was published, having previously appeared in *Actes de la Société Philologique*, 9, 2 (1879). From about 1875 onwards, Cordioux wrote and illustrated numerous articles about the Slave Coast and Dahomey which were published in *Missions Catholiques*.

1861-64

BURTON, Capt. (later Sir, Richard Francis

- (1) *Wanderings in West Africa, from Liverpool to Fernando Po*, by a F.R.G.S., 2 vols, London, 1863.
- (2) *Abeokuta and the Cameroons Mountains; an exploration*, 2 vols, London, 1863.
- (3) *Wit and wisdom from West Africa; or a book of proverbial philosophy, idioms, enigmas and laconisms*, London, 1865.

During 1861-64, Burton was based in Fernando Po as British consul for the Bights of Benin and Biafra. When on leave in London in 1863, he was one of the founders of the Anthropological Society, and his writings tend to display a new spirit of Europeans' feeling of 'scientific' superiority to Black peoples and their societies and works. This occasioned the attack on him by 1850 RAINY. Two more precisely dateable books by Burton may be found under the dates 1862 and 1863.

1861

DURRANT, William

'Kru coast, Cape Palmas and the Niger', in *Vacation tourists and notes of travel in 1861*, ed. (Sir) F[rancis] GALTON, Cambridge & London, 1862.

1861-64

LAFFITTE, *Abbé J.*

- (1) *Le Dahomé; souvenirs de voyage et de mission*, Tours, 1873 etc.  
 (2) *Le pays des Nègres et la Côte des Esclaves*, Tours, 1876 etc.

There were many later editions of both these books. The 4th ed. of *Le Dahomé*, published in 1880, includes a notice by 1861 BORGHIERO.

1861

LAGOS

Papers relating to the British occupation of Lagos in 1861 were printed by the United Kingdom Parliament as Parl.Pap. 1862 lxi 2982, 3003 (facsimile; IUP, Slave Trade, 91).

1862-63

BEURMANN, *Karl Moritz von*

Beurmann (b.1835) was inspired by the example of 1849 BARTH to learn Arabic and natural history and to travel in Africa. After travelling in the Nile valley, in 1862 he crossed the Sahara from Benghazi to Bilma, Kanem and Bornu. In 1863 he was killed in Wadai. Most of his papers were lost, but letters from him were published in *Petermanns Mittheilungen* for 1861 and 1864. These and other papers have been translated into French and edited:

Marc FRANCONIE, *Karl Moritz von Beurmann: voyages et explorations, 1860-63*, St. Illide, 1973.

1862-63

BURTON, *Capt. (later Sir) Richard Francis*

*Two trips to gorilla land and the cataracts of the Congo*, 2 vols, London, 1876.

The first trip, to 'gorilla land' (i.e. Gabon), a consequence of 1856 DU CHAILLU, was in 1862; the second trip, to the lower Congo, was in 1863. See 1861 BURTON.

1862

CROWTHER, *Bp Samuel Adjai*, & TAYLOR, *Rev. J.C.*

*The Gospel on the banks of the Niger*, No. II; *Journals and notices of the native missionaries on the River Niger*, 1862. London, 1863.

(1862)

HAMILTON, *Archibald*

*The River Niger and the prospects of discovery and commerce in central Africa* ..., text of a lecture delivered in 1862 at the Bromley Literary Institute, and reprinted in London in 1969.

Hamilton was the executor of 1832 LAIRD, who had died in 1861, and in 1863-65 he was a promoter of the Company of African Merchants.

1862-63/1868-70

READE, William Winwood

- (1) *Savage Africa, being the narrative of a tour in equatorial, south-western and north-western Africa*, London & New York, 1863; 2nd ed. 1864.

facs. New York, 1967

- (2) *African sketchbook*, 2 vols, London, 1873.

Winwood Reade crammed into a short life of 36 years (1838-75) 'a range of travel in and writing about Africa which was probably unique' (George Shepperson in *An African miscellany for John Hargreaves*, Aberdeen, 1983). In addition to the two books above, which deal with the coastlands from the Senegal to Angola, there are his *The story of the Ashanti Campaign* (1874), for which he was *The Times* correspondent, and *The Martyrdom of Man* (1872), in which he set out to show that Black Africa was 'not cut off from the mainstream of events as writers of philosophical history have always maintained'.

(1862)

SCHÖN, Rev. James Frederick

*Grammar of the Hausa language*, London, 1862.

This includes, inter alia, a short account of the story of the slave boy 1855 DORUGU. Schön's works on the Hausa language began to appear in 1842 and culminated in:

*A Hausa reading book, with the rudiments of grammar and vocabularies and traveller's Vade Mecum*, London, 1877.

See also 1841 SCHÖN, 1847 KOELLE.

1862-63 WILMOT, Arthur Parry Eardley, R.N.. (later Vice-Admiral)

*Despatches from Commodore Wilmot respecting his visit to the King of Dahomey in December 1862 and January 1863*, Parl.Pap. 1863 lxxiii 3179.

facs. IUC, Colonies: Africa, 50

Wilmot also wrote *A letter... to Viscount Palmerston... on... the African slave trade and on the necessity of increasing the African squadron* (London, 1853).

1863

ABEOKUTA

Papers relating to Abeokuta and the missionaries there were printed by the U.K. Parliament as Parl.Pap. 1863 xxxviii 512, 3212 (facs. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 63).

1863-64

BURTON, Capt. (later Sir), Richard Francis

*A mission to Gelele, King of Dahome...*, 2 vols, London, 1864; 2nd ed., enlarged, London, 1864; 3rd, posthumous, edition by Lady Isabel Burton, London, 1893.

Fr. trans. 1864.

Modern ed. by C.W.NEWBURY (London & New York, 1966), omitting the chapter on 'The Negro's place in Nature' and some of the additions to the 2nd ed.

Articles on Dahomey by Burton appear in the anthropological journals for 1865; one is reprinted in N.M.PENZNER, *Selected papers...by Sir R.Burton* (New York, 1924). See also 1861 BURTON & 1861 BORGHERO; also 1850 RAINY and 1859 HORTON (item 2).

1863-66

MAGE, *Lt de Vaisseau* Abdon Eugène

- (1) *Du Sénégal au Niger: relation du voyage d'exploration de MM. Mage et Quintin au Soudan occidental...*, Paris, 1867.  
 (2) *Voyage dans le Soudan occidental...*, Paris, 1868; abridged ed. 1872.

facs. 1980

After an earlier journey to Tagant, Mage, now accompanied by Dr. L.QUINTIN, a naval surgeon, undertook a two year mission to the Tukolor empire. The 1867 and 1868 books have identical contents except that the latter has ten additional pages on Segu and additional appendices. Quintin published some ethnographic material in *BSGP* in 1881, and in 1869 he presented a thesis at the University of Paris. An account by Mage of his journey to Tagant was published in *Revue Algérienne et Coloniale* in 1860.

(1863)

MAVIDAL, Jérôme

*Le Sénégal: son état présent et son avenir*, Paris, 1863.

In the 1860s Mavidal was editing a French annual register and also a collection of French parliamentary papers.

1864-65

ORD, *Col.* (later *Major-General Sir*), Harry St. George

*Report on the West African settlements*, Parl.Pap. 1865 xxxvii 170.

facs. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 5.

Ord first went to West Africa as a Royal Engineer Captain in 1849-50, and in 1855-56, when he was a Major, he was sent out by the Colonial Office to report on the Gold Coast. When he was sent out to West Africa again, in 1864-65 when he was a Colonel, he had already embarked on a second successful career as a colonial governor. His 1865 Report led on to the Parliamentary Select Committee of the same year; see 1865 WEST AFRICAN COMMITTEE.

(1865)

ANEASO

*Aneas, der Neger aus dem Ibo-Lande*. Basel, 1865; 2nd ed. 1883.

Adam Jones has suggested (HA, 13 (1986) 231) that this story of an Igbo slave may have an English language source.

1865 (but see comment)

FLEURIOT de LANGLE, Alphonse-Jean-René,  
*Vicomte*

'Croisières à la côte d'Afrique', in *Le Tour du Monde*, 23, 26, 31 (1872-76).

Fleuriot was an officer in the French navy who in 1865, when a Rear-Admiral, led a cruise to West African waters, but who had previously - in 1840-44 - served in the West African squadron, had negotiated in London with 1836 BOUET and had contributed to his *Description Nautique des côtes de l'Afrique occidentale*. See also 1840 KERHALLET.

1865-67

ROHLFS, (Friedrich) Gerhard

- (1) *Reise durch Nord-Afrika vom Mittelländischen Meere bis zum Busen von Guinea, 1865 bis 1867*, Gotha, 1868, 1872.
- (2) *Land und Volk in Afrika: Berichte aus den Jahren 1865-1870*, Bremen, 1870.
- (3) *Quer durch Afrika: Reise vom Mittelmeer nach dem Tschad-See und zum Golf von Guinea*, 2 vols, Leipzig, 1874-75.

(1865)

VENN, Rev. Henry

*West African colonies: notices of the British colonies on the west coast of Africa*, London, 1865.

Venn never went to West Africa but, as Secretary of the Church Missionary Society, he was in a good position to gather original information.

(1865)

WEST AFRICAN COMMITTEE, The

*Report from the Select Committee of the House of Commons on the West African Settlements*, Parl.Pap. 1865 v 412.

facsim. IUP, Colonies: Africa, 5.

# SOURCES AFTER 1865

NOTE. While no systematic attempt has been made to search out entries after 1865, it is thought that it would be useful if the following were incorporated in the *Guide*.

1867-68

JEEKEL, Lt C. A.

*Onze bezittingen op de kust van Guinea*, Amsterdam, 1869.

Jeekel was a naval officer; his account was first published in *Onze Tijd*.

1868

ANDERSON, Benjamin J. K.

*Narrative of a journey to Musardu, the capital of the western Mandingoes*, New York, 1870.

This has an appendix (published separately and distributed mainly through the Smithsonian Institution in Washington D.C.) which reproduces in facsimile an Arabic letter from the King of Musardu together with a translation by 1850 BLYDEN.

A facsimile edition (London, 1971) of the above book also includes:  
*Narrative of the expedition despatched to Musahdu by the Liberian government... in 1874*, ed. Frederick STARR, Monrovia, 1912.

Anderson was a Liberian, and his mission was sponsored by 1850 BLYDEN.

(1868

SIBTHORPE, Aaron Belisarius Cosmo

(1) *The history of Sierra Leone*, London, 1868, and later eds.

(2) *The geography of Sierra Leone*, London, 1868, and later eds.

Sibthorpe, a Sierra Leonian, became a schoolteacher in 1865. Christopher FYFE, while praising the first editions of these two works, comments that the later editions became 'increasingly personal' (*A History of Sierra Leone* (Oxford, 1962), pp.381-2). R.W.JULY has produced a modern edition of the 3rd ed. of the *History* (London & New York, 1970). See FYFE, 'A.B.C.Sibthorpe: a tribute', *HA*, 19 (1992).

1869-73

BONNAT, Marie-Joseph

Jules GROS, *Voyages, aventures et captivité de J. Bonnat chez les Achantis*, Paris, 1884.

Bonnat, a Frenchman, the trading manager of the Basel Mission post at Ho, was taken prisoner by the same Asante army that captured 1869 RAMSEYER & KUEHNE. Bonnat died in 1881, but Gros had use of his substantial diaries (which are now being prepared for publication in the Centre des Etudes d'Outre-Mer in Paris). Bonnat later returned to Asante as a promoter of trading and gold-mining activities.

1869-74

NACHTIGAL, Dr Gustav

*Sahara und Sudan: Ergebnisse sechsjähriger Reisen in Afrika*, 3 vols: Vol.1, Berlin, 1879; Vol.2, Berlin, 1881; Vol.3, Leipzig, 1889. facs. Graz, 1967  
Fr. trans. of Vol.1 only, 1881.  
Modern Eng. trans. by A.G.B. & H.J.FISHER, annotated, 4 vols, London, 1972-87.

1869-73

RAMSEYER, Rev. Friedrich August (sometimes Fritz)  
& KÜHNE, Rev. Johannes

*Vier Jahre in Asante: Tagebücher der Missionare Ramseyer und Kühne...*, ed.  
H. GUNDERT, Basel, 1875; 2nd ed. 'improved and enlarged', Basel, 1875.  
Eng. trans., from first German ed., *Four years in Ashantee...*, ed. Mrs  
WEITBRECHT, London, 1875; 2nd ed. London, 1878.  
Fr. trans., from 2nd German ed., *Quatre ans chez les Achantis...*, Paris &  
Neuchâtel, 1876.

The various editions and translations of this work are by no means identical in their contents; differences are discussed, with relation to the surviving MS, in Adam JONES, 'Four years in Asante; one source or several?', *HA*, 18 (1991) 173-203. In addition to the 'original' publications listed above, there are many subsequent, often abbreviated, versions in the various languages.

1871-72

CROWTHER, Bp Samuel Adjai

*Niger Mission: Bishop Crowther's report on the overland journey from Lokoja to Bida... and thence to Lagos, 1871-2*, London, 1872.

See 1821 CROWTHER. During his long career, Crowther was also the author of a number of linguistic works, for example:

- (1) *A vocabulary of the Yoruba language*, London, 1843.
- (2) *A grammar of the Yoruba language*, London, 1852.
- (3) *A grammar and a vocabulary of the Nupe language*, London, 1864.
- (4) *Vocabulary of the Ibo language*, London, 1882.

(1871)

JONGE, Jhr Jan Karel

*De oorsprong van Neerlands bezittingen op de kust van Guinea...*, The Hague, 1871.

This contains original material on the origins of the Dutch settlements.

1871-72 (but see note)

SKERTCHLY, J. Alfred

- (1) *Dahomey as it is, being a narrative of eight months' residence in that country... also an appendix on Ashantee*, London, 1874.
- (2) *Sport in Ashanti, or Melinda the Caboceer: a tale of the Gold Coast*, London, 1876.

(2) is sometimes titled: *Melinda the Caboceer, or Sport in Ashanti...* Skertchly was active on the Gold Coast before he made his visit to Dahomey.





# INDEX OF AUTHORS AND OTHER HEADWORDS

cABD ALLAH b. MUHAMMAD, al-Turudi	1780
cABD al-QADIR b. al-MUSTAFA	1701
cABD al-SALAM SHABYNI, al-Hajj	See 1787 JACKSON, 1788 JACKSON
ABDERRAHMAN b. ABDALLAH b. cIMRAN b. cAMIR es-SADI	1655
ABDULLAH dan FODIO	See 'ABD ALLAH b. MUHAMMAD
ABDUL RAHAHMAN	1762
ABEOKUTA, Parliamentary paper re	1863
ABREU, Aleixo de	1623
ABREU de BRITO, Domingos de	1591
ABREU de LIMA, L.A.	1839
ABSON, Lionel	1744
ABU BAKR al-SIDDIQ, of Timbuktu	1800
ADAMS, Henry Gardiner	1834
ADAMS, Capt. John	1786
ADAMS, Robert	1810
ADANSON, Michel	1749
AFONSO, Manicongo	1506
AFRICAN ASSOCIATION, The	1790
AFRICAN CAPTIVES, The	1839
AFRICAN INSTITUTION, The	1807
'AFRIQUE: NOTICE SUR LE SÉNÉGAL'	1828
AFZELIUS, Adam	1795
AHMAD BABA	1615
AHMAD b. FURTU (or FARTUA)	1564
ALBERTINUS, Aegidius	1604
ALEXANDER, Rev. Dr Archibald	1846
ALEXANDER, Sir James Edward	1835
ALEXIS de SAINT-LO, Fr	1635
ALFONCE, Jean	1536
ALI EISAMI	1808
ALLEN, William, Cdr R.N.	1832, 1841
ALMADA, André Alvares de	See ALVARES de ALMADA
ALVARES, Fr Manuel	1607
ALVARES de ALMADA, André	1594
ALVARES de ANDRADE, Bernadino António	1790
AMISTAD	See 1839 AFRICAN CAPTIVES; 1839 BARBER
AMON, Chevalier d'	See DAMON, Chevalier
ANANIA, Giovanni Lorenzo	1573
ANDERSON, Benjamin K.	1868
ANDRADE, Bernadino António Alvares de	See ALVARES de ANDRADE
ANDRADE, Francisco de	1582
ANDRÉ, Bartolemeu	1606
ANDREA da PAVIA, Fr	1687
ANEASO	1865
ANECDOTES OF AFRICA	1730
ANGUIANO, Juan Garcia Mateo de	1645
ANNIABA	1685
ANONYMOUS SPANIARD	1590
ANONYMOUS PORTUGUESE	1590
ANONYMOUS PORTUGUESE PILOT	1545
ANTONIO LAUDATI da GAETA. Fr	1657
ANTONIO de TERUEL, Fr	1648
ANTONIO ZUCHELLI da GRADISCA, Fr	1696
ARAGO, Jacques-Etienne-Victor	See 1827 HOLMAN

- ARAÚJO, António José de  
 ARMISTEAD, Wilson  
 ARNOBAT, Charles Pierre Coste d'  
 ARRHENIUS, Capt. K.A.  
 ARTHUS, Gotthard  
 ASA-ASA  
 ASHMUN, Rev. Jehudi  
 ATKINS, John, Surgeon, R.N.  
 ATRI, Fr Marcellino d'  
 AUBREY, T. surgeon  
 AUGSPURGER, Johann Paul  
 AVITY, Pierre d'  
 AVEZAC-MACAYA, Marie-Armand-Pascal d'  
 AZURARA, Gomes Eanes de
- See COSTA ARAÚJO  
 1848, 1854  
 See COSTE d'ARNOBAT  
 See 1772 NORRIS, 1787 WADSTROM  
 1603  
 1826  
 1821  
 1721  
 See MARCELLINO d'ATRI  
 1729  
 1641  
 1614  
 1810, 1837, 1844, 1845  
 See EANES de AZURARA
- BACON, Rev. Ephraim & Rev. Samuel  
 BACON, Dr Francis  
 BAERLE (or BARLAEUS), Kaspar van  
 BAIKIE, Dr William Balfour  
 BAKER, Robert  
 BALANDIER, Prof. Georges  
 BANCAL, E.P.  
 BAPTISTA, Pedro Joã, & JOSÉ, Amaro  
 BARBER, John Warner  
 BARBER, Mary Ann Serrett  
 BARBOSA, João  
 BARBOT, James (brother of Jean BARBOT)  
 BARBOT, James (nephew of Jean BARBOT)  
 BARBOT, Jean (or John)  
 BAREZZI, Barrezzo  
 BARKER, Robert  
 BARLOW, Roger  
 BARREIRA, Fr Baltasar  
 BARRISTER, A  
 BARROS, João de  
 BARROW, Alfred Henry  
 BARTH, Dr Heinrich (or Henry)  
 BARTHELEMY, Édouard  
 BASTIAANSE, J.H. van BOUDYCK  
 BASTIAN, Adolf  
 BATTELL, Andrew  
 BAX, J.-B.  
 BÉAL, B.-A.  
 BEAULIEU, Augustin de  
 BEAVER, Capt. Philip  
 BEECHAM, Rev. John  
 BEECROFT, John, & KING, Dr J.B.  
 BELLEFOND(S), Nicolas Villault de  
 BENOIM, João, Prince  
 BENEZET, Anthony  
 BERTHOUT, J.M.  
 BEURMANN, Karl Moritz von  
 BERTRAND-BOCANDÉ, E.  
 BICKERSTETH, Rev. Edward  
 BJØRN, Andreas Riegelsen  
 BLUETT, Thomas  
 BLYDEN, Dr Edward Wilmot  
 BOILAT, Abbé P.- David  
 BOLD, Edward, Lt. R.N.
- 1820  
 1839  
 1637  
 1854  
 1562  
 1501  
 See 1822 STORMONT  
 1806  
 1840  
 1851  
 See 1600 LAVANHA  
 1699  
 1700  
 1678 (twice)  
 1605  
 1751  
 1541  
 1604  
 1848  
 1552  
 1855  
 1849 (twice)  
 1848  
 See BOUDYCK BASTIAANSE  
 1857  
 1589  
 See 1822 STORMONT  
 See 1822 STORMONT  
 1619  
 1792  
 1841  
 1835  
 See VILLAUT, Nicolas  
 1487  
 1762  
 1778  
 1862  
 1837  
 1800  
 1770; see also 1780 THAARUP  
 1730  
 1850  
 1843  
 1822

- BONAVENTURA da FIRENZE, *Fr* 1656  
 BONAVENTURA REBAUDO da CERIANA, *Fr* 1782  
 BONNAT, Marie-Joseph 1869  
 BONNÉ, C.H. 1802  
 BOONE, *Dr* 1760  
 BORGHERO, Abbé François 1861  
 BOSMAN, Willem (or William) 1688  
 BOTELER, Thomas, *Capt. R.N.* 1821  
 BOUCARD, Claude 1729  
 BOUDYCK BASTIAANSE, J.H.van 1845  
 BOUËT, Auguste, *Lt de Vaisseau* 1851  
 BOUËT-WILLAUMEZ, *Vice-Admiral* Louis-Édouard 1836  
 BOUFFLERS, Chevalier Stanislas-Jean de 1786  
 BOWDICH, Mrs Sarah  
     *See* LEE, Sarah; *See also*  
     1823 BOWDICH, Thomas Edward  
 BOWDICH, Thomas Edward 1817, 1821, 1823  
 BOWEN, Bp John, *Lt.D.* 1857  
 BOWEN, Rev. Thomas J. 1849  
 BOYLE, James, *Surgeon R.N.* 1831  
 BRAKEL, S. van 1670  
 BRAUN, Samuel  
     *See* BRUN, Samuel  
 BREW, Richard  
     *See* DEMARIN, John Peter  
 BRIDGE, Horatio, *Capt. U.S.N.* 1843  
 BRISSON, Pierre-Raymond de 1785  
 BRITISH MERCHANT, A  
     *See* 1745 POSTLETHWAYT  
 BRITO, Domingos de Abreu de  
     *See* ABREU de BRITO  
 BROQUANT, N. 1838  
 BROECKE, Pieter van den 1605  
 BRUE, *Sieur* André 1697  
 BRUN (or BRAUN), Samuel 1611  
 BRUNNER, *Dr* Samuel 1838  
 BRUNTON, Rev. Henry 1798  
 BRYSON, *Dr* Alexander 1847  
 BUENAVENTURA da CARROCERA, *Fr* 1658  
 BURTON, Sir Richard Francis 1861, 1862, 1863  
 BLurtonl, R. (Robert or Richard) 1686
- CA' DA MOSTO, Alvise da 1455  
 CADORNEGA, António de Oliveira de 1639  
 CAILLÉ, René 1819  
 CALTANISSETTA, *Fr* Luca da  
     *See* LUCA da CALTANISSETTA  
 CAMPBELL, Robert 1859  
 CAMSTRUP, Nicolas J. 1733  
 CANNECATTIM, Bernardo Maria de 1804  
 CANOT, Théodore  
     *See* CONNEAU, Théophilus  
 CAPELLIS, Hippolyte, *Comte de* 1785  
 CAPITEIN, Rev. Jacobus Eliza Johannes 1742  
 CARDOSO, *Fr* Mateus  
     *See* MATEUS CARDOSO  
 CARDOZO, João Carlos Fco  
     *See* FEO CARDOZO  
 CAREY, Mathew 1832  
 CARLI, *Fr* Denis de  
     *See* DIONIGI CARLI da PIACENZA  
 CARMELITE FATHERS 1584  
 CARNEIRO, António de Maris  
     *See* MARIS CARNEIRO  
 CARNES, Joshua A. 1840  
 CARRÈRE, Frédéric, & HOLLE, Paul 1817, 1854, 1857  
 CARREIRO, Diogo 1565  
 CARROCERA, *Fr* Buena Ventura de  
     *See* BUENAVENTURA de CARROCERA, *Fr*  
 CARSTENSEN, Edward James Arnold 1842  
 CARVALHO, Francisco Pirez de  
     *See* PIREZ de CARVALHO  
 CASSE, Jean-Baptiste  
     *See* DUCASSE

- CASTEL, F.  
 CASTELLO BRANCO, Garcia Mendes  
 CASTELLO BRANCO e TORRES, J.C.F.C.de  
 CASTELLO de VIDE, Fr Raphael de  
 CASTELNAU, Francis de la Porte de  
 CASTILHON, Jean-Louis  
 CASWALL, Rev. Dr Henry  
 CATÁLOGO DOS GOVERNADORES  
 CAVAZZI da MONTECUCCOLO, Fr G.A.  
 CELESTIN de BRUXELLES, Fr  
 CHAMBONNEAU, Louis Moreau de  
 CHANCEL, Ausone de  
 CHARANT, Antoine  
 CHARPENTIER, P.  
 CHAULMER, Charles  
 CHERUBINO da SAVONA, Fr  
 CHISHOLM, Dr Colin  
 CHOISEUL, Etienne-François, Comte de  
 CHRISTALLER, Rev. Johann Gottlieb  
 CHRISTENSEN, Balthasar Mathias  
 CHRISTIAN TRAVELLER, The  
 CHURCH, Mary  
 CLAPPERTON, Hugh, Cdr R.N.  
 CLARKE, Rev. John  
 CLARKE, Robert, M.R.C.S., Ed.  
 CLARKE, Rev. William H.  
 CLARKSON, Thomas  
 CLODORÉ, Jean  
 COCHELET, Charles  
 COELHO, Lemos Azevedo  
 COKER, Rev. Daniel  
 COLE, William  
 COLOMBIN de NANTES, Fr  
 COMPAGNON, P.  
 CONNEAU, Théophilus  
 CONSIDERATIONS ON THE PRESENT PEACE  
 COOLEY, William Desborough  
 CORREA, Fr Bras  
 CORRÉARD, Alexandre  
 CORREIA, Elias Alexandre da Silva  
 CORRY, Joseph  
 COSMÉ, Dr Francisco Damião  
 COSTA ARAÚJO, António José da  
 COSTE d'ARNOBAT, Charles-Pierre  
 COURDIOUX, Abbé Ph.-E.  
 COWAN, Rev. Alexander M.  
 COX, Rev. Melville B.  
 CROUCH, Nathaniel  
 CHRISTALLER, Rev. Johann Gottlieb  
 CHRISTENSEN, Balthasar Mathias  
 CHRISTIAN TRAVELLER, The  
 CHURCH, Mary  
 CLAPPERTON, Hugh, Cdr R.N.  
 CLARKE, Rev. John  
 CLARKE, Robert, M.R.C.S., Ed.  
 CLARKE, Rev. William H.  
 CLARKSON, Thomas  
 CLODORÉ, Jean  
 COCHELET, Charles  
 COELHO, Lemos Azevedo  
 COKER, Rev. Daniel  
 COLE, William  
 See 1822 STORMONT  
 See MENDES CASTELLO BRANCO  
 See FEO CARDOSO de BRANCO e TORRES  
 See RAPHAEL de CASTELLO de VIDE  
 1851  
 1769  
 See 1855 LEACOCK  
 1575  
 See GIOVANNI ANTONIO CAVAZZI  
 1681  
 See MOREAU de CHAMBONNEAU  
 See 1848 DAUMAS  
 1671  
 See  
 1654  
 1759  
 1793  
 1762  
 1847  
 1829  
 1841  
 1831  
 1825; See also 1826 DENHAM; 1825 LANDER  
 1841  
 1841  
 1854  
 1787  
 1670  
 1819  
 See LEMOS COELHO, Francisco de  
 1820  
 1859  
 1634  
 1716  
 1820  
 1753  
 1841  
 See 1617 MATEUS CARDOSO  
 See 1816 SAVIGNY  
 See SILVA CORREIA  
 1805  
 1770  
 1753  
 1729  
 1861  
 1858  
 1833  
 See 1686 B[urton], R.  
 1847  
 1829  
 1841  
 1831  
 1825; See also 1826 DENHAM; 1825 LANDER  
 1841  
 1841  
 1854  
 1787  
 1670  
 1819  
 See LEMOS COELHO, Francisco de  
 1820  
 1859

- COLOMBIN de NANTES, Fr 1634  
 COMPAGNON, P. 1716  
 CONNEAU, Théophilus 1820  
 CONSIDERATIONS ON THE PRESENT PEACE 1753  
 COOLEY, William Desborough 1841  
 CORREA, Fr Bras See 1617 MATEUS CARDOSO  
 CORRÉARD, Alexandre See 1816 SAVIGNY  
 CORREIA, Elias Alexandre da Silva See SILVA CORREIA  
 CORRY, Joseph 1805  
 COSMÉ, Dr Francisco Damião 1770  
 COSTA ARAÚJO, Antônio José da 1753  
 COSTE d'ARNOBAT, Charles-Pierre 1729  
 COURDIOUX, Abbé Ph.-E. 1861  
 COWAN, Rev. Alexander M. 1858  
 COX, Rev. Melville B. 1833  
 CROUCH, Nathaniel See 1686 B[urton], R.  
 CROW, Capt. Hugh 1790  
 CROWTHER, Bp Samuel Adjai 1821, 1841, 1854, 1857, 1862, 1871;  
     see also 1841 SCHÖN  
 CRUICKSHANK, Brodie 1834, 1848  
 CRUMMELL, Rev. Alexander 1853  
 CRUS, Luis Felis 1641  
 CUFFEE, Capt. Paul 1810  
 CUGOANO, Ottobah 1787  
 CUTLER, Nathaniel 1728
- DAENDELS, Herman Willem 1815  
 DAHOMET, Le 1746  
 DALZEL, Archibald 1767, 1799  
 DAMBERGER, Christian Frederic 1800  
 DAMON, Le Chevalier 1698  
 DANIELL, Dr William Freeman 1841  
 DAPPER, Olfert 1668  
 DARD, Charlotte-Adélaïde 1816  
 DARD, Jean 1816  
 DARRICAU, Charles-Augustin 1843  
 DASSEL, Thomas See 1591 RAINOLDS  
 DAUMAS, Melchior-Joseph-Eugène, &  
     CHANCEL, Ausone de 1848  
 DAVENANT, Charles 1697  
 DAVID, Pierre-Félix-Barthélemy 1744  
 DAVIES, Rev. William 1815  
 DAVITY, Pierre See AVITY  
 DEFOE, Daniel See 1722 JOHNSON  
 DELANY, Martin Johnson 1859  
 DELBÉE, Sieur See ELBÉE, Sieur d'  
 DEMANET, Abbé Jean-Baptiste 1764  
 DEMARIN, John Peter 1772  
 DENHAM, Major Dixon, CLAPPERTON, Cdr Hugh,  
     & OUDNEY, Dr Walter 1822  
 DENMAN, Admiral the Hon. Joseph 1848  
 DES MARCHAIS, Le Chevalier 1725  
 DESOUVRIÈRES, Fr Jean-Joseph See 1766 COLLECTION: CUVELIER  
 DESCRIPTION DE LA CÔTE 1828  
 DESCRIPTION NAUTIQUE 1814  
 DIÁRIO ANÔNIMO 1702  
 DIAS, Gastão Sousa See SOUSA DIAS  
 DICOMANO, Fr Raimondo da See RAIMONDO da DICOMANO  
 DIOGO do SANTÍSSIMO SACRAMENTO, Fr 1583

- DIONIGI CARLI da PIACENZA, *Fr.* & MICHEL  
ANGELO de GUATTINI da REGGIO, *Fr.* 1666  
DOCHARD, *Staff-Surgeon* See 1818 GRAY  
DONELHA, André 1574  
DOREN, Jan Baptiste Jozef van 1845  
DORNELAS, André See DONELHA  
DORUGU 1855  
DOS SANTOS, José Francisco 1844  
DOUBLET, Jean-François 1685  
DOUCHEZ, F. 1838  
DOUÉ, *Dr.* 1782  
DOUMET de SIBLAS, Jacques 1769  
DOUVILLE, Jean-Baptiste 1828  
DRAKE, *Capt.* Richard 1807  
DRALSÉ de GRAND PIERRE, *Le Sieur* 1712  
DUBOIS-FONTANELLE, Jean-Gaspard 1775  
DUCASSE, Jean-Baptiste 1687  
DU CHAILLU, Paul Belloni 1856  
DU JARRIC, Pierre 1608; see also 1600 GUERREIRO  
DUKE, Antera 1785  
DUKE, George See 1762 WORGE  
DULIRON, *Le Sieur* 1747  
DUNCAN, John 1845  
DUPUIS, Joseph 1820  
DUQUESNE, Abraham 1696  
DURAND, Jean-Baptiste-Léonard 1785  
DURÉCU, M. See 1801 LADURANTIE  
DURRANT, William 1861  
DYAO, Yoro 1860
- EAÑES de AZURARA, Gomes 1441  
EAST, David Jonathan 1844  
EINSIEDEL, Johann August von 1785  
ELBÉE, *Sieur d'* 1669  
ELLIOTT, John Bucnor 1851  
ENCISO, Martin Fernandes de 1519  
EQUIANO, Olaudah 1755  
ESTRÉES, *Vice-Admiral d'* 1670  
EXQUEMELIN, Alexandre Olivier See 1695 MONTAUBAN
- FALCONBRIDGE, Alexander 1785  
FALCONBRIDGE, *Mrs* Anna Maria 1791  
FAIDHERBE, *General* Louis-Léon-César 1852  
FARIA E (or Y) SOUSA, Manuel de 1666  
FARO, *Fr* André de 1663  
FAWKNER, *Capt.* James 1825  
FENNER, George 1566  
FENTON, *Capt.* Edward 1582  
FEO CARDOSO de CASTELLO BRANCO e TORRES,  
João Carlos 1575  
FERGUSSON, *Dr* William 1815  
FERREIRA PIRES, *Fr* Vicente 1797  
FERNANDES ALEMÃO, Valentim 1506  
FIGANIERE e MORÃO, Joaquim César de 1820  
FIGUEIREDO, Manuel de 1608  
FINCH, William 1607  
FLAURIOT de LANGLE, Alphonse-Jean-René, *Vicomte* 1865  
FLICKINGER, *Rev.* Daniel Kümmler 1855

FOCQUENBROCH, Willem Godschalk van	1667
FOLLIE, Louis-Guillaume	1784
FONSSAGRIVES, Dr Jean-Baptiste	1850; <i>see also</i> 1822 STORMONT
FONTENEAU, Jean	1544
FOOTE, Andrew Hall, Cdr U.S.N.	1850
FOOTE, Mrs Henry Grant	1842
FORBES, Frederick Edwyn, Lt R.N.	1848, 1849
FORSBERG, A.C.	1824
FOSSE, Eustache de la	<i>See</i> LA FOSSE
FOX, Rev. George Townsend	1849
FOX, Rev. William	1833
FRANCESCO MARIA GIOIA, Fr	1657
FRANCISCO de SANTIAGO, Fr	1680
FRANCISCUS, Erasmus	1669
FRANÇOIS de PARIS, Fr	1682
FREEMAN, Rev. Thomas Birch	1839
FRÉJUS, Roland de	1666
FROGER, François	1695
FROSSARD, Benjamin-Sigismond	1789
G---, J.S.	1753
GABY, Fr Jean-Baptiste	1687
GAETA, Fr Antonio Laudati da	<i>See</i> ANTONIO LAUDATI da GAETA
GAITINE, Fr Michel-Ange	<i>See</i> 1666 DIONIGI CARLI
GALVÃO, Antônio	1563
GAMA, Antônio de Saldanha da	<i>See</i> SALDANHA da GAMA
GAMBIA, Parliamentary papers re	1845
GATTINA, Fr Michael Angelo de	<i>See</i> 1666 DIONIGI CARLI
GENÄHLDE ALLER NATIONEN	1798
GEOFFROY de VILLENEUVE, René-Claude	1785
GEORG van GEEL, Fr	1652
GEORGII GELENSIS, Fr	1652
GIACINTO BRUGIOTTI da VETRALLA, Fr	1652; <i>see also</i> MATEUS CARDOSO
GEOFFROY de VILLENEUVE, René-Claude	1785
GIOVANNI ANTONIO CAVAZZI da MONTECUCCOLO, Fr	1671
GIOVANNI FRANCESCO da ROMA (or ROMANO), Fr	1645
GIRARD, surgeon	1677
GIROLAMO MEROLLA da SORRENTO, Fr	1682
GIROLAMO da MONTESARCHIO, Fr	1648
GIUSEPPE MONARI da MODENA, Fr	1711
GLICOURT, P. de	1778
GLOVER, Sir John Hawley	1857
GODOT, Jean	1701
GOLBÉRY (or GOLBERRY), Silvere-Meinrad-Xavier de	1785
GOLD COAST, Parliamentary papers re	1846
GOLDEN COAST, The	1665
GOLLMER, Rev. Charles Andrew	1841
GOMES, Diogo	1457
GONÇALVES d'ALMADA, André	<i>See</i> ALVARES de ALMADA, André
GONJA CHRONICLES	1751
GONTAUD-BIRON, Duc de LAUZUN	1779
GONZALEZ FRANÇOIS, Fr	1687
GORDON, Dr Charles Alexander	1847
GOURG, Le Sieur	1791
GRAAF, Nicolaus de (or Nikolaas van)	1664
GRACE, Edward	1767
GRAMBERG, Jan Simon Gerardus	1850
GRAND PIERRE, Le Sieur Dralsé de	<i>See</i> DRALSÉ de GRAND PIERRE
GRANDPRÉ, Louis-Marie Joseph Olier, Comte de	1785



- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| GRAN FULO, Relación del                              | 1600                           |
| GRANT, John  | 1810                           |
| GRAY, Major William, & DOCHARD, <i>Staff-Surgeon</i> | 1818                           |
| GROEBEN, Otto Friedrich von der                      | 1682                           |
| GRONNIO SAW (or GRANWASA), James Albert Ukawsa       | 1770                           |
| GROUT de BEAUFORT, <i>Ensign</i>                     | 1824                           |
| GUATTINI, Fr Michael Angelo de                       | See 1666 DIONIGI CARLI         |
| GUERREIRO, Fr Fernão                                 | 1600                           |
| GUILLEMIN, Capt. Antoine                             | 1685                           |
| GUILLEVIN, Lt M.                                     | 1861                           |
|  |                                |
| HAMILTON, Archibald                                  | 1862                           |
| HARDING, William                                     | See 1808 ALI EISAMI            |
| HAWKINS, John  | 1562                           |
| HAWKINS, Joseph                                      | 1795                           |
| HAWTHORNE, Nathaniel                                 | See 1843 BRIDGE                |
| HAY, Vice-Admiral Sir John Charles Dalrymple         | 1834                           |
| HECQUARD, Hyacinthe                                  | 1849                           |
| HEDENDAAGSCHE HISTORIE                               | 1786                           |
| HENMERSAM, Michael                                   | 1639                           |
| HENING, Mrs E.F.                                     | 1834                           |
| HERBERT, Sir Thomas, Bt                              | 1626                           |
| HERVÉ, Dr  | See 1822 STORMONT              |
| HEWETT, John Frederick Napier                        | 1855                           |
| HEYLYN, Peter  | 1652                           |
| HEYN, Piet (or HEIN, Pieter), <i>Admiral</i>         | 1624                           |
| HILLIER, J.  | 1686                           |
| HINDERER, Mrs Anna                                   | 1849                           |
| HIPPISLEY (or HIPPERSELEY), John                     | 1760                           |
| HISTORIA DA RESIDENCIA                               | 1575                           |
| HOARE, Prince  | 1787                           |
| HISTORISCH VERHAEL                                   | See WASSENAER & LAMPE          |
| HODGES, Cornelius                                    | 1689                           |
| HODGSON, William Brown                               | 1843                           |
| HOLLE, Paul  | See 1817 CARRÈRE, 1857 CARRÈRE |
| HOLLINGSWORTH, S.                                    | 1788                           |
| HOLMAN, James  | 1827                           |
| HOOKE, Sir William Jackson                           | 1841                           |
| HORNE, Rev. Melvill                                  | 1792                           |
| HORNEMANN, Friedrich                                 | 1797                           |
| HORTON, James Africanus Beale                        | 1859                           |
| HOUGHTON, Major Daniel                               | See 1793 RENNELL               |
| HOUSTON (or HOUSTOUN), Dr James                      | 1722                           |
| HOUTMAN, Cornelis de                                 | 1595                           |
| HUET, Pierre Dani                                    |                                |
| HUISE, Robert  | 1830                           |
| HULBERT, Charles                                     | 1826                           |
| HUNTLEY, Sir Henry Veel (or Vere)                    | 1830                           |
| HUTCHINSON, Dr Thomas Joseph                         | 1850                           |
| HUTCHISON, William                                   | See 1817 BOWDICH               |
| HUTTON, William                                      | 1816                           |
| HUYDECOPER, Willem                                   | 1816                           |
| HUYGEN, Jan  | See LINSCHOTEN, Jan Huygen van |
|  |                                |
| IBN al-MUKHTAR                                       | See 1664 MAHMOUD KATI          |
| IJZENDOORN, P. van                                   | 1815                           |
| IMBERT, Paul   | See 1671 CHARANT               |
| IMMERZEEL, J., Jr                                    | 1831                           |

- INFORMAÇÃO DA MINA 1572  
 INGRAM, Anthony *See* 1588 WELSH  
 INNES, William 1831  
 ISERT, Paul Erdmann 1783; *see also* 1780 THAARUP
- JACKSON, James Grey 1787  
 JAJOLET de LA COURBE, Michel *See* LA COURBE  
 JAMIESON, Robert 1838, 1845  
 JANNEQUIN, Claude, *Sieur de Rochefort* 1637  
 JARDIN, Edelstan 1845  
 JEEKEL, J.A. 1867  
 JOB ben SOLOMON 1701; *see also* 1730 MOORE  
 JOBSON, Richard 1618  
 JOHNSON, Charles 1722  
 JOHNSON, Rev. Samuel 1860  
 JOHNSON, Rev. William Augustine Bernard 1816  
 JOHNSTON, Capt. 1789  
 JOINVILLE, Prince de *See* ORLÉANS, F.F.P.L.M.d'  
 JOL, Admiral Cornelis Cornelissen 1641  
 JOLINCK, Hendrick 1598  
 JONGE, J.K.J.de 1871  
 JOSÉ, Amaro *See* 1806 BAPTISTA  
 JOURNAL D'UN VOYAGE SUR LES COSTES D'AFRIQUE 1702  
 JOURNAL HISTORIQUE 1729
- KANO CHRONICLE *See* 1470 PALMER  
 KEELING, William 1607  
 KENNEDY, John Pendleton 1843  
 KERDIJK, Lodewijk P. 1857  
 KERHALLET, Charles-Philippe de 1840  
 KEULEN, Jan van *See* 1683 VOOGT  
 KILHAM, Mrs Hannah 1824  
 KING, Dr J.B. 1845 and *see* 1835 BEECROFT  
 KIÖPING, Nils Mattsson 1674  
 KNIVET, Anthony 1591  
 KOBÈS, Mgr A. 1849  
 KOELLE, Rev. Sigismund Wilhelm 1847  
 KONGEN AF DAHOMET 1797  
 KÜHNE, Rev. J. *See* 1869 RAMSEYER
- LABARTHE, Pierre 1784, 1799, 1801, 1815  
 LABAT, Fr Jean-Baptiste 1685, 1725; *see also* 1671 GIOVANNI  
 ANTONIO CAVAZZI
- LA COURBE, Michel Jajolet de 1685  
 LA CROIX, A. Pherotée de 1688  
 LADURANTIE et DURÉCU, MM. 1801  
 LADY, A *See* MELVILLE, Mrs Elizabeth Helen  
 LAET, Johannes de 1624  
 LAFFITTE, Abbé J. 1861  
 LA FEUILLADE d'AUBUSSON 1826  
 LA FOSSE, Eustache de 1479  
 LAGOS, Parliamentary papers re 1851, 1861  
 LAING, Major Alexander Gordon 1822  
 LAIRD, Macgregor, & OLDFIELD, R.A.K. 1832; *see also* 1854 CROWTHER

LA JAILLE, <i>Marquis de</i>	<i>See</i> 1784 LABARTHE
LAM, Jan Dirksoon	1624
LAMBE (or LAMB), Bulfinch	1722
LAMINE KABBA (or LAMIN KEBE)	1780
LAMIRAL, Dominique Harcourt	1779
LAMY, Jehan	1540
LANDER, Richard Lemon	1825
LANDER, Richard Lemon, & LANDER, John	1830
LANDOLPHE, <i>Capt. Jean-François</i>	1778
LANGE, Jacob (or LANGIUS, Jacobus)	1622
LA SPHERE	1707
LAVANHA, João Baptista	1600
LASERRE, <i>Col. Louis-Henri-Pierre</i>	1801
LAUZUN, <i>Duc de</i>	1779
LEACOCK, <i>Rev. Hamble James</i>	1855
LE BLANC, Vincent	1592
LE BRASSEUR, Joseph-Alexandre	1774
LE DAHOMET	1746
LE GAGNEUR, <i>Le Sieur</i>	1744
LEDYARD, John, & LUCAS, Simon	1804
LEE, <i>Mrs Sarah</i>	1816, 1847, 1856; <i>see also</i> 1817 BOWDICH
LEE, <i>Sgt-Major William</i>	1816
LEERS, Arnout	1641
LE MAIRE, Jacob, & SCHOUTEN, Willem Cornelisz	1615
LE MAIRE, Jacques-Joseph	1682
LEMONS COELHO, Francisco de	1640
LEO AFRICANUS	1509
LEONARD, Peter, <i>Surgeon, R.N.</i>	1830
LE PETIT, C.	1687
LE PREDOUR, Fortuné-Joseph-Hyacinthe	1826
LEVENS de la ROQUETTE, J.	1724
LEYDEN, John	1799
LIBERIA, House of Representatives Report	1850
LIGON, Richard	1647
LIMA, José Joaquim Lopes de	<i>See</i> LOPES de LIMA
LIND, Lt Henrik	1827
LIND, Dr James	1739
LINDSAY, Rev. John	1758
LINSCHOTEN, Jan Huygen van	1595
LISBOA, João de	1514
LITTLE FORRAINE NEWS, A	1641
LIVINGSTONE, David	1854
LOK, John	1554
LOPES, Duarte	<i>See</i> 1578 PIGAFETTA
LOPES da LIMA, José Joaquim	1844
LORENZO da LUCCA, Fr	1700
LOYER, Fr Godefroy	1701
LÜBELFING, Johann von	1599
LUCA da CALTANISSETTA, Fr	1690
LUCAS, Simon	<i>See</i> 1804 LEDYARD
LUCQUES, Fr Laurent de	<i>See</i> LORENZO da LUCCA
LYNCH, William Francis, <i>Cdr U.S.N.</i>	1853
LYON, George Francis, <i>Capt. R.N.</i>	1818
MACAULAY, Kenneth	1808
MACAULAY, Zachary	1793
MACBRAIR, Rev. Robert Maxwell	1835
McLACHLAN, Peter	1821
M'LEOD, John, <i>Surgeon R.N.</i>	1803
MACQUEEN (or M'QUEEN), James	1800; <i>see also</i> 1808 MACAULAY

McWILLIAM (or M'WILLIAM), Dr James Ormiston	1841
MADDEN, Richard Robert	1841
MADDOX, Rev. Richard	1582
MAGE, Lt de Vaisseau Abdon-Eugène	1863
al-MAGHILLI, 'Abd al-Karim	1502
MAGYAR, Ladislaus	1848
MAHE, J.H.	See 1822 STORMONT
MAHOMMAH GARDQ BAQUAQUA	1820
MAHMOUD KATI	1664
MALFANTE, Antonio	1447
MANNING, Edward	1860
MANSFIELD, J.S.	1848
MARCELLINO d'ATRI, Fr	1690
MARCHAIS, Le Chevalier des	See DES MARCHAIS
MARCHAL de LUNEVILLE, Charles-Léopold-Jean-Baptiste	1828
MARRÉE, Johann Adam de	1802
MAREES, Pieter de	1600
MARIS CARNEIRO, António de	1642
MARMOL CARAVAJAL, Luys del	1573
MARTEL, F.A.M.	See 1822 STORMONT
MARTINEAU, J.B.	See 1822 STORMONT
MATEO de ANGUINO, Juan Garcia	See ANGUINO, J.G.M.de
MATEUS CARDOSO, Fr	1617
MATSON, Cdr Henry James	1848
MATTHEWS, John, Lt R.N.	1785
MAVIDAL, Jerome	1863
MAWLAY al-QASIM b. MAWLAY SULAYMAN	1750
MAY, Daniel J. Master, R.N.	1858
MELLO, Miguel António de	1797
MELVILLE, Mrs Elisabeth Helen	1840
MENDES CASTELLO BRANCO, Garcia	1575
MEREDITH, Henry	1798
MEROLLA da SORRENTO, Fr Girolamo	See GIROLAMO MEROLLA da SORRENTO
MICHEL ANGELO da GUATTINI da REGGIO, Fr	See 1666 DIONIGI CARLI
MIDDLETON, Charles Theodore	1779
MILLS, Rev. Samuel J.	1818
MISSIONALIA	1727
MISSIONARY RECORDS: WEST AFRICA	1804
MOHAMMED	see also MUHAMMAD
MOHAMMED ALI BEN SAID	1831
MOISTER, Rev. William	1831
MOLLIEN, Gaspard-Théodore	1818
MONARI da MODENA, Fr Giuseppe	See GIUSEPPE MONARI da MODENA
MONRAD, Rev. Hans Christian	1805
MONSERAT, Le Sieur	1819
MONTAUBAN, Le Sieur	1695
MONTEFIORE, Joshua	1792
MONTEIRO, Joachim John	1858
MONTESARCHIO, Fr Girolamo de	See GIROLAMO de MONTESARCHIO
MOORE, Francis	1730
MOREIRA, José Joaquim	1842
MORENAS, Joseph-Elzéar	1818
MOREAU de CHAMBONNEAU, Louis	1675
MOREAU de St-MÉRY	1784
MORGAN, Rev. John	1821
MORTAMER, Pieter	1643
MUHAMMAD	see also MOHAMMED
MUHAMMAD BELLO	1780
MÜLLER, Rev. Johannes	See 1853 STEINHAUSER
MÜLLER, Rev. Wilhelm Johann	1662

- MÜNSTER, Sebastian 1544  
MÜNZER, Hieronymus (MONETARIUS) 1494  
MURRAY, Hugh *See* 1799 LEYDEN
- N - - - 1702  
NACHTIGAL, Gustav 1869  
NAJERA, Fr José de *See* NAXERA, Fr Joseph  
NANTES, Fr Colombin de *See* COLOMBIN de NANTES  
NAXARA, Fr Joseph de 1659  
NAVIO *SANTIAGO* 1526  
NESBIT, William 1855  
NETTELBECK, Joachim 1772  
NEVES, António Rodrigues 1850  
NEVILLE, Rev. William Latimer 1858  
NEWTON, Rev. John 1745  
NICHOLLS, Henry 1805  
NIGER EXPEDITION, Parliamentary papers re 1840  
NOORT, Olivier van 1598  
NORDENSKIÖLD, Ulric 1776  
NORRIS, Robert 1772  
NORTON, Mrs C.E.S. *See* 1840 MELVILLE  
NYENDAEL, David van *See* VAN NYENDAEL, David  
NYLÄNDER, Rev. Gustavus S. 1806  
NZINGA MVENBA, Manicongo *See* AFONSO
- OETTINGER, Johann Peter 1692  
OGILBY, John 1670  
OHIER, Louis-Marie-Joseph *See* GRANDPRÉ, Comte de  
OLDENDORP, Rev. Christian Georg Andreas 1777  
OLDFIELD, R.A.K. *See* 1832 LAIRD  
OLIVEIRA MENDES, Luiz António de 1793  
OMBONI, Tito 1835  
ORD, Maj.- Gen. Sir Harry St. George 1864  
OSBORN, Capt. Robert 1749  
ORLÉANS, François-Ferdinand-Philippe-Louis-  
Marie d', Prince de Joinville 1843  
OSIFEKUNDE of Ijebu *See* 1810 AVEZAC-MACAYA  
OTTSEN, Hendrick 1603  
OUDNEY, Dr Walter *See* 1822 DENHAM  
OWEN, Nicholas 1750  
OWEN, William Fitzwilliam, Capt. R.N. 1821
- PACHECO PEREIRA, Duarte 1506  
PADENHEIM, D.W. 1794  
PAIVA, Fr Andrea da *See* ANDREA da PAVIA  
PALISOT-BEAUVOIS, A.M.F.P. 1786  
PALUDANUS *See* 1595 LINSCHOTEN  
PANET, Léopold 1850  
PARIS, Fr François de *See* FRANÇOIS de PARIS  
PARK, Mungo 1795, 1805  
PARLIAMENT (of the U.K.) *See* SLAVE TRADE  
PAVORT, J. van der 1690  
PEL, H.J. 1840  
PELAYS, Le Sieur 1730  
PELLETAN, Jean-Gabriel 1787

- PELLICER de TOVAR, *Fr Joseph* 1645  
 PELLOW (or PELLEW), Thomas 1714  
 PEREIRA, Duarte Pacheco *See* PACHECO PEREIRA  
 PEREIRA BARRETO, H. 1843  
 PERO TAVAREZ, *Fr* *See* 1629 COLLECTION: JADIN  
 PÉRON, *Capt.* 1785  
 PERROTTET, Samuel 1825  
 PETIVER, James 1694  
 PEUCHGARIE, N., *L'ainé* 1854  
 PHILIPPE de KERHALLET, Charles *See* KERHALLET, Charles Philippe de  
 PHILLIPS, Thomas 1693  
 PIACENZA, *Fr* Dionigi Carli da *See* DIONIGI CARLI da PIACENZA  
 PIERCE, *Capt.* J.Thursfield 1822  
 PIETRO da DOLCEDO, *Fr* 1643  
 PIGAFETTA, Filippo, & LOPES, Duarte 1578  
 PILOTO PORTUGUÊS 1599  
 PINA, Ruy de 1438  
 PIPY, F. *See* 1822 STORMONT  
 PIRES, *Fr* Vicente Ferreira *See* FERREIRA PIRES  
 PIREZ de CARVALHO, Francisco 1635  
 POMMEGORGE, Antoine-Edmé Pruneau de *See* PRUNEAU de POMMEGORGE, Joseph  
 POOLE, *Rev.* Dr Thomas Eyre 1845  
 PORTO, António Francisco Ferreira da Silva *See* SILVA PORTO  
 PORTUENSE, Vitoriano, *Friar & Bp* *See* VITORIANO PORTUENSE  
 PORTUGUESE PILOT *See* (1) ANONYMOUS PORTUGUESE PILOT  
 (2) PILOTO PORTUGÊS  
 POSTEL, Athanase 1804  
 POSTLETHWAYT, Malachy 1745, 1758  
 PRATIQUE MISSIONNAIRE, *La* 1747  
 PRÉLONG, L. 1793  
 PRICE, Charles *See* 1701 SELLER  
 PRINCE, Mary *See* 1826 ASA-ASA  
 PRINS, Jeurian 1664  
 PRIVY COUNCIL (of the U.K.) *See* SLAVE TRADE  
 PROTTEEN, Christian 1750  
 PROYART, Abbé Liévein Bonaventure 1766  
 PRUNEAU de POMMEGORGE, Joseph (or Antoine-Edmé) 1734  
 PULGAR, Hernando del 1474  
 PYM, *Sir* William 1815
- QUAQUE, *Rev.* Philip 1766  
 QUINTIN, *Dr* L. *See* 1863 MAGE
- R--- B---  
 RABAN, *Rev.* John *See* B[urton], R.  
 RAFAEL CASTELLO de VIDE 1825  
 RAFFENEL, Anne-Jean-Baptiste *See* RAPHAEL de CASTELLO de VIDE  
 RAIMONDO da DICOMANO, *Fr* 1843, 1846  
 RAINOLDS, Richard, & DASSEL, Thomas 1791  
 RAINY, William 1591  
 RAMSAY, Thomas Wharton 1850  
 RAMSEYER, *Rev.* Friedrich August, (or Fritz) & KÜHNE, *Rev.* Johannes 1829  
 RANKIN, Francis Harrison 1869  
 RAPHAEL de CASTELLO de VIDE, *Fr* 1834  
 RASK, *Rev.* Johannes 1781  
 RASK, *Prof.* Rasmus 1709  
 RAVENEAU de LUSSAN 1828  
*See* 1695 MONTAUBAN

- READE, William Winwood 1862  
 REBAUDO da CERIA, *Fr Bonaventura* See BONAVENTURA REBAUDO da CERIA  
 REBELLO, *Fr Amador* 1588  
 REICHARDT, *Rev. Charles Augustus Ludwig* 1840  
 REIJNHOUT (or REYNHOUT), *Martinus Johannes* 1816  
 REM, *Lucas* 1502  
 RENNELL, *Major James* 1793  
 RÉPIN, *Dr A.* 1856  
 RESENDE, *Garcia de* 1554  
 RICARD, *Dr François-Pierre* 1855  
 RICHARD, *Claude* 1816  
 RICHARDSON, *James* 1845, 1850  
 RICHARDSON, *William* 1790  
 RICKETTS, *Major Henry John* 1822  
 RIDGWAY, *Archibald R.* 1847  
 RIIS, *Rev. Andreas* 1839  
 RIIS, *Hans Nicolaus* 1853  
 RILEY, *Capt. James* 1815  
 RINGARD, *Le Sieur* 1727  
 ROBERTS, *Capt. George* 1721  
 ROBERTS, *John* 1777  
 ROBERTSON, *George A.* 1801  
 ROBERTSON, *Robert* 1772  
 ROBYN (or ROBIJN), *Jacob* 1668  
 RODRIGUES, *Fr Pero* 1575  
 ROGER, *Baron Jacques-François* 1821  
 ROGGEVEN, *Arent* See ROBYN, *Jacob*  
 ROMANO, *Fr Giovanni Francesco* See GIOVANNI FRANCESCO da ROMA  
 RÖMER (or RÖMER), *Ludvig Ferdinand* 1739  
 ROUSSIN, *Baron Albin-Reine* 1817  
 ROY, *C.J.N.E.* 1858  
 ROYAL AFRICAN, *The* 1749  
 ROYAL AFRICAN COMPANY 1749  
 ROYAL GOLD COAST GAZETTE, *The* 1822  
 RUITERS, *Dierick* 1601; see also 1600 MAREES  
 RUTTER, *William* 1562  
 RUYTER, *Admiral Michiel Adraenzoon de* See 1664 PRINS
- SA'ID, *al-Hajj* 1817  
 SAINT-LO, *Fr Alexis de* See ALEXIS de SAINT-LO  
 SAINT-MÉRY, *Moreau de* See MOREAU de St-MÉRY  
 SALDANHA da GAMA, *Antonio de* 1814  
 SALIH BILALI 1785  
 SALLES FERREIRA, *Major Graduado Francesco* See NEVES, *Antonio Rodrigues*  
 SAMPSON, *Capt. Abel* 1810  
 SANCHO, *Ignatius* 1782  
 SANDOVAL, *Fr Alonso de* 1610  
 SANTISSIMO SACRAMENTO, *Fr Diego de* See DIOGO do SANTISSIMO SACRAMENTO  
 SANTA MARIA DA CONÇEICA 1522  
 SANTIAGO (Navio) 1526  
 SANTOS, *José Francisco dos* See DOS SANTOS  
 SANUTO, *Livio* 1588  
 SÃO MIGUEL 1522  
 SAUGNIER, *F., & BRISSON, P.R.de* 1783  
 SAVIGNY, *J.B., & CORRÉARD, Alexandre* 1816  
 SAVONA, *Fr Cherubino da* See CHERUBINO da SAVONA  
 SCALA, *Giambattista* 1856  
 SCHLEGEL, *Rev. Johannes Bernhard* 1855  
 SCHLENKER, *Rev. Christian Frederick* 1836  
 SCHMIDT, *Christian Lindholm* 1750

SCHOTT(E), Dr Johann Peter	1770
SCHÖN, Rev James Frederick	1862
SCHÖN, Rev. J.F., & CROWTHER, Rev. Samuel	1841
SCHOUTEN, Willem Cornelisz	See 1615 LE MAIRE
SCHUMACHER, F.C.	See 1800 THONNING
SCOTT, Mrs Anna Maria	1851
SELLER, Jeremiah, & PRICE, Charles	1701
SHABAYNI (or SHABINI)	See 1787 JACKSON
SHARP, Granville	See HOARE, Prince
SHOBERL, Frederic	1821
SHREEVE, William Whitaker	1840
SIBLAS, Jacques Doumet de	See DOUMET de SIBLAS
SIBTHORPE, Aaron Belisarius Cosmo	1868
SIERRA LEONE, Parliamentary papers re	1801
SIERRA LEONE COMPANY, The	1793
SIERRA LEONE ROYAL GAZETTE, The	1808
SILVA CORREIA, Elias Alexandre da	1780
SILVA PORTO, António Francisco Perreira da	1842
SIMON, Capt. Théodore	1857
SIMONOT, F.P.	See 1822 STORMONT
SIMPSON, William	1841
SINGLETON, William	1821
SINTRA, Pedro de	See 1455 CA' DA MOSTO
SKERTCHLY, J. Alfred	1871
SLAVE TRADE, Parliamentary papers re the	1789
SMEATHMAN, Henry	1771
SMITH, Professor Chetien	See 1816 TUCKEY
SMITH, G. (? Capt. R.N.)	1848
SMITH, John, Surgeon & Capt.	1851
SMITH, William, surveyor	1726
SNELGRAVE, Capt. William	1727
SNOEK, Capt. Jan	1701
SOME REMARKABLE PARTICULARS	1821
SOUSA, Fernão de	1622
SOUSA COUTINHO, Francisco Innocencio de	1764
SOUSA DIAS, Gastão	1665
SPARRMAN, Dr Andrew	See 1772 NORRIS, 1787 WADSTROM
SPILSBURY, Francis B., Surgeon R.N.	1805
SPRINGER (or SPRENGER), Balthazar	1505
STAAT VON GUINEA	1715
STANFIELD, James Field	1788
STEINHAUSER, Rev. August	1853
STIBBS, Bartholomew	1723
STORMONT, Dr Charles	1822
SWAN, Capt. Samuel	1810
TAMS, Georg	1844
TAURINIUS, Zacharias	See 1800 DAMBERGER
TAVAREZ, Fr Pero	1629
TAYEAU, D.E.	See 1822 STORMONT
TAYLOR, Rev. J.C.	See 1862 CROWTHER: 1871 CROWTHER
TEZKIRET en-NISIAN	1750
TEN BROECKE, Berndt (PALUDANUS)	See 1595 LINSCHOTEN
TENGBERGEN, H.F.	1838
THAARUP, Prof. Frederic	1780
THEVENOT, Dr Jean-Pierre-Ferdinand	1840
THEVET, André	1555
THOMAS, Rev. Charles W.	1855
THOMPSON, Rev. George	1848
THOMPSON, Rev. Thomas	1752



- THOMSON, Dr T.R.H. *See* 1841 ALLEN  
 THOMSON, William Cooper 1841  
 THONNING, Peter 1800  
 THORPE, Robert 1811  
 TIBIERGE, Le Sieur 1692  
 TILLEMANN, Erich Adamsen 1682  
 TOLD, Silas 1727  
 TOUCHET, Samuel 1758  
 TOWERSON, William 1555  
 TOWNSEND, Rev. Henry 1836  
 TRACY, Joseph 1844  
 TRAVASSOS VALDEZ, Francisco 1852  
 TUCKER, Miss (Sarah) 1853  
 TUCKEY, James Kingston, Capt. R.N. 1816  
 TWEED, Mr 1771
- ULSHEIMER (or ULTZHEIMER), Andreas Josua 1603  
 CUMAR al-FUTI, al-Hajj 1853  
 URING, Capt. Nathaniel 1710  
 USUMAN dan FODIO *See* CUTHMAN b. MUHAMMAD FODIYE  
 CUTHMAN b. MUHAMMAD FODIYE 1780
- VALCKENBURG(H), Johan 1664  
 VALDEZ, Francisco Travassos *See* TRAVASSOS VALDEZ  
 VALLON, A. (Lt de Vaisseau) 1856  
 VAN KEULEN, Jan *See* 1683 VOOGT  
 VAN NYENDAEL, David 1701  
 VENN, Henry 1865  
 VERDUN de LA CRENNE, Admiral 1771  
 VERMUYDEN, Col. 1660  
 VERNEUIL, Victor 1843  
 VIJF DAGREGISTERS VAN HET KASTEEL 1645  
 VILLALTY, Nicolas, Sieur de Bellefond(s) 1666  
 VILLENEUVE, René-Charles Geoffroy de *See* GEOFFROY de VILLENEUVE  
 VITORIANO PORTUENSE, Friar & Bp 1686  
 VIVES, Fr Juan Bautista 1595  
 VOGEL, Dr Eduard 1853  
 VOGEL, Dr (Julius Rudolf) Theodor 1841  
 VOOGT, Claes Janszoon 1683  
 VOSS (or VOSSIUS), Isaak 1666
- WADDELL, Rev. Hope Masterton 1846  
 WADSTRÖM, Carl Bernhard 1787  
 WALKER, Rev. John 1582  
 WALKER, Rev. Samuel Abraham 1802, 1804  
 WARD, Rev. Luke 1582  
 WARGEE, of Astrakhan 1817  
 WASSENAER, Nicholas Janszoon van, & LAMPE, Berend 1621  
 WATTS, John 1668  
 WELSH, James, & INGRAM, Anthony 1588  
 WEST, Rev. Daniel 1856  
 WEST AFRICAN COMMITTEES, Parliamentary papers 1816, 1842, 1865  
 WEST AFRICAN SKETCHES 1824  
 WHARTON, Rev. Henry 1845  
 WHITFORD, John 1853

WILKESON, Samuel	1839
WILKINSON, William, <i>mariner</i>	1690
WILLIAMS, Rev. Samuel	1857
WILMOT, (Arthur Parry) Eardley, <i>Vice-Admiral</i>	1862
WILSON, Rev. John Leighton	1834
WINDHAM, Thomas	1553
WINNIETT, Sir William	1847
WINTERBOTTOM, Dr Thomas Masterman	1792
WINWOOD READE, William	See READE, William Winwood
WORGE, Major-General	1762
WRIGHT, Joseph	1825
WULFF, Wulff Josef	1836
YULE, Sir Henry	1848
ZIMMERMANN, Rev. Johannes	1851
ZORZI, Alessandro	1517
ZUCCHELI de GRADISCA, Fr Antonio	See ANTONIO ZUCCHELI de GRADISCA
ZULUETA, Pedro de, Jr	1840
ZURARA, Gomes Eanes de	See EANES de AZURARA
ZUR-EICH, Hans Jacob	1659



# INDEX OF EDITORS, COMPILERS, TRANSLATORS, COMMENTATORS Etc.

Date references underlined indicate substantial collections of voyages or documents.

ABITBOL, Michel	1747
ABUBAKR GUMMI	1780
AJAYI, A.J.A.	1821, 1860
AKINJOGBIN, I.A.	1767
AKVELD, I.K.	1624
ALBUQUERQUE, Luis de	1514
ALBUQUERQUE FELNER, Alfredo de	1482, 1591
ALLEN, Christopher, & JOHNSON, R.W.	1787
ALQUIER, P.	1789
ALVES da CUNHA, M.	See DELGADO, J.M.
ANDRADE, A.A.DE	1615, 1790
APOLINAIRE de VALENCE, Fr	1634
ARDENER, Edward & Shirley	1841
ARNETT, E.J., & PALMER, Sir Herbert R.	1780
ASHTON, T.S.	1767
ASTLEY, Thomas	1745
ATANDA, J.A.	1854
AUSTIN, Allan D.	1701
AXELSEN, Sigbert	1591
AZEVEDO BASTO, R.E.de	1892
AZEVEDO, José Pinto	1799
BA, Umar	1858
BAIÃO, Antônio	1457, 1506, 1552
BAIDAFF, L.	1707
BAL, Willy	1492, 1578
BALANDIER, Georges	1500
BARAC, Vladimir	See 1777 OLDENDORP
BARBOUR, Bernard, & JACOBS, Michelle	1615
BARTELS, F.L.	1742
BEAZLET, C.R., & PRESTAGE, Edger	1441
BECKER, Charles	1687, 1733, 1744, 1762
BECKER, Charles, & MARTIN, Victor	1729, 1749, 1769, 1774
BEHRENS, Carl	1836
BENNETT, Norman R., & BROOKS, George E.	1802
BERBAIN, Simone	1746
BERTELSEN, P.H.	1739
BERTHOUD, Silvio	See LANGE, Dierk
BETHUNE, Vice-Admiral	1563
BIVAR, A.D.H.	1780
BLAGDEN, F.	1785
BLAKE, J.W.	1450, 1545, 1553, 1554, 1555
BLUETT, Thomas	1701
BONTINCK, François	1617, 1645, 1690
BOSSART, Johann Jakob	See 1777 OLDENDORP
BOULEGUE, Jean	1582, 1591, 1594, 1600, 1604; see also CURTIN, Philip D.
BOURDON, Léon	1441
BOUVEIGNES, Olivier de	1769
BOUVEIGNES, Olivier de, & CUVELIER, J.	1648
BOVILL, E.W.	1797, 1822 (twice)
BOWDICH, T.E.	1818
BRAGANÇA, José de	1441
BRANDÃO, Cláudio	1637

- BRAKEL, S. van 1670  
BRÁSIO, Antônio 1342, 1572, 1575, 1582, 1583,  
1584, 1591, 1594, 1599, 1604,  
1606, 1617, 1634, 1791, 1835
- BRÉARD, Charles 1685  
BRISSEON-THIVARS, L.S. 1785  
BRITO REBELLO, J.I. de 1514  
BROCKELSBY, R. 1760  
BROOKS, George R. 1810; *see also* BENNETT, Norman R.  
BROWN, Robert 1509, 1715  
BROWN, S.D.W. 1777  
BRY, J.T. de, & J.I. de 1597, 1600  
BUCHER, H.H. 1856  
BUENVENTURA de CARROCERA, Fr 1645  
BURTON, R.F. 1806
- CANESTRARI, G. 1818  
CAPELA, José 1793  
CARDONA, Giorgio 1578  
CARVALHO, Joaquim Montezuma 1479  
CASTELO BRANCO, Fernando 1672  
CASTRIES, H de 1590 (twice)  
CENIVAL, P. de, & MONOD, Th. 1506  
CHALLES, Grégoire de 1696  
CAPPET, E. 1861  
CHARLESWORTH, Marie Louise 1816  
CHARPY, Jacques 1845  
CHILDERS, Spencer 1790  
CHURCHILL, Awnsham & John 1578, 1668, 1678, 1682, 1693, 1704  
CIDADE, H. 1552  
CLAESSEN, C. 1605  
CLODORÉ, J. de 1669  
COMHELIN, Isaac 1595  
CONFALONIERI, G.B. *See* 1595 VIVES  
COOLEY, W.D. 1828  
CORDEIRO, Luciano 1574  
CORREA da SERRA 1790  
COUTO, Carlos 1666, 1748  
COWLEY, Malcolm 1820  
CRAWFORD, Evelyn 1721  
CRESCELIUS, W. 1603  
CRONE, G.R. 1447, 1455, 1457  
CROOKS, J.J. 1750  
CULTRU, Pierre 1685 (twice)  
CUOQ, J.M. 800  
CURTIN, Philip D. 1675, 1701, 1730, 1821, 1825  
CURTIN, Philip D., & BOULÈGUE, Jean 1729  
CUVELIER, J. 1605, 1690, 1700, 1766; *see also*  
BOUVEIGNES, Olivier de  
1518, 1595, 1617
- CUVELIER, J., & JADIN, L.
- DAGET, Serge 1725  
DALBY, David, & HAIR, P.E.H. 1540  
DANTZIG, Albert van *See* VAN DANTZIG, Albert  
DAVIES, P.N. 1840  
DEBIEN, G. 1818  
DEBIEN, G., DELAFOSSE, M., & THILMANS, G. 1678

DELAFOSSÉ, Marcel	<i>See</i> DEBIEN, G.
DELAFOSSÉ, Maurice	<i>See</i> HOUDAS, O.
DELCOURT, A.	1744
DELGADO, Ralph	1615
DESCHAMPS, Hubert	1818
DEWAR, Alfred	1710
DIAS, António J.	1680
DIAS DINIS, J.A.	1441
DICKSON, Mora	1824
DIGE-HESS, Mette	1739
DIKE, K.O.	1835
DONNAN, Elizabeth	1441
DONNO, C.S.	1582
DRALSE de GRAND PIERRE	1712
DU JARRIC, Pierre	1600
DUKE, George	1762
DWIGHT, Theodore, Jr.	1780
EDEN, Richard	1544, 1553, 1555
EDWARDS, Paul	1755
EHRMANN, T.F.	1791
ENGELBRECHT, W.A., & WERWERDEN, P.J. van	1615
ÉPAULARD, A.	1509
ESAGUY, Ernesto d'	1791
ESCOUDIER, Denis	1479
EVANS, G.H.	1815
FAGE, J.D.	1479, 1505, 1795
FAURE, Claude	1824
FEINBERG, H.M.	1726
FEO CARDOSO, J.C.	1575
FERGUSON, Phyllis	<i>See</i> WILKS, Ivor
FERREZ, Gilberto	1702
FILESI, Teobaldo	1700
FISHER, Humphrey J.	800
FODOR, István	1848
FORDE, Deryll	1785
FORSTER, Johann Reinhold	<i>See</i> 1770 SCHOTT(E); 1784 FOLLIE
FORTUNATO ALAMANDINI, Fr	1671
FOULCHÉ DELBOSC, L.	1479
FRANCONIE, Marc	1862
FRIIS, C.H.	1839
FYFE, Christopher	1810, 1831, 1834, 1840, 1855, 1868
GAFFAREL, P.	1555
GALTON, Sir Francis	1861
GAMBA GUBIR	<i>See</i> SMITH, H.F.C.
GATTI, EVARISTO	1711
GAULNE, François	1785
GOLDSMID, Edmund	1682
GRAZIANO MARIA de LEGUZZANO, Fr	1671
GREEN, John	<i>See</i> 1745 ASTLEY
GREIFF, B.	1502
GROS, Jules	1869
GUERREIRO, Fernão	1600, 1604
GRYNAEUS, Simon	1532

- GUNDERT, H. 1869  
 GUILLOIS, M.F. 1787  
 GUINNESS, H. Grattan 1652
- HAIR, P.E.H. 1479, 1506, 1519, 1522, 1536, 1544,  
 1556, 1562, 1573, 1574, 1582  
 (twice), 1585, 1594, 1601, 1604,  
 1606, 1607 (twice), 1610, 1619,  
 1625, 1637, 1640, 1663, 1668,  
 1670, 1678, 1701, 1806, 1847:  
*see also* DALBY.  
 1553, 1554, 1555, 1562 (twice), 1563,  
 1566, 1582, 1588, 1589, 1591  
 1790, 1800, 1805, 1830
- HAKLUYT, Richard 1780  
 1745  
 1705  
 1767  
 1843  
 1687, 1690  
 1786  
 1622, 1671  
*See* WILKS, Ivor  
 1848  
*See* 1777 OLDENDORP  
 1505  
 1780 (twice)  
 1785  
*See* NABER, S.P.'l'Honoré.  
 1841  
 1853  
 800  
 1655, 1750  
 1664  
 1595  
 1816, 1817, 1822, 1826  
 1598, 1600  
 1502  
 1578
- HALLETT, Robin,  
 HAMET, Ismail  
 HARLEIAN COLLECTION  
 HARRIS, John  
 HAWLEY, James A.  
 HAWTHORNE, Nathaniel  
 HAZEWINKEL, H.C.  
 HEDENDAAGSCHE HISTORIE  
 HEINTZE, Beatrix  
 HEIGHT, Bruce M.  
 HEYWOOD, Linda  
 HIGHFIELD, Arnold R.  
 HIRSCHBERG, W.  
 HISKETT, Mervyn  
 HODGSON, W.B.  
 l'HONORÉ NABER, S.P.  
 HOOKER, Sir William J.  
 HOPKINS, A.G.  
 HOPKINS, J.F.P., & LEVTZION, N.  
 HOUDAS, Octave  
 HOUDAS, O., & DELAFOSSE, M.  
 HOUFFAER, G.P., & IJZERMAN, J.W.  
 HULBERT, Charles  
 HULSIUS, Levinus  
 HUNWICK, John  
 HUTCHINSON, Margerite
- IBÁÑEZ CERDA, J. 1519  
 IJZERMAN, J.W. 1595, 1603; *see also* HOUFFAER, G.P.
- JADIN, Louis 1506, 1621, 1629, 1639, 1641, 1687  
 1700, 1710, 1759, 1791; *see also*  
 CENIVAL, P.de, and CUVÉLIER, J.  
 1682  
 1722, 1772, 1845  
*see* ALLEN, Christopher  
 1810  
 1502, 1505, 1599, 1603, 1611, 1624,  
 1639, 1641, 1659, 1662, 1669,  
 1678, 1680, 1682, 1692, 1726,  
 1820, 1865, 1869  
 1858
- JENSEN, Ove  
 JOHNSON, Marion  
 JOHNSON, R.W.  
 JOMBARD, E.  
 JONES, Adam  
 JONES, Frank W.

JONES, G.I.	1755
JULY, Robert W.	1843, 1868
JUSTEL, Henri	1670
KERN, H.	1595
KERR, Robert	1811
KIMBLE, G.H.T.	1505
KLETKE, H.	1853
KNECHT, Heinrich	1855
KNOX, J.	1767
KOELLE, S.W.	1808
KOELMANS, L.	See VERHOOG, P.
KOEMAN, C.	1668
KÖPKE, Diogo	1841
KOUBBEL, L.E., & MATEEV, V.V.	800
KUN, N. de	1848
KUNSTMANN, Friedric	1494, 1506
KUP, A.P.	1795
LABAT, J.B.	1671
LABOURET, Henri, & RIVET, Paul	1658
LACORDAIRE, Th.	1828
LACROIX, Alfred	1749
LANGE, Dierk	1564
LANGE, Dierk, & BERTHOUD, Silvio	1573
LA RONCIÈRE, Charles de	1447, 1677
LAST, D. Murray	1701, 1780, and see SMITH, H.F.C.
LAW, Robin	1678, 1678, 1726, 1727 (twice), 1772 (twice)
LAWRENCE, A.W.	1816, 1820
LEFEBVRE, Alphonse	1778, 1804
LEITE de FARIA, F.	1438, 1600
LEITE de FARIA, F., & TEIXEIRA da MOTA, A.	1517
LEPORACE, T.E.	1455
LEVIZION, Nehemia	1751, and see HOPKINS, J.F.P.
LHOTE, H., MAUNY, R., & MONOD, Th.	1509
LINTINGRE, Pierre	1778
LLOYD, H.E.	1844
LLOYD, Lady Mary	1843
LLOYD, P.C.	1810
LY, Abdoulaye	1685 (twice), 1702
LYNCH, Hollis	1850
McCASKIE, T.C.	1807
McDOUGALL, E. Ann	1689
MACHAT, Jules	1701
MADEIRA SANTOS, Maria Emilia	1842
MAGALHÃES GODINHO, V.	1415, 1457
MAGNIEU, E. de	1786
MAHIBOUT, S.M., & TRIAUD, J.- L.	1853
MAJOR, R.H.	1457
MAKEPEACE, Margaret	1657
MARCELLINO de CIVEZZA, Fr	1781
MARTIN, Bernard, & SPURRELL, Mark	1745
MARTIN, Eveline	1750



- MARTIN, Victor  
el-MASRI, F.H.  
MATA CARRIAZO, Juan de  
MATEEV, V.V.  
MAUNY, R.
- MAXWELL, P.  
MENDES CASTELLO BRANCO, Garcia  
MENDES CASTRO, J., & MAUNY, R.  
METCALFE, G.E.  
MILLER, Joseph C.  
MILLER, Randall M.  
MONOD, Th.  
MONOD, Th., MAUNY, R., & DUVAL, G.  
MONOD, Th., TEIXEIRA da MOTA, A., & MAUNY, R.  
MONTALBODDO, F. da  
MONTÉMONT, Albert  
MONTEILHET, J.  
MOORE, J.H.  
MOORE, Samuel Downing  
MORAES, N.I. de  
MOUSER, Bruce L.  
MUDFORD, W.  
MUSSET, George
- NABER, S.P. l'Honoré
- NATHAN, Sir Matthew  
NARDIN, J.C.  
NARDIN, J.C., & SPIRIK, H.  
NDEMBE NSASI, D.  
NEVES, M.T.A.  
NEWBERY, John  
NEWBURY, C.W.  
NEWMAN, Paul  
NØRREGARD, Georg  
NOTHOMB, J.
- OETTINGER, Paul  
OSBORNE, Thomas  
ØRRELID, J.
- PAIVA MANSO, L.M.J. *Visconde de*  
PALMER, Sir Herbert R.
- PENZER, N.M.  
PERES, Damião  
PERROT, Nicolas  
PHILLIPS, Sir Richard  
PIAZZA, Calogero  
PINA, J.R. de  
PINA, Luis de  
PINKERTON, John  
PLIMPTON, George A.  
PRAT, Henri  
PRAT, P.  
PRESTAGE, Edgar
- See BECKER, Charles  
1780  
1474  
See Koubbel, L.E.  
1505, 1509, 1522, 1785; *see also*  
MENDES CASTRO, MONOD, and SAUVAGEOT  
1816  
1575  
1702  
1807  
1575, 1828  
1840  
1822; *see also* LHOTE, and SAUVAGEOT  
1457  
1506  
1507  
1833  
1779  
1780  
1820  
1640, 1646; *see also* THILMANS, G.  
1800  
1785  
1544
- 1600, 1601, 1611, 1624, 1637,  
1639, 1643  
1682  
1725, 1851  
1701  
1617  
1764  
1760  
1863  
1855  
1842  
1747
- 1692  
1745  
1709
- 1492  
1470, 1564, 1701, 1780; *see also*  
ARNETT, E.J.  
See 1863 BURTON  
1455, 1480, 1505, 1640  
1573  
1819  
1648, 1711  
1845  
1770  
1808  
1789  
1786  
1786  
See BEAZLEY, C.R.

PRÉVOST d'EXILES, A.F.	1746
PRIESTLEY, Margaret	1766
PURCHAS, Samuel	1578, 1589, 1591, 1600, 1604, 1607 (twice), 1613, 1618, 1625
QUESNÉ, J.S.	1778
RAINERO, Romain	1690
RAMUSIO, G.B.	1455, 1509, 1545, 1550
RANGLES, W.G.L.	1780, 1816
RATELBAND, K.	1605, 1624, 1641, 1645
RAUNKIAER, Ingeborg	1783
RAVENSTEIN, E.G.	1589, 1591
REDHOUSE, J.W.	1564
RENNEVILLE, R.A.C. de	1605, 1702
RIBEIRO de LESSA, Clado	1800
RITCHIE, C.I.A.	1675
ROBINSON, David	1840
ROCCO da CESINALE, Fr	1645
RODRIGUES, Francisco	1575
ROSSIE, J.P.	See THILMANS, G.
ROUSSEAU, R.	1860
ROUSSEIER, Paul	1687, 1692, 1698, 1702, 1784
RUELA POMBO, Fr Manuel	1560, 1630, 1640
RYDER, A.F.C.	1522 (twice)
St.JOHN, B.	1849
SALVADORINI, V.A.	1656
SANTARÉM, Visconde de	1441
SAUVAGEOT, S., MONOD, Th., & MAUNY, R.	1545
SCHAUENBURG, Edward	1853
SCHEPEL, A.F.	1857
SCHMELLER, J.A.	1457
SCHWABE, J.J.	1747
SHEPPERSON, George	1862
SILVA DIAS, Augusto Epiphania da	1505
SILVEIRA, Luis	1594, 1663
SIMLER, J.W.	1659
SIMMONS, D.C.	1790, 1827, 1841
SMITH, H.F.C., LAST, D.M., & GAMBA GUBIR	1808
SMYTH, William Henry	1792
SPRING, Gardiner	1818
SPURRELL, Mark	See MARTIN, Bernard
SOUSA DIAS, Gastão	1562, 1750
SPIRIK, H.	See NARDIN, J.C.
STARR, Frederick	1868
STEGAGNO-PICCHIO, Luciana	1666
STEINER, P.	1869
STEVENS, J.	1666
STONE, Thora B.	1689
SUAREZ de FIGUEROA	1600
SYMPHER, Wylie	1749

- TAYLOR, E.G.R.  
 TEIXEIRA da MOTA, Avelino de  
 TERPSTRA, H.  
 TEYSSIER, Paul  
 THEVENOT, M.  
 THILMANS, Guy  
 THILMANS, Guy, & MORAES, N.I.de  
 THILMANS, Guy, & ROSSIE, J.P.  
 THORNTON, John K.  
 THORP, Ellen  
 TOSO, Carlo  
 TRIAUD, J.-L.  
 TRUTENAU, M.J.  
 VALTIERRA, A.  
 VANSINA, Jan  
 VAN DANTZIG, Albert  
 VASCONCELOS, Basilio de  
 VERGER, Pierre  
 VERHOOG, P., & KOELMANS, L.  
 VIEGAS, A.  
 VILLIERS, J.A.J. de  
 WAGNER, H.  
 WALCKENAER, Baron Charles-Athenase  
 WARNSINCK, J.C.M.  
 WERG, Sabine  
 WERWERDEN, P.J. van  
 WEITBRECHT, Mrs  
 WEYTINGH, D.P.H.  
 WHITTING, C.E.J.  
 WILEY, Bell I.  
 WILKS, Ivor  
 WILKS, Ivor, & FERGUSON, Phyllis  
 WILKS, Ivor, LEVTZION, Nehemia, & HEIGHT,  
 Bruce M.  
 WILLES, Richard  
 WING, J., & PENDERS, C.  
 WINSNES, Selene  
 WISHAW, E.  
 WRIGHT, Harrison M.  
 YZERMAN, J.W.  
 ZANETTI, Ludovico  
 ZORZI, Alessandro
- 1519, 1582  
 1487, 1522, 1536, 1541, 1565, 1574,  
 1585, 1600, 1607; *see also*  
 LEITE de FARIA, and MONOD, Th.  
 1595  
 1487  
 1619, 1664  
 1668, 1682, *see also* DEBIEN, G.  
 1604, 1635, 1666, 1669, 1670  
 1601  
 1575, 1595, 1607, 1610, 1617,  
 1641, 1671, 1848  
 1849  
 1643, 1690, 1759, 1771  
*See* MAHIBOU  
 1750  
 1610  
 1500  
 1668, 1674, 1687, 1688  
 1494  
 1721, 1844  
 1664  
 1600, 1635  
 1617  
 1853  
 1816, 1826  
 1624, 1639  
 1603  
*See* ENGELBRECHT, W.A.  
 1869  
 1834  
 1780, 1817  
 1833  
 1785, 1800, 1817  
 1787  
 1751  
 1577  
 1652  
 1783  
 1805  
 1839  
 1598  
 1625  
 1507



## PUBLICATIONS

**A Short and Simple Account of the Country Guinea and Its Nature**, Erik Tilleman's En Kort og Enfoldig Beretning om det Landskab Guinea og dets Beskaffenhed (1697), translated and edited by S. A. Winsnes, 1994 \$22

**The Founding of the Castelo de São Jorge da Mina. An Analysis of the Sources**, P.E.H. Hair, 1994 \$30

**A Guide to Original Sources for Precolonial Western Africa Published in European Languages**, second edition, J.D. Fage, 1994 \$30

**Seeds in the Palm of My Hand**, Edward Kanu Uku, 1993 \$30

**A Witch in My Heart, Short Stories, and Poems**, Hilda Kuper, 1993 \$25

**Pioneer, Patriot and Patriarch: Samuel Johnson and the Yoruba People**, edited by Toyin Falola \$27

**Labarin Baba [Hausa version of Baba of Kano]**, Mary Smith, 1993 \$20

**Further Correspondence of the Royal African Company of England Relating to the 'Slave Coast,' 1681-1699**, edited by Robin Law, 1992 \$15

**Letters from Nigeria, 1899-1900**, by David Wynford Carnegie, edited by Ann O'Hear, 1992 \$25

**Warfare and Diplomacy in Precolonial Nigeria**, edited by Toyin Falola, 1992 \$25

**Yoruba Historiography**, edited by Toyin Falola, 1991 \$24

**Trade on the Guinea Coast, 1657-1666: the Correspondence of the English East India Company**, edited by Margaret Makepeace, 1991 \$26

**Democratization and Structural Adjustment in Africa in the 1990s**, edited by Lual Deng, M. Kostner, and M. Crawford Young, 1991 \$15

**Decade of Discontent: an Index to Fighting Talk, 1954-1963**, Dorothy Woodson, 1991 \$25

**West African Economic and Social History**, edited by David Henige and T.C. McCaskie, 1990 \$26

**Correspondence between Cabo Corso Castle and Whydah/Little Popo**, edited by Robin Law, 1990 \$15

**The Shaf'i Ulama of East Africa, c. 1830-1970: Hagiographic Account**, Abdallah Salih Farsy, edited by Randall Pouwels, 1989 \$25

**East of Mina: Afro-European Relations on the Gold Coast in the 1550s and 1560s**, edited by P.E.H. Hair, 1988 \$22

**An Index to Drum: Africa's Leading Magazine, 1951-1965**, Dorothy Woodson, 1988 \$30

**Raw, Medium, and Well Done: a Critical Review of Editorial and Quasi-Editorial Work on Pre-European Sources for Sub-Saharan Africa, 1960-1986**, Adam Jones, 1987 \$30

**A Bibliography of the Kalenjin Peoples of East Africa**, R. Daniels et al, 1987 \$15

**\*Kongo Language Course: Maloongi Makikoongo**, Hazel Carter and Joao Makoondakwa, 1987 \$25

**\*Shona Language**, Hazel Carter and G.P. Kahari, revised edition, 1986 \$19

**A First Course in Kikuyu, vols. I, II, and III**, Patrick Bennett et al. each vol. \$21

**Hausa Lexical Expansion Since 1930: Bargery Supplement**, Neil Skinner, 1985 \$12

Prices include postage and handling. Prepayment is requested. Wisconsin residents please add 5.5% sales tax. Make checks payable to "African Studies Program."

**African Studies Program**  
University of Wisconsin-Madison  
1220 Linden Drive  
1454 Van Hise Hall  
Madison, WI 53706 U.S.A.  
FAX 608•262•6998  
Telephone 608•262•2380

\*Tapes for these courses must be purchased separately from Bureau of Audio Visual Instruction (BAVI), 1327 University Avenue, Madison, WI 53706, 608•262•1644